特高级教师

点拨®

知识
方法
素养

八年级 英语 下 (R版)

主　　编：荣德基
学科主编：李　昭
本册主编：杨书枝



提分一定有方法

吉林教育出版社

教辅资料站
电子教辅　试卷练习
知识总结　备课资源
扫码关注获取更多学习资料



目录

Unit 1 What's the matter?

魔法六维导图 …… 1
记忆大师 …… 1
Period 1 Section A(1a–2d) …… 3
Period 2 Section A(3a–3c) …… 9
Period 3 Section A(Grammar Focus–4c) … 15
Period 4 Section B(1a–1d) …… 19
Period 5 Section B(2a–2e) …… 21
Period 6 Section B(3a-Self Check) …… 31
素养：学会用积极的心态处理问题 …… 14

Unit 2 I'll help to clean up the city parks.

魔法六维导图 …… 34
记忆大师 …… 34
Period 1 Section A(1a–2d) …… 36
Period 2 Section A(3a–3c) …… 41
Period 3 Section A(Grammar Focus–4c) … 46
Period 4 Section B(1a–1e) …… 50
Period 5 Section B(2a–2e) …… 53
Period 6 Section B(3a–Self Check) …… 60
素养：回馈社会，志愿助人 …… 38

Unit 3 Could you please clean your room?

魔法六维导图 …… 64
记忆大师 …… 64
Period 1 Section A(1a–2d) …… 66
Period 2 Section A(3a–3c) …… 70
Period 3 Section A(Grammar Focus–4c) … 74
Period 4 Section B(1a–1e) …… 79
Period 5 Section B(2a–2e) …… 80
Period 6 Section B(3a–Self Check) …… 88
素养：帮助家人做家务的重要性 …… 76

Unit 4 Why don't you talk to your parents?

魔法六维导图 …… 91
记忆大师 …… 91
Period 1 Section A(1a–2d) …… 93
Period 2 Section A(3a–3c) …… 97
Period 3 Section A(Grammar Focus–4c) … 102
Period 4 Section B(1a–1e) …… 106
Period 5 Section B(2a–2e) …… 108
Period 6 Section B(3a–Self Check) …… 115
素养：竞争与合作 …… 108

Unit 5 What were you doing when the rainstorm came?

魔法六维导图 …… 119
记忆大师 …… 119
Period 1 Section A(1a–2d) …… 121
Period 2 Section A(3a–3c) …… 125
Period 3 Section A(Grammar Focus–4c) …… 130
Period 4 Section B(1a–1d) …… 133
Period 5 Section B(2a–2e) …… 135
Period 6 Section B(3a–Self Check) …… 142
素养：诚信乃立身之本 …… 141

Unit 6 An old man tried to move the mountains.

魔法六维导图 …… 145
记忆大师 …… 145

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 1 Section A(1a–2d)····· 147
Period 2 Section A(3a–3c)····· 151
Period 3 Section A(Grammar Focus–4c)
····· 155
Period 4 Section B(1a–1d)····· 160
Period 5 Section B(2a–2e)····· 162
Period 6 Section B(3a–Self Check) ····· 169
素养：学会微笑，学会解压 ····· 158

Unit 7 What's the highest mountain in the world?

魔法六维导图····· 172
记忆大师····· 172
Period 1 Section A(1a–2d)····· 174
Period 2 Section A(3a–3c)····· 179
Period 3 Section A(Grammar Focus–4c)
····· 185
Period 4 Section B(1a–1d)····· 190
Period 5 Section B(2a–2e)····· 192
Period 6 Section B(3a–Self Check) ····· 198
素养：培养旅游情怀，学会生活 ····· 177

Unit 8 Have you read *Treasure Island* yet?

魔法六维导图····· 201
记忆大师····· 201
Period 1 Section A(1a–2d)····· 203
Period 2 Section A(3a–3c)····· 207
Period 3 Section A(Grammar Focus–4c)
····· 211
Period 4 Section B(1a–1d)····· 214
Period 5 Section B(2a–2e)····· 215
Period 6 Section B(3a–Self Check) ····· 222
素养：让生活充满笑声，活出旷达人生 ··· 221

Unit 9 Have you ever been to a museum?

魔法六维导图····· 226
记忆大师····· 226
Period 1 Section A(1a–2d)····· 228
Period 2 Section A(3a–3c)····· 234
Period 3 Section A(Grammar Focus–4c)
····· 238
Period 4 Section B(1a–1d)····· 241
Period 5 Section B(2a–2e)····· 242
Period 6 Section B(3a–Self Check) ····· 250
素养：观察生活，培养发明意识 ····· 232

Unit 10 I've had this bike for three years.

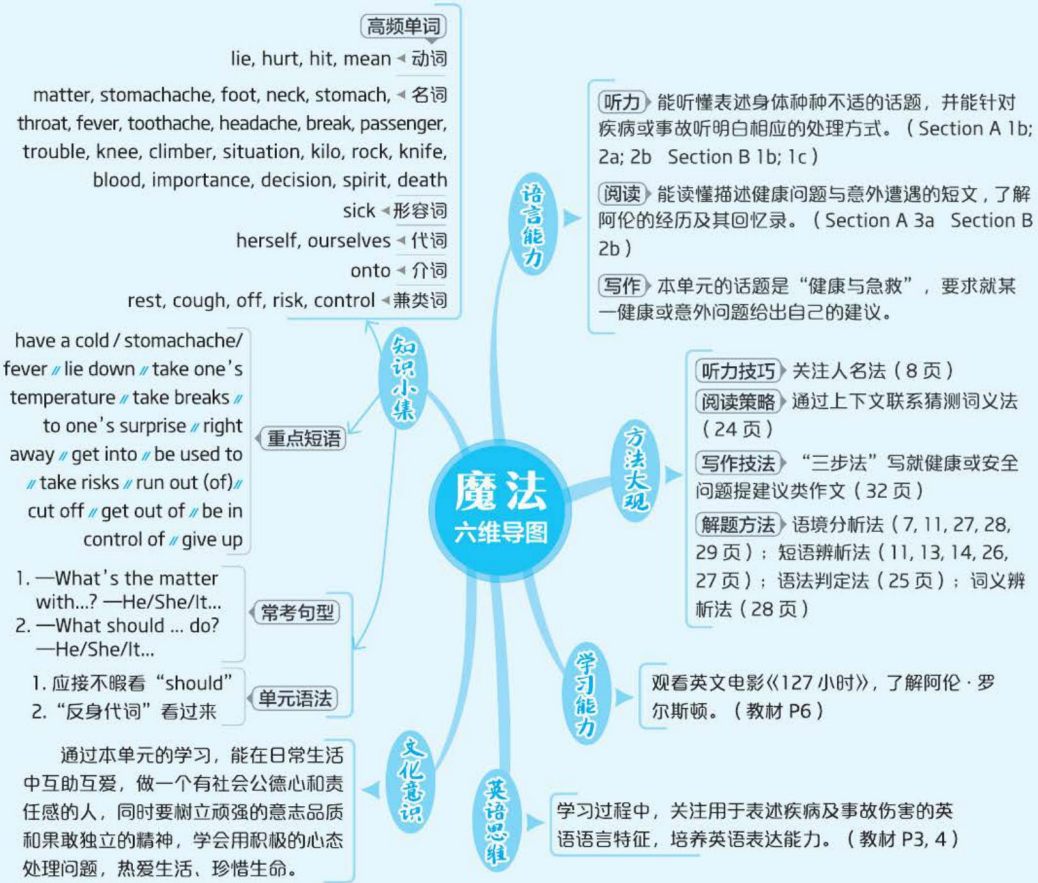
魔法六维导图····· 253
记忆大师····· 253
Period 1 Section A(1a–2d)····· 255
Period 2 Section A(3a–3c)····· 259
Period 3 Section A(Grammar Focus–4c)
····· 263
Period 4 Section B(1a–1d)····· 266
Period 5 Section B(2a–2d)····· 267
Period 6 Section B(3a–Self Check) ····· 275
素养：关爱留守儿童 ····· 271

参考答案及点拨 ····· 278
教材习题参考答案 ····· 288

微信公众号
教辅资料站
关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 1 What's the matter?

词汇表听写



记忆大师

Period 1 Section A (1a–2d)

必背单词

1. **matter** *n.* 问题 2. **foot** *n.* 脚；足→feet（复数）
3. **neck** *n.* 颈，脖子
4. **stomach** *n.* 胃→stomachache *n.* 胃痛
5. **throat** *n.* 咽喉
6. **fever** *n.* 发烧→have a fever 发烧
7. **lie** *v.* 躺→lay（过去式）→lain（过去分词）→lying（现在分词）
8. **rest** *v.*& *n.* 放松→take/have a rest 休息一下
9. **cough** *n.*&*v.* 咳嗽
10. **X-ray** *n.* X 射线→take an X-ray 拍 X 光照片
11. **toothache** *n.* 牙痛→tooth *n.* 牙齿
12. **headache** *n.* 头痛→have a headache 头痛
13. **break** *n.* 间歇→take breaks/take a break 休息
14. **hurt** *v.*（使）疼痛；受伤→hurt（过去式）→hurt（过去分词）

必背短语

15. have a cold/stomachache 感冒 / 胃痛
16. lie down 躺下

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

17. take one's temperature 量体温
18. take breaks=take a break 休息

‖必背句子

19. Yeah, **I think** I sat in the same way for too long without moving. 是啊，我想我保持同样的坐姿太久了而没动。
20. **If** your head and neck still hurt tomorrow, then go to a doctor. 如果明天你的头和脖子还疼的话，就去看医生吧。

Period 2 Section A (3a–3c)

‖必背单词

1. **passenger** *n.* 乘客→passengers（复数）
2. **trouble** *n.* 问题 →have trouble (in) doing sth. 做某事有困难
3. **hit** *v.*（用手或器具）击；打→hit（过去式）→hit（过去分词）

‖必背短语

4. think twice 认真思考，权衡利弊
5. get off 下车→get on 上车
6. wait for 等待；等候
7. to one's surprise 使……惊讶的是
8. thanks to 多亏；由于→thanks for 因……而感谢
9. in time 及时→on time 准时
10. right away=at once 立即；马上
11. agree to do sth. 同意做某事→agree with sb. 同意某人（的意见或观点等）
12. get into 陷入；参与

‖必背句子

13. "**It's sad that** many people don't want to help others because they don't want any trouble," says one passenger. "遗憾的是，许多人因为不想惹上麻烦而不愿帮助他人，"一位乘客说。

Period 3 Section A (Grammar Focus–4c)

‖必背单词

1. **herself** *pron.*（she 的反身代词）她自己
   →themselves 他 / 她 / 它们自己
   →she 她（主格）→her 她（宾格）

‖必背短语

2. fall down 摔倒；跌倒

‖必背句子 & 语法

3. —What's the matter with Ben? 本怎么了?
   —He hurt **himself**. 他伤着自己了。
4. —What **should** she do? 她应该怎么做?
   —She **should** take her temperature. 她应该量一下体温。

Period 4 Section B (1a–1d)

‖必背单词

1. **sick** *adj.* 生病的
2. **knee** *n.* 膝；膝盖

Period 5 Section B (2a–2e)

‖必背单词

1. **ourselves** *pron.* 我们自己
2. **climber** *n.* 登山者→climb *v.* 爬；攀登
3. **risk** *n.* & *v.* 危险；冒险→take risks (take a risk) 冒险
4. **situation** *n.* 情况　5. **rock** *n.* 岩石
6. **knife** *n.* 刀→knives（复数）
7. **blood** *n.* 血→bleed *v.* 流血
8. **mean** *v.* 意思是→mean to do sth. 打算做某事 →mean doing sth. 意味着做某事
9. **importance** *n.* 重要性→important *adj.* 重要的
10. **decision** *n.* 决定→decide *v.* 决定
11. **control** *n.* & *v.* 限制→be in control of 掌管
12. **spirit** *n.* 勇气；意志
13. **death** *n.* 死；死亡→die *v.* 死→dead *adj.* 死的

‖必背短语

14. have problems (in) doing sth. 做某事有问题
15. be/get/become used to doing 习惯于做…… →be used to do 被用来做…… →used to do sth. 过去常常做某事
16. run out (of) 用尽
17. cut off 切除→cut down 砍倒
18. get out of 离开→get into 陷入；参与
19. keep on doing sth. 继续或坚持做某事
20. give up 放弃

‖必背句子

21. On April 26, 2003, he **found** himself **in a very dangerous situation** when climbing in Utah. 在 2003 年 4 月 26 日，当他在犹他州登山时发现自己的处境非常危险。

Period 6 Section B (3a–Self Check)

‖必背单词

nurse *n.* 护士

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 1 Section A（1a–2d）



I. 课文原文、译文

Language Goals: Talk about health problems and accidents; Give advice
语言目标：谈论健康问题和事故；给出建议

What's the matter/'mætə(r)/? ① 怎么了?
I have a cold. 我感冒了。
What's the matter? 怎么了?
I have ② a stomachache/ 'stʌməkeɪk/ ③. 我胃疼。
I have a sore/sɔ:(r)/ back. 我背疼。

1a Look at the picture. Write the correct letter [a-m] for each part of the body.
看图。用 a 到 m 为身体各部位写出正确的字母。

h arm 胳膊　_____back 背　_____ear 耳朵　_____eye 眼睛
_____foot/fʊt/ 脚　_____hand 手　_____head 头
_____leg 腿　_____mouth 嘴　_____neck/nek/ 脖子
_____nose 鼻子　_____stomach/ 'stʌmək/ 胃；腹部
_____tooth 牙齿

1b Listen and look at the picture. Then number the names [1-5].
听录音并看图。然后用 1 到 5 标出名字的序号。



Nancy/'nænsi/ 南希 _____　Sarah 萨拉___1___
David 戴维 _____　Ben 本 _____
Judy/'dʒu:di/ 朱迪 _____

1c Look at the picture. What are the students' problems? Make conversations.
看图。学生们的问题是什么？编对话。

A: What's the matter with Judy? 朱迪怎么了?
B: She talked too much ④ yesterday and didn't drink enough ⑤ water. She has a very sore throat /θrəʊt/ now. 她昨天说话太多了，并且没喝足够的水。现在她嗓子非常疼。

2a Listen and number the pictures [1-5] in the order you hear them.
听录音，按照你听到的顺序用 1 到 5 给图片排序。



2b Listen again. Match the problems with the advice. 再听一遍录音。把问题和建议连线。

1. fever/'fi:və(r)/ 发烧
2. stomachache 胃疼
3. cough/kɒf/ and sore throat 咳嗽，嗓子疼
4. toothache/'tu:θeɪk/ 牙疼
5. cut myself 把手割破了

a. lie/laɪ/ down ⑥ and rest/rest/ ⑦ 躺下休息
b. drink some hot tea with ⑧ honey 喝一些加蜂蜜的热茶
c. see a dentist and get an X-ray/'eks reɪ/ 看牙医并拍一张 X 光片
d. take your temperature 量你的体温
e. put some medicine on it 在它上面上点药

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

2c Make conversations using the information in 2a and 2b. 用 2a 和 2b 中的信息编对话。

A: What's the matter? 怎么了?

B: My head feels[9] very hot. 我的头摸起来很热。

A: Maybe you have a fever… 或许你发烧了……

B: …

2d Role-play the conversation. 分角色表演对话。

课文朗读 2d

Mandy/'mændi/: Lisa, are you OK? 莉萨，你还好吗?

Lisa: I have a headache/'hedeɪk/ and I can't move my neck. What should I do? Should I take my temperature? 我头疼，脖子也动不了。我该做什么? 我应该量体温吗?

Mandy: No, it doesn't sound like you have a fever. What did you do on the weekend? 不，听起来你不像发烧。你周末做什么了?

Lisa: I played computer games all weekend. 我整个周末都在玩电脑游戏。

Mandy: That's probably why. You need to take breaks/breɪks/[10] away from the computer. 或许那就是原因了。你需要远离电脑休息。

Lisa: Yeah, I think I sat in the same way for too long without[11] moving. 是的，我想我保持同样的坐姿太久了而没动。 宾语从句

Mandy: I think you should lie down and rest. If[12] your head and neck still hurt/hɜ:(r)t/[13] tomorrow, then go to a doctor. 我认为你应该躺下来休息。如果明天你的头和脖子还疼，就去看医生。

Lisa: OK. Thanks, Mandy. 好的。谢谢，曼迪。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注　　•考点应用

★What's the matter?

"(你)怎么了?"各种常见表达归纳:
① What's the matter (with you)?
② What's the trouble (with you)?
③ What's the problem (with you)?
④ What's wrong (with you)?
⑤ What's up (with you)?
⑥ What happened (to you)?
⑦ Is there anything wrong (with you)?

①常用来询问对方所遇到的麻烦，或医生及护士询问病人的身体状况，常与 **with** 连用，其后跟 **sb./sth.**，引出询问的对象。

e.g. —What's the matter (with you)?
(你)怎么了?
—I lost my pen./ I have a cold.
我把我的钢笔弄丢了。/ 我感冒了。

考题在线 1 —You don't look well. _____ with you?
—I have a fever and can't stop coughing. [宜昌]
A. What's happening　　B. What is it
C. What's on　　D. What's the matter

点拨: 本题考查交际用语。根据答语"我发烧了，还不停地咳嗽。"可推断，问句问的是"你怎么了"。

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★**I have a stomachache.** "have a/an+疾病名称",表示患病或身体某部位不舒服。

② **have** *vt.* 患(病);遭受(病痛)


have a cold
感冒


have a toothache
牙疼


have a fever
发烧


have a headache
头疼

③ **stomachache**/'stʌməkeɪk/ *n.* **胃痛;腹痛**

e.g. Mary has a stomachache.
玛丽胃疼。

名词 stomach(胃;腹部)+ache(疼痛)构成。

"身体部位+ache"构成疾病名称:
head+ache=headache 头痛
tooth+ache=toothache 牙痛
back+ache=backache 背痛

★**She talked too much yesterday and didn't drink enough water.**

④ **too much** 太多

辨析: too much, too many 与 much too

too much	①形容词性短语,中心词是 much,常作定语,修饰不可数名词。 ②副词性短语,用来作状语,修饰动词。 ③名词性短语,用来作主语、表语或宾语等。
too many	意为"太多",用来修饰可数名词复数。
much too	意为"太……",副词性短语,中心词是 too,相当于 very,修饰形容词或副词。

Happiness lies, first of all, in health.
健康是人生第一财富。

e.g. Some people watch too much TV. 有些人看电视太多。(修饰名词 TV)
Don't talk too much. 不要说太多话。(修饰动词 talk)
Too much was happening at once. 同时发生的事情太多了。(作主语)
There are too many cars on the road. 路上车辆太多。(修饰名词 cars)
He was driving much too fast. 他开得太快了。(修饰副词 fast)

⑤ **enough** /ɪ'nʌf/ *det.* & *adv.* (to the degree that is necessary or wanted) **足够的(地);充足的(地)**

作限定词,修饰名词时,可以放在名词前。

e.g. There was enough rain last year. 去年有足够的雨水。
It's warm enough in the room. 屋子里足够暖和了。
He runs quickly enough. 他跑得足够快。

作副词,可修饰形容词或副词,要放在被修饰的词之后。

考题在线 2 —May I be allowed to choose a summer course?
—It's up to you. You're _____ to make your own decision. [郴州]
A. too old B. enough old C. old enough

点拨: 句意:——可以允许我选择一个暑期课程吗?——由你决定,你足够大了,可以自己做决定了。too old 指太大(而不能自己做决定),不符合逻辑,enough 修饰形容词,需放在形容词之后。

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★lie down and rest

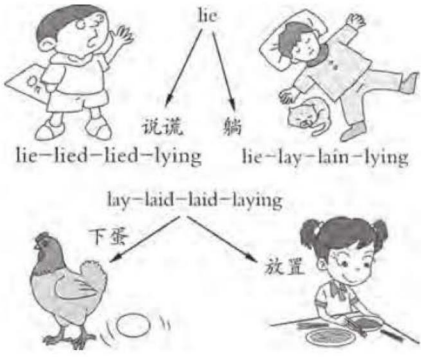
⑥ **lie down** 躺下

e.g. There was a child lying on the ground. 地上躺着一个小孩。

辨析: lie 与 lay:

原形	过去式	过去分词	现在分词
lie *vi.* 躺；位于	lay	lain	lying
lie *vi.* 说谎	lied	lied	lying
lay *vt.* 放置；下蛋	laid	laid	laying

速记小筏：规则是说谎(lie-lied-lied)，不规则是躺(lie-lay-lain)。躺过就下蛋，下蛋不规则。



考题在线 3 —Where is Xi's Family Garden (习家池)?

—It _____ 5 km south to the Old City of Xiangyang. [襄阳]

A. lies　　B. lives

C. lays　　D. lists

⑦ **rest**/rest/ *v.*& *n.* (to relax, sleep or do nothing after a period of activity or illness) 放松；休息

e.g. You should rest your eyes after a lot of reading. (及物动词)

在大量阅读之后，你应该休息一下你的眼睛。

I've been riding Mobike all morning, and I want to rest now. (不及物动词)

我骑了一上午摩拜单车，现在我想休息。

Students have a rest / break after each lesson. (名词)

学生们每节课后都休息一下。

have/take a rest= have/take a break，意为"休息一下"。

★drink some hot tea with honey

⑧ **with** *prep.* 带有；具有

e.g. He likes drinking coffee with sugar. 他喜欢喝咖啡时加糖。

He is writing with a pencil. (用，表示使用工具或手段等。) 他在用铅笔写字。

Can you go home with me? 你能和我一起回家吗?

The shadow moves with the sun. (和……在一起，表示陪伴。) 影子随着太阳而动。(随着，由于)

★with 反义词为 without"没有"。with honey 是介词短语，在本句中作后置定语，修饰 hot tea。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★My head feels very hot.

敲黑板 常用词组 feel like 意为“摸起来像；感觉像”

⑨ **feel** /fi:l/ *v.* 摸起来；感觉

e.g. Silk feels soft and smooth.
丝绸摸起来柔软平滑。

I feel fine. / I'm feeling fine.
我感觉良好。/ 我现在感觉良好。

feel 常用作系动词，其后跟形容词作表语。其主要用法有：
① 表示某物摸起来给人的感觉，通常要从被摸之物作主语，不可用于进行时态。
② 表示某人的感觉，从人作主语，可用于进行时态。

考题在线 4 —Look, Linda. The flowers in our classroom came out in one night.
—I can't believe it. They are beautiful and colorful. They _____ great.
A. sound B. smell C. taste

点拨：本题用语境分析法。句意：“看，琳达。我们教室里的花儿一个晚上就开放了。”“我无法相信。它们漂亮又色彩缤纷。它们闻起来很香。”

感官动词
- smell 闻起来
- taste 尝起来
- sound 听起来
- feel 摸起来
- look 看起来

★You need to take breaks away from the computer.

⑩ **take breaks** 休息，相当于 **take/have a break**。其中 break 为可数名词，意为“间歇；休息”。

e.g. You should take breaks from work and do some exercise.
你应该暂停工作休息一下，做些运动。

He sat under the big tree to take breaks. 他坐在那棵大树下休息。

★Yeah, I think I sat in the same way for too long without moving.

⑪ **without**/wɪ'ðaʊt/ *prep.* 没有；缺乏

e.g. We got there without any trouble.
我们到了那儿，一路上没遇到任何麻烦。

without 后接名词、代词或 v.-ing 作宾语，其反义词为 with。

She left the room without saying a word. 她一句话都没说就离开了房间。

I won't finish the work without your help.(=If you don't help me, I won't finish the work.) 如果你不帮我的话，我就不能完成这项工作。

一般情况下，含有 without 的句子常可和 If... not... 句型进行转换。

考题在线 5 Could you please give me a hand? I can't complete the task on time _____ your help. [广东]
A. without B. under C. with D. for

点拨：由前句“Could you please give me a hand?”可知后句表示“没有你的帮助，我不可能按时完成任务。”without 意为“没有”。

★If your head and neck still hurt tomorrow, then go to a doctor.

⑫ **if** *conj.* 如果 if 可作连词，在句中引导条件状语从句。注意在含有 if 引导的条件状语从句的主从复合句中，遵循“主将从现”的原则，即主句用一般将来时，if 从句用一般现在时表示将来。

e.g. If it doesn't rain tomorrow, we will go camping.
如果明天不下雨的话，我们就去野营。

考题在线 6 You can surf the Internet _____ you want to know about the 2020 World Middle School Games. [福建]
A. until B. after C. if

点拨：本题用语境分析法。until 直到……为止；after 在……后；if 如果。句意：如果你想了解 2020 年世界中学生运动会，你可以上网查询。

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

小贴士：身体伤害中用 badly 修饰。精神、感情受到创伤用 very much/ rather/ deeply 修饰。

⑬ **hurt**/hɜ:(r)t/ *v.*（使）疼痛；受伤 hurt-hurt（过去式）-hurt（过去分词）。

e.g. My feet hurt. 我脚疼。

You hurt her feelings because you forgot her birthday.
你伤害了她的感情因为你忘记了她的生日。

I have a sore leg. 我腿疼。

She has a toothache. 她牙疼。

Do you have a cold? 你感冒了吗？

His hand hurts badly. 他的手疼得厉害。

I have a pain in the arm. 我胳膊疼。

表达“疼痛或不舒服”的方式：
- have a sore+ 身体部位
- have a+“身体部位 +ache”
- have a+ 病症
- 身体部位 +hurt(s)
- have a pain in/on the+ 部位

考题在线答案 1. D 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. A 6. C

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

（答案见278页）

听力技巧

关注人名法（听录音时，抓住录音中的人名和关键短语将有助于我们抓住问题，顺利找到答案。）

听力过程

一、听 1b，选择正确答案

课文听力 1b

1. From the conversations, who had a stomachache?
A. Sarah. B. David. C. Nancy.

2. From the conversations, who hurt himself / herself?
A. Ben. B. Nancy.
C. Judy.

二、听 2a 完成表格，每空不超过 3 个单词

课文听力 2a

Problems	Ways
My head feels hot.	You should _____[3].
I have a cough and _____[4].	You should drink some hot tea with honey.
I _____[5].	You should lie down and rest.
I have a toothache.	You should see a dentist and _____[6].
I cut myself _____[7].	You should put some medicine on it.

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

（答案见278页）

一、根据句意及首字母提示补全单词

1. She had a f_____ all the night and didn't sleep well.
2. Lily has a t_____. She has to see a dentist right now. 【导学号：2039901】
3. There is something wrong with my s_____, so I can't eat anything.
4. Mum asked me to l_____ the table for dinner. [天津]
5. My f_____ are aching.

二、单项选择

6. —Mr. Li, I feel a little nervous before the coming exam.
—You'd better take a _____ from studies and relax yourself.
A. break B. breath C. walk D. lie

7. Hawking is no longer with us _____ he will continue to inspire the world. [扬州]
A. so B. if C. but D. as

8. My brother went to school _____ breakfast

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

because he got up late.

A. with　　B. without

C. not eat　　D. didn't eat

9. The skirt is made of silk. It _____ so soft. I like it. [荆门]

A. washes　　B. is washed

C. is felt　　D. feels

10. —Why are you so tired these days?

—Well, I have _____ work to do.

A. too much　　B. too many

C. much too　　D. many too

三、根据汉语意思完成句子

11. ——约翰怎么了?

——他喉咙痛。

— _____ the matter _____ John?

—He _____ a _____ _____.

12. 我应该量一下体温吗?

_____ I _____ my _____?

13. 她在做饭的时候伤到了自己。

She _____ _____ while she was cooking.

14. 你最好喝点加蜂蜜的热茶。

You'd better drink some hot tea _____ _____.

15. 杰克病了，他应该躺下休息。

Jack is ill; he should_____ _____and rest.

Period 2 Section A(3a–3c)

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

3a Read the passage. Do you think it comes from a newspaper or a book? How do you know?

阅读这篇文章。你认为它是来自一份报纸还是一本书? 你是如何知道的?

课文朗读 3a

Bus Driver and Passengers/'pæsɪndʒə(r)z/ Save an Old Man

公交车司机和乘客救了一位老人

At 9:00 a.m. yesterday, bus No. 26 was going along Zhonghua Road when the driver saw an old man lying② on the side of the road.① A woman next to him was shouting for help. 昨天上午 9 点钟，26 路公交车正沿着中华路行驶，这时司机看见一位老人躺在路边。一位妇女在他旁边大声呼救。

The bus driver, 24-year-old Wang Ping, stopped the bus without thinking twice. He got off/ɒf/③ and asked the woman what happened④. She said that the man had a heart problem and should go to the hospital. Mr. Wang knew he had to act quickly. He told the passengers that he must take the man to the hospital. He expected⑤ most or all of the passengers to get off and wait for the next bus⑥. But to his surprise⑦, they all agreed to go⑧ with him. Some passengers helped Mr. Wang to move the man onto/'ɒntu/, /'ɑːntu/ the bus.

24 岁的公交车司机王平没有多想便停下了车。他下了车并问那个妇女发生了什么事。她说这位老人有心脏病，应该去医院。王先生知道他必须快速行动。他告诉乘客们他必须带老人去医院。他希望大部分或所有乘客下车去等下一辆公交车。但是让他意外的是，他们都同意和他一起去。一些乘客帮助王先生把老人抬到了公交车上。

Thanks to⑨ Mr. Wang and the passengers, the man was saved by the doctors in time⑩. "It's sad that many people don't want to help others because they don't want any trouble/'trʌbl/⑪," says one passenger. "But the driver didn't think about himself. He only thought about saving a life."

形式主语　真正主语

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

多亏了王先生和乘客们，医生及时挽救了老人的生命。一位乘客说："很多人不想帮助他人是因为他们不想惹麻烦，这是很悲哀的。但是这个司机没有考虑自己。他只想着救人一命。"

3b Read the passage again and check (√) the things that happened in the story.

再读一遍文章并在故事中发生过的事情前勾（√）。

1. _____ Wang Ping was the driver of bus No.26 at 9:00 a.m. yesterday.
   王平是昨天上午 9 点钟 26 路公交车的司机。
2. _____ Bus No. 26 hit/hɪt/[搜] an old man on Zhonghua Road. 26路公交车在中华路上撞了一位老人。
3. _____ The old man had a heart problem and needed to go to the hospital right away[搜].
   老人有心脏病并且需要立刻去医院。
4. _____ The passengers on the bus did not want to go to the hospital, so only Wang Ping went with the woman and old man. 公交车上的乘客们不想去医院，因此只有王平和那位妇女及老人去了。
5. _____ Some passengers helped to get the old man onto the bus. 一些乘客帮忙把老人抬上了公交车。
6. _____ The old man got to the hospital in time. 那位老人及时到达了医院。

3c Discuss the questions with a partner. 和一个搭档讨论下列问题。

1. Why was Wang Ping surprised that the passengers agreed to go to the hospital with him?
   为什么王平对乘客们同意跟他一起去医院感到惊讶?
2. Did the passengers think Wang Ping did the right thing? How do you know?
   乘客们认为王平做了正确的事吗？你是如何知道的?
3. Do you agree that people often do not help others because they do not want to get into trouble? Why or why not? 你同意人们经常不帮助他人是因为他们不想惹麻烦（这种观点）吗？为什么同意或为什么不同意?

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读 60分

（答案见278页）

阅读过程

一、速读 3a，回答问题

1. Do you think Wang Ping would do it again if he meets a similar thing next time?

（主旨大意题）

_____

二、细读 3a，选择正确答案

2. Where does the story happen?

（细节查找题）

A. On Nanjing Road.
B. On Zhonghua Road.
C. On the No. 26 bus.
D. In the hospital.

3. Which is NOT true according to the passage?

（细节推理题）

A. The passengers helped Mr.Wang to move the man onto the bus.
B. Some passengers didn't agree to go with Mr.Wang.
C. Mr.Wang got off the bus and asked the woman what happened.
D. Mr.Wang didn't think about himself.

4. In this passage, the writer mainly suggests that we should _____. （主旨大意题）

A. save the old man without thinking twice
B. agree to wait for the next bus
C. go with the woman and the old man
D. help others when they are in trouble

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

•考点应用 •考点批注

★At 9: 00 a.m. yesterday, bus No. 26 was going along Zhonghua Road when the driver saw an old man lying on the side of the road.

① 【高频】【句法分析】when 引导时间状语从句，放在过去进行时构成的主句之后，表示“某事正在进行，这时另一件事情发生了”，相当于 at this/that time。

e.g. He was just getting into the shower when the telephone rang.
他正要进入浴室，这时电话（突然）响了起来。

② **see sb. doing sth.** 看见某人正在做某事

see sb. doing sth. 中 doing sth. 作 sb. 的宾语补足语，表示动作正在进行。

e.g. I saw Grandma doing morning exercises in the yard just now.
我刚才看见奶奶正在院子里晨练。

辨析：see sb. doing sth. 与 see sb. do sth.

- see sb. doing sth.：看见某人正在做某事；强调看见动作正在进行
- see sb. do sth.：看见某人做某事；强调看见动作发生的整个过程或看见动作经常发生

e.g. We saw him crossing the road.
我们看见他正在过马路。（强调动作正在进行）
We saw him cross the road.
我们看见他过马路了。（强调动作的全过程）
I often see him play basketball in the playground.
我经常看见他在操场上打篮球。（强调看见动作经常发生）

小贴士：类似于 see 这种用法的动词，常见的还有 watch, hear, notice 等，其后都可以跟 do sth. 或 doing sth. 作宾语补足语。

考题在线 1 While I was walking along the lake, I saw some fish _____ out of the water.
A. jumped B. to jump C. jumping D. are jumping
点拨：本题用语境分析法。句意：当我沿着湖边散步时，我看到一些鱼正从水里跳出来。由 while 可知，是指看到动作正在发生。see sb./sth. doing sth.“看到某人 / 某物正在做某事”。

★He got off and asked the woman what happened.

③ 【高频】**get off** 下车

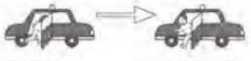
e.g. He got off at Guangming Road. 他在光明路下车了。

考题在线 2 I took the subway and _____ at the downtown station. [武汉]
A. got through B. got over C. got on D. got off
点拨：本题用短语辨析法。句意：我乘坐地铁，在市中心的站下了车。get through 通过；get over 克服；get on 上车；get off 下车。

get 一家子：



get on 上（公共汽车） get off 下（公共汽车）



get into 上（小汽车） get out of 下（小汽车）

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

④ **happen**/'hæpən/*vi.* (to take place, especially without being planned) 发生

e.g. An accident happened in that street. 那条街上发生了一起事故。

The story happened in 2017. 这个故事发生在 2017 年。

What happened to Judy? 朱迪发生了什么事?

She happened to meet her friend in the bookstore. 她在书店里碰巧遇见了她的朋友。

It happened that I had no money with me. 碰巧我身上没带钱。

不及物动词，不能用于被动语态，且不与表示一段时间的状语连用。

表示“某人出了某事（常指不好的事）”，用句型 Sth. happened to sb.。

当 happen 作“碰巧”讲时，常用于句型 Sb. happened to do sth. 和 It happened+that 从句。

★He expected most or all of the passengers to get off and wait for the next bus.

⑤ **expect sb.to do sth.** 期待某人做某事

e.g. We expect you to help us. 我们期盼你帮助我们。

I expect to be back within a week. 我预计一周之内回来。

Many people were expecting that the peace talks would break down. 许多人预料和平谈判会破裂。

expect 的常用词组
①expect to do sth. 预计做某事
②“expect + that 从句”预料……

考题在线 3 —Do you think our basketball team will win the match?

—Yes, we have better players. So I _____ them to win.

A. hope　　B. help　　C. expect　　D. advise

点拨：考查动词辨析。由语境可知，我期待我们的篮球队能赢得这场比赛。expect sb. to do sth. 期望某人做某事；hope 后不可接复合宾语，即“宾语 + 不定式”。

小贴士：wait 是不及物动词，后面不能直接跟宾语，“等公交车”不能译为 wait a bus。

⑥ **wait for sb./sth.** 等待某人 / 某事物

e.g. Jack is waiting for you at the school gate. 杰克正在学校门口等你。

★But to his surprise, they all agreed to go with him.

⑦ **to one's surprise** 使某人惊讶的是

e.g. To his surprise, the plan succeeded. 让他吃惊的是，那个计划竟然成功了。

通常用作插入语，放在句首，用逗号与其他部分隔开。

to one 's+ 表示感情色彩的名词，“令 / 使某人……的是”。
to one 's joy/happiness 令 / 使某人高兴的是
to one 's disappointment 令 / 使某人失望的是
to one 's shame 令某人羞愧的是
to one 's satisfaction 令 / 使某人满意的是

【重点】surprise 及其派生词的相关用法：

surprise	动词	surprise sb.
	名词	to one's surprise, give sb. a surprise, in surprise
surprising	形容词	常修饰物，意为“令人惊讶的”
surprised		常用人作主语，意为“感到惊讶的”

考题在线 4 根据所给汉语提示补全句子。

—_____（让我惊讶的是），that robot can drive a car.

—I've never seen such a wonderful robot, either. [连云港]

⑧ **agree to do sth.** 同意做某事

e.g. She agreed to help me. 她同意帮助我。

I agree to go hiking with him. 我同意和他一起去远足。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

I entirely agree with you. 我完全同意你的看法。

We agree on the question. 我们在这个问题上意见一致。

考题在线 5 They all _____ Laura about building a museum here.

A. waited for　　B. handed in

C. agreed with　　D. knocked at

点拨：考查动词短语辨析。句意为“他们都同意劳拉在这儿建一个博物馆的建议。”wait for 等待；hand in 上交；agree with 赞同（某人的观点）；knock at 敲击。根据句意可知答案。

agree
+to do sth. 同意做某事
+with sb. 同意某人的观点
+on sth. 就某事取得一致意见

★**Thanks to Mr.Wang and the passengers, the man was saved by the doctors in time.**

介词短语，后常跟名词或代词，在句中作状语，常位于句首，有时可与 because of 或 with the help of 互换。

⑨ **thanks to 多亏；由于**

e.g. Thanks to/Because of the warm and sunny weather, oranges grow very well here. 由于气候温和、阳光充足，这里的橘子生长得非常好。

Thanks to/With the help of the policeman, we caught the thief at last. 多亏了那个警察的帮助，最后我们抓住了那个小偷。

【重点】辨析：thanks to 与 thanks for

thanks to	由于；多亏；因为	并无当面感谢的意思，其后可接名词或代词
thanks for	因……而感谢	后接感谢的原因，其后可接名词、代词或 *v.*-ing 形式

Cease to struggle and you cease to live.
生命不止，奋斗不息。

考题在线 6 — The population of the poor is getting smaller and smaller.

— _____ the government, their living conditions have improved.

A. As for　　B. Thanks to

C. As a result of　　D. Thanks for

点拨：本题用短语辨析法。as for 至于；thanks to 多亏；as a result of 由于；thanks for 因为……而感谢。句意：——贫困人口变得越来越少了。——多亏了政府，他们的生活条件得到了改善。

⑩ **in time 及时**

e.g. The doctor came in time and saved his life.
医生及时到来挽救了他的生命。



in time 及时



on time 准时

辨析：in time 与 on time

time
- in time及时：强调正好赶上事先约定的时间，没有迟到
- on time准时：按计划做某事，强调不迟到，不早不晚

★**“It’s sad that many people don’t want to help others because they don’t want any trouble,” says one passenger.**

⑪ **trouble** /ˈtrʌbl/ *n.*&*v.* 问题；苦恼；麻烦

e.g. The less trouble, the better.（谚）多一事不如少一事。

不可数名词

一语辨异：Don't trouble trouble until trouble troubles you.
麻烦没来找你，不要自找麻烦。

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Could I trouble you to open the door? 能麻烦你开一下门吗？
作动词，表示“使烦恼，使忧虑；麻烦”。

考题在线 7 —Sally is my best friend. She is always there whenever I'm _____.

—Yeah. A friend in need is a friend indeed. [福州]

A. in order　　B. in trouble　　C. in public

点拨：本题用短语辨析法。in order 按次序，井然有序；in trouble 陷入困境；in public 在公共场合。根据答句后一句句意“患难见真情。”可知每当“我”身陷困境时，她总是在那里（帮助“我”）。

trouble 常用词组
① get into trouble 陷入困境
② have trouble / difficulty/problems with sth.=have trouble /difficulty/problems (in) doing sth. 做某事有困难
③ ask for trouble 自寻烦恼
④ in trouble 陷入困境

核心素养之学习能力

学会用积极的心态处理问题

人们处在纷繁的人类社会中会遇到各种各样的问题和烦恼，得到行之有效处理问题的方法是成功的保证。当面对苦恼时，我们应提醒自己保持理性(keep rational)，自我鼓励(encourage ourselves)，用哲理或名言安慰(comfort)自己，还可以有意识地转移(transfer)话题，使情绪得到缓解(relieve)。

素养 行动 当同学们面对困难时，要以积极乐观的心态处理各种问题，摆脱麻烦困扰。
素养 行动结果 学会积极应对麻烦，学会处理问题的方法。

★Bus No. 26 hit an old man on Zhonghua Road.

⑫ **hit** /hɪt/ *v.*（用手或器具）击；打

e.g. The boy hit the dog with a stone.
那个男孩用一块石头打那只狗。

hit-hit（过去式）-hit（过去分词）-hitting（现在分词）。

表示“打某人/某物某个部位”hit sb./sth. on/in the+部位



hit sb. on the head 打某人的头



hit sb. in the face 打某人的脸

考题在线 8 —What's wrong with Simon? He isn't at school today.

—His legs hurt. He was _____ by a motorcycle this morning. [南京改编]

A. treated　　B. hit　　C. operated　　D. cured

点拨：考查动词辨析。句意为“——西蒙怎么了？他今天不在学校。——他的腿受伤了。今天早晨他被一辆摩托车撞了。”treat 治疗；hit 撞；operate 操作，动手术；cure 治愈。根据句意可知答案。

小贴士：打在人体硬部位上用介词 on，软部位上用介词 in，且结构中的定冠词 the 通常不可用物主代词 my，his 等代替。

★The old man had a heart problem and needed to go to the hospital right away.

⑬ **right away** 立即；马上

e.g. He set off right away hearing the news. 听到那个消息，他立即动身了。

★ right away 的同义词和同义短语分别是 immediately 和 right now/at once。

考题在线 9 选出与画线部分意思相同或相近的选项。

My father will leave for England at once. [黔西南]

A. right away　　B. at times　　C. on time　　D. just now

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

点拨: right away=at once 马上；at times 有时；on time 按时；just now 刚才。

句意：我父亲马上要去英国。

考题在线答案 1.C 2.D 3.C 4.To my surprise 5.C 6.B 7.B 8.B 9.A

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见278页)

一、根据句意及首字母提示填补单词

1. To his s_____, his father agreed with him to watch the football match together. [阜康]
2. I didn't mean to t_____ Curry yesterday. It was pouring with rain so I accepted his offer of a lift. [武汉改编]
3. The players h_____ the ball very hard. At last, they won the match.
4. —Did anyone call me when I was out?
   —Yes. A man who called h_____ Tom.
5. Linda and Kitty will go to Greenery Theme Park by t_____ next Sunday. [南京改编]

二、用括号内所给单词的适当形式填空

6. I saw him _____ (play) computer games when I went into the room.
7. As it _____(happen) so many years ago, I can't remember it clearly.
8. I don't expect you _____(finish) it before school. But you must try your best.
9. —We plan to go there and give them a hand.
   —I agree _____ (join) you.
10. We had no trouble _____(find) his house.

三、用方框内所给短语的适当形式填空

in time, get off, thanks to, wait for, right away

11. That man _____ the bus as quickly as he could.
12. I have been _____ her for an hour at the bus stop.
13. _____ the good policy in China, the poor family has lived a happy life. [恩施]
14. Do you think we can get to the station _____?
15. I will do my homework _____.

Period 3 Section A (Grammar Focus-4c)

I. 课文原文、译文

Grammar Focus 语法聚焦

What's the matter? 怎么了？	I have a stomachache. 我胃疼。	You shouldn't eat so much next time. 你下次不能吃这么多。
What's the matter with Ben? 本怎么了？	He hurt himself. He has a sore back. 他伤到他自己了。他后背疼。	He should lie down and rest. 他应该躺下休息。
Do you have a fever? 你发烧吗？	Yes, I do. / No, I don't. / I don't know. 是的，我发烧。/不，我不发烧。/我不知道。	

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Does he have a toothache? 他牙疼吗？	Yes, he does. 是的，他牙疼。	He should see a dentist and get an X-ray. 他应该去看牙医，拍个X光片。
What should she do? 她应该做什么？		She should take her temperature. 她应该量体温。
Should I put some medicine on it? 我应该在它上面上点药吗？		Yes, you should. / No, you shouldn't. 是的，你应该。/ 不，你不应该。

4a Fill in the blanks and practice the conversations. 填空并练习对话。

1. **A:** I hurt _____ when I played basketball yesterday. What _____ I do?
   昨天我打篮球时伤到_____。我_____做什么？
   B: You _____ see a doctor and get an X-ray. 你_____看医生，拍个X光片。
2. **A:** _____ the matter? _____事情？
   B: My sister and I _____ sore throats. _____ we go to school?
   我妹妹和我_____嗓子疼。我们_____上学吗？
   A: No, you _____. 不，你们_____。
3. **A:** _____ Mike _____ a fever? 迈克_____烧吗？
   B: No, he _____. He _____ a stomachache. 不，他_____。他_____胃疼。
   A: He _____ drink some hot tea. 他_____喝点热茶。

4b Circle the best advice for these health problems. Then add your own advice.
圈出给这些健康问题的最佳建议。然后加入你自己的建议。

1. Jenny cut herself/hɜ:(r)'self/. 珍妮割伤自己了。
   She should (get an X-ray / put some medicine on the cut). 她应该（拍X光片 / 在伤口上上点药）。
   My advice 我的建议：_____
2. Kate has a toothache. 凯特牙疼。
   She should (see a dentist / get some sleep). 她应该（看牙医 / 睡一会儿）。
   My advice 我的建议：_____
3. Mary and Sue have colds. 玛丽和苏感冒了。
   They shouldn't (sleep/exercise). 她们不应该（睡觉 / 锻炼）。
   My advice 我的建议：_____
4. Bob has a sore back. 鲍勃后背疼。
   He should (lie down and rest / take his temperature). 他应该（躺下休息 / 量体温）。
   My advice 我的建议：_____

4c One student mimes a problem. The other students in your group guess the problem and give advice. 一个学生用哑剧形式表演一种问题。你们组的其他同学猜问题并给建议。

Name 名字	Problem 问题	Advice 建议
Liu Peng 刘朋	fall down 摔倒	go home and rest 回家休息

A: What's the matter? Did you hurt yourself playing soccer? 怎么了？你踢足球时弄伤自己了吗？
B: No, I didn't. 不，我没有。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

C: Did you fall down[①]? 你摔倒了吗?

B: Yes, I did. 是的，我摔倒了。

D: You should go home and get some rest. 你应该回家休息一会儿。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲点拨 稳拿中考基础20分

•考点应用 •考点批注

Did you fall down?

① **fall down 摔倒；跌倒；倒塌**

e.g. When the little girl ran across the street, she fell down.

当那个小女孩跑过街道时，她摔倒了。

He fell down from his bike yesterday.

=He fell off his bike yesterday.

昨天他从自行车上摔了下来。

不及物动词短语，其后跟宾语时须加介词from。此时fall down from相当于fall off，意为"从……上掉/摔下来"。

拓展: fall 一家子:

fall over 被……绊倒　fall in love with 爱上　fall into 落入

fall asleep 入睡　fall behind 落后，跟不上

Ⅲ. 单元语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

"应接不暇"看 should

考点 情态动词 should 的意义及用法

1. should "应当，应该"，表示义务、责任，后接动词原形，且无人称和数的变化，否定形式是在其后 +not，可缩写为 shouldn't。

e.g. You should take a break. 表示提出意见或建议

你需要休息。

We should obey the school rules. 表示义务、责任

我们应该遵守学校的规则。

You shouldn't do that. 表示命令、责备或要求，语气比较强烈。

你们不应该那样做。

考题在线 1 Parents _____ put the things like knives and medicine away in the house to keep children safe. [凉山]

A. may　B. might　C. should　D. can

2. 用于征求对方的意见，should 表示"应当；应该"。此时，一般用于第一人称的一般疑问句或特殊疑问句中。

e.g. Should I help her clean the park?

我应该帮她打扫公园吗?

What should I do for them?

我应该为他们做些什么?

3. 表示推测方的可能性。

e.g. Mr Smith should be a doctor.

史密斯先生应该是一名医生。

"反身代词"看过来

反身代词是由第一人称、第二人称形容词性物主代词或第三人称人称代词宾格形式，词尾加 -self 或 -selves 组成的。反身代词意为"本人"、"本身"，为加强语气，也可翻译为"亲自"、"自己"。

考点 1 反身代词构成:

人称数	第一人称	第二人称	第三人称
单数	myself	yourself	himself, herself, itself
复数	ourselves	yourselves	themselves

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

考题在线 2 I don't want to be _____ else. I just want to be _____. [凉山]

A. anybody; myself B. somebody; myself

C. everybody; me D. anybody; me

点拨：考查代词的用法。句意：我不想成为其他任何人，我只想做我自己。

考点 2 反身代词的用法：

1. 作动词宾语或介词宾语。

e.g. The boy can dress himself.
这个男孩能给自己穿衣服。

Take good care of yourself.
好好照顾你自己。

2. 作主语或宾语的同位语。

e.g. Mrs. Black herself is a lawyer.
布莱克夫人本人就是一名律师。

You had better ask the driver himself.
你最好问司机本人。

3. 作表语。

e.g. Just be yourself. 做你自己。

速记小筏：

反身代词用法口诀
反身代词表自身，句中常作三成分。
动介后面用作宾，表示动作回自身。
句中强调同位语，主语宾语后面跟。

系动词后作表语，这个用法要牢记。

【易错】反身代词必须与其所指代的名词或代词形成相互关系，在人称，性和数上保持一致。

e.g. The children are enjoying themselves in the park. 孩子们正在公园里开心地玩。

【重点】反身代词的常用短语：

teach oneself=learn by oneself 自学
enjoy oneself 过得愉快
help oneself to... 随便吃 / 用……
look after oneself 照顾某人自己
dress oneself 给自己穿衣服

考题在线 3 It is Sunday. Let's just relax and enjoy _____. [大连]

A. myself B. yourself

C. ourselves D. himself

点拨：考查反身代词。enjoy oneself 过得愉快。myself 我自己；yourself 你自己；ourselves 我们自己；himself 他自己。结合第二句中的 Let's 可知选 ourselves。

考题在线 4 Modern Chinese Art _____ (it) needs new works to keep it alive and moving forward. [盐城]

考题在线答案 1.C 2.A 3.C 4.itself

Ⅳ. 单元语法专练 夺取中考语法满分

(答案见 278 页)

单项选择

1. To keep children away from danger during the coming summer holiday, parents _____ give them some safety tips. [泰州]

A. should B. may

C. could D. might

2. Dogs _____ run through soccer games at the park. It's dangerous! [苏州]

A. should B. shouldn't

C. need D. needn't

3. —Mom, can you help me wash my clothes?
—Sorry, dear. Help _____. [永州]

A. myself B. ourselves C. yourself

4. Welcome you all to China and enjoy _____ here. [黔南州]

A. yourself B. yourselves

C. themselves D. himself

5. —Do you often help your sister with her English?
—No. She learns English by _____. [德阳]

A. himself B. herself

C. myself D. yourself

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 4 Section B（1a–1d）

I. 课文原文、译文

1a When these accidents happen, what should you do? Put the actions in order.

当这些事故发生时，你应该做什么？按顺序排列这些行为。

_____ Put a bandage/'bændɪdʒ/ on it. 在它上面绑上绷带。

_____ Run it under water. 在水下冲洗一下。

_____ Put some medicine on it. 在它上面上点药。

_____ Go to the hospital. 去医院。

_____ Get an X-ray. 拍个 X 光片。

_____ Rest for a few days. 休息几天。

_____ Press/pres/ the sides of your nose. 按压你鼻子的两侧。

_____ Put your head down. 把头低下。

_____ Clean your face. 洗脸。



1b Listen to the school nurse. Check(√) the problems you hear.

听学校护士的录音。在你听到的问题上打勾（√）。

Problems 问题		Treatments 治疗	Problems 问题		Treatments 治疗
Someone felt sick/sɪk/①. 有人觉得恶心。	√	b, c	Someone had a nosebleed /'nəʊzbli:d/. 有人流鼻血了。		
Someone cut his knee/ni:/. 有人划伤了他的膝盖。			Someone hurt his back. 有人伤到了后背。		
Someone had a fever. 有人发烧了。			Someone got hit on the head. 有人撞到头了。		

1c Listen again. Write the letter of each treatment next to the problems you checked in the chart above. 再听一遍。在上面表格中你打勾的问题旁写下代表每个治疗方案的字母。

a. put a bandage on it 在它上面绑上绷带

b. took his temperature 量他的体温

c. told him to rest 告诉他休息

d. put some medicine on it 在它上面上点药

e. took him to the hospital to get an X-ray 带他去医院拍个 X 光片

f. told her to put her head down 告诉她把头低下

动词不定式 to do 表目的

介词

1d Role-play a conversation between the nurse and the teacher. Use the information in 1b and 1c. 分角色表演护士和老师之间的对话。用 1b 和 1c 中的信息。

A: Who came to your office today? 今天谁来你的办公室了?

B: First, a boy came in. He hurt himself in P.E. class. 先是一个男孩进来了，他在体育课上伤到他自己了。

A: What happened? 发生了什么?

B: ...

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

(答案见278页)

听力过程

听 1b，选择正确答案



1. What does Jenny do?

A. She is a teacher.

B. She is a nurse.

C. She is a bank clerk.

2. How was the weather today?

A. Very hot. B. Very cold. C. Rainy.

3. What was wrong with the girl?

A. She cut her knee.

B. She hurt her head.

C. She had a nosebleed.

4. What was the boy hit by?

A. A basketball.

B. A volleyball.

C. A baseball bat.

5. Where was the boy taken then?

A. To the hospital.

B. To his home.

C. To the office.

Ⅲ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注 •考点应用

一语 辨异：Although I am ill/sick, I have to look after my sick father at home today. 尽管我病了，但我今天也必须在家照顾生病的爸爸。



feel sick 感到恶心



be sick of 厌倦……

★Someone felt sick.

① **sick** /sɪk/*adj.* 生病的；有病的

辨析：sick 与 ill

ill	作“生病的”讲时只作表语，不作定语，其比较级和最高级分别为 worse，worst。
sick	作“生病的”讲时可作表语和定语。在句中作表语时 be sick=be ill。

e.g. Mary can't come today because she is sick/ill.

玛丽生病了，所以今天不能来了。

I have to look after my sick grandpa.

我得照顾生病的爷爷。（此时不能用 ill）

I want to get off the bus. I feel a little sick.

我想下车，我感到有点恶心。 恶心的

I am sick of rope skipping. 我厌倦了跳绳。 →厌倦的

考题在线 —Why doesn't Lucy go to school today?

—She has to take care of her _____ father.

A. sick B. ill

C. illness D. healthy

点拨：考查词义辨析。作“生病的”讲时，sick 可作定语修饰名词，而 ill 只能作表语。illness 为名词，healthy 可作定语，根据答句句意“她得照顾生病的父亲”可知答案。

考题在线答案 A

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 5 Section B（2a–2e）

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文及导读

原文译文·导读　　导读批注

Pre-reading（读前）

2a **Accidents or problems can sometimes happen when we do sports. Write the letter of each sport next to each accident or problem that can happen.** 当我们做运动时，有时可能会发生事故或问题。在每一种可能发生的事故或问题旁写下每种运动的字母。

A=soccer 足球　B=mountain climbing 爬山　C=swimming 游泳

_____ fall down 摔倒

_____ have problems breathing/'bri:ðɪŋ/ ②① 呼吸有困难

_____ get hit by a ball 被球击中

_____ get sunburned/'sʌnbɜ:(r)nd/ 晒伤

_____ cut ourselves/ˌaʊə(r)'selvz/ 割伤自己

_____ hurt our back or arm 后背或胳膊受伤

课文朗读 2b

Behind every successful man there are a lot of unsuccessful years.
每个成功者都经历过很多不成功的岁月。

While-reading（读中）

2b **Read the passage and underline the words you don't know. Then look up the words in a dictionary and write down their meanings.** 阅读短文，在你不认识的单词下面画线。然后查字典并写下它们的意思。

Finding the Order of Events 找出事件的顺序

Writers describe events in a certain order. Finding the order of the events will help you understand what you are reading. 作者用某种顺序描述事件，找出事件的顺序会帮助你理解你正读的文章。

批 体裁：记叙文

He Lost His Arm But Is Still Climbing 他失去了他的手臂却仍在爬山

Aron/'erən/ Ralston/'rɔ:lstən/ is an American man（who is interested in ④ mountain climbing）. ③ As a mountain climber/'klaɪmə(r)/, Aron is used to ⑤ taking risks/rɪsks/ ⑥. This is one of the exciting things about doing dangerous sports. There were many times when Aron almost lost his life because of accidents/'æksɪdənts/. On April 26, 2003, he found himself in a very dangerous situation/ˌsɪtʃu'eɪʃn/ when climbing in Utah/'ju:tɑ:/.

先行词　关系代词　定语从句

批 背景：
Who: Aron
When: April 26, 2003
Where: Utah

批 文章主线：按主人公"遇险前—遇险中—遇险后"的叙事顺序

阿伦·罗尔斯顿是一个对爬山感兴趣的美国人。作为一名登山者，阿伦习惯于冒险。这是做危险运动刺激的一面。有好多次，阿伦险些因为意外丢掉性命。在

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

2003 年 4 月 26 日，当他在犹他州登山时发现自己处于非常危险的境地。

On that day, Aron's arm was caught under a 360-kilo/'ki:ləʊ/ rock /rɒk/ that fell on him when he was climbing by himself in the mountains. Because he could not free his arm, he stayed there for five days and hoped that someone would find him. But when his water ran out⑦, he knew that he would have to do something to save his own life⑧. He was not ready to die that day. So he used⑨ his knife/naɪf/⑩ to cut off⑪ half his right arm. Then, with his left arm, he bandaged himself so that⑫ he would not lose too much blood/blʌd/. After that, he climbed down the mountain to find help.

在那一天，阿伦的手臂在他独自一人登山时被砸向他的一块 360 公斤重的岩石压住了。因为无法抽出他的手臂，他在那儿待了五天，希望有人会发现他。但当他的水喝完时，他知道他必须要做点事情拯救自己了。他不想那天就死去。因此他用刀把他的右臂砍掉一半。然后他用他的左臂为自己缠上绷带，为的是不让自己失血过多。在那之后他爬下山去寻求帮助。

After losing his arm, he wrote a book called *Between a Rock and a Hard Place*. This means/mi:nz/⑬ being in a difficult situation that you cannot seem to get out of⑭. In this book, Aron tells of the importance/ɪm'pɔ:(r)tns/⑮ of making good decisions/dɪ'sɪʒnz/⑯, and of being in control/kən'trəʊl/⑰ of one's life. His love for mountain climbing is so great that⑱ he kept on⑲ climbing mountains even after this experience.

失去了手臂之后，他写了一本名为《生死两难》的书。它的意思是“处于一个你似乎无法摆脱的困境之中”。在这本书里，阿伦讲述了正确抉择和掌控自己命运的重要性。他对爬山的热爱如此强烈以至于即使在这次经历后他仍继续爬山。

Do we have the same spirit/'spɪrɪt/ as Aron? Let's think about it before we find ourselves "between a rock and a hard place", and before we have to make a decision that could mean life or death/deθ/.

我们有和阿伦同样的精神吗？当我们发现自己处于“生死两难的境地”以及我们不得不做出可能意味着生或死的决定之前，让我们先思考一下吧。

Words 单词	Meanings 意思

Post-reading（读后）

写作小练笔 ☞（答案见 32 页）

批 文章结构：Para. 1 总体介绍 Aron Ralston 的相关信息
Para. 2&3 具体介绍主人公的历险经历
Para. 4 引导学生思考并总结主人公的品质

批 短语：书名，《生死两难》。表示在艰难或危险的处境下“从两难中进行选择”，意为“左右为难；进退两难。”Aron 用此短语作为传记书名，当时的处境跃然纸上，印象深刻。

批 句子：运用一般疑问句引发思考，点明主题。

批 句子：运用比喻句形象描述了我们生活当中的各种困难。

批 词语：此处用 or 表并列，“生或死”，振聋发聩，引人深思。

2c Read the statements and circle *True*, *False* or *Don't Know*.
读这些陈述，圈出“正确”、“错误”或“不知道”。

1. Aron almost lost his life three times because of climbing accidents.
由于爬山事故阿伦三次差点丢掉他的性命。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

2. Aron had a serious accident in April 2003. 在 2003 年 4 月阿伦发生了严重的事故。
3. Aron ran out of water after three days. 三天后阿伦用完了水。
4. Aron wrote his book before his serious accident. 在严重事故前阿伦写了他的书。
5. Aron still goes mountain climbing. 阿伦仍然去爬山。

TRUE 正确　FALSE 错误　DON'T KNOW 不知道
TRUE 正确　FALSE 错误　DON'T KNOW 不知道
TRUE 正确　FALSE 错误　DON'T KNOW 不知道
TRUE 正确　FALSE 错误　DON'T KNOW 不知道
TRUE 正确　FALSE 错误　DON'T KNOW 不知道

2d Read the passage again and answer the questions. 再读短文，回答问题。

1. Where did the accident happen on April 26, 2003? 2003 年 4 月 26 日的事故是在哪里发生的?
2. Why couldn't Aron move? 阿伦为什么不能动了?
3. How did Aron free himself? 阿伦如何解救了自己?
4. What did Aron do after the accident? 事故之后阿伦做了什么?
5. What does "between a rock and a hard place" mean?
"between a rock and a hard place" 是什么意思?

2e Put the sentences in the correct order. Then use them to tell Aron's story to your partner. Try to add other details from the reading. 把句子按正确顺序排序。然后用它们把阿伦的故事讲给你的搭档听。尽量从阅读材料中加入其他的细节。

_____ On April 26, 2003, he had a serious mountain climbing accident. 2003 年 4 月 26 日，他发生了严重的登山事故。
_____ Aron loves mountain climbing and doesn't mind[20] taking risks. 阿伦热爱爬山，不介意冒险。
_____ Aron did not give up[21] after the accident and keeps on climbing mountains today. 事故后阿伦没有放弃，现在仍继续爬山。
_____ He wrote a book about his experience. 他写了一本关于他的经历的书。
_____ Aron lost half his right arm from the 2003 accident. 阿伦在 2003 年的事故中失去了半条右臂。

课文背诵指南



He Lost His Arm But Is Still Climbing

- **Para.1** → Aron, an American man, is interested in mountain climbing.
  Time: on April 26, 2003
  Place: in Utah
- **Para.2** → He lost his arm when climbing in Utah.
  Process: was caught under a rock, could not free his arm, stayed there for five days, ran out of water, saved his own life, cut off half his right arm, bandaged himself, climbed down the mountain
- **Para.3** → He wrote a book and kept on climbing mountains.
  Ending: wrote a book, making good decisions, being in control of one's life
- **Para.4** → Do we have the same spirit as Aron?
  Inspiration: think about it, "between a rock and a hard place", make a decision

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读 60分

☞(答案见278页)

阅读策略

通过上下文联系猜测词义法(利用上下文提供的情境或线索进行合乎逻辑的综合分析，进而完成猜测词义类的题目。)

阅读过程

拓展阅读

一、速读 2b，选择正确答案

1. What's the second paragraph mainly about? (主旨大意题)

A. A dangerous situation Aron was in when climbing in Utah.

B. Why Aron wrote a book.

C. Aron likes doing dangerous sports.

D. You should not climb a mountain by yourself.

二、细读 2b，选择正确答案

2. Where is Aron Ralston from? (细节查找题)

A. America. B. Britain.

C. Australia. D. Canada.

3. ⊙What does the word "situation" mean in the first paragraph? (词义猜测题)

A. 危险 B. 情况 C. 勇气 D. 位置

4. What did Aron do to get out of the dangerous situation? (细节查找题)

A. He cut off half his left arm.

B. He cut off half his right arm.

C. He cut off half his right leg.

D. He cut off half his left leg.

5. What does Aron mainly tell us in his book? (细节归纳题)

A. How to climb a mountain safely.

B. To face the difficulty bravely.

C. The importance of making good decisions.

D. You'd better climb a mountain with a friend.

☞温馨提示：本书中此板块带⊙的题均运用"阅读策略"中的方法。

Ⅲ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注 •考点应用

速记小筏：动词 breathe 的读音为 /briːð/，名词 breath 的读音为 /breθ/。名词的常用搭配有：out of breath 上气不接下气；take a deep breath 深深吸一口气

★**have problems breathing** 相当于 have trouble/ difficulty (in) doing sth.

①**have problems (in) doing sth.** 做某事有问题 / 困难

e.g. She has problems (in) riding a bike. 她骑自行车有困难。

He has no problem in singing the song. 他唱这首歌没问题。

②**breathe** /briːð/ *v.* (to take air into your lungs and send it out again through your nose or mouth) 呼吸 → 用作不及物动词

e.g. He stood there breathing deeply. 他站在那里深呼吸。

We can drive out of town to breathe fresh air.

我们可以开车去城外呼吸新鲜的空气。→ 用作及物动词

★**Aron Ralston is an American man who is interested in mountain climbing.**

③【高频】【句法分析】**who is interested in mountain climbing** 为定语从句，修饰前面的先行词 **an American man**，**who** 是关系代词。

e.g. The cat which /that is under the chair is called Mimi.

椅子下的那只猫叫咪咪。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

The boy who/that we saw yesterday is John.
我们昨天看到的那个男孩是约翰。

小贴士：先行词为“人”，引导词常用 who 或 that；先行词为“物”，引导词常用 which 或 that。

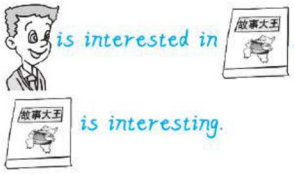
考题在线 1 *Peppa Pig*（《小猪佩奇》）is a British cartoon _____ has been popular in China and is much loved by little children and their parents. [临沂]

A. who B. which C. /

点拨：本题用语法判定法。分析句子结构可知，定语从句的先行词是 a British cartoon，指物，应用关系代词 which。

④ **be interested in** 对……感兴趣

e.g. I'm interested in the interesting things. 我对那些有趣的事情感兴趣。



辨析：interested 与 interesting

interested	只能作表语，用来说明人的“感受”。
interesting	可作定语或表语，用来修饰或说明“事物”。

★…Aron is used to taking risks.

to 在此为介词，后跟名词、代词或 v.-ing 形式。

⑤【高频】**be used to** 习惯于……；适应于……

e.g. He is used to getting up early. 他习惯于早起。

He used his knife to cut off his arm.

= His knife was used to cut off his arm by him.

= His knife was used for cutting off his arm by him.

他用刀砍掉了他的手臂。

He used to go to work on foot. 他过去常常步行去上班。

be used to (doing) sth. 强调状态；get/become used to (doing) sth. 强调过程。be used to do sth./for doing sth. 意为“被用于做某事”，是被动语态。used to do sth.“过去常常做某事”，动词用原形，只用于过去时态。

考题在线 2 I used to _____ newspapers and watch TV after dinner. But now I'm used to _____ a walk. [新疆]

A. read; take B. read; taking

C. reading; taking D. reading; take

点拨：used to do sth. 意为“过去经常做某事”；be used to doing sth. 意为“习惯于做某事”。句意：过去我晚饭后常常读报纸和看电视，但是现在我习惯散步。

⑥ **take risks** 冒险

可数名词，危险；风险

e.g. Bob likes taking risks. 鲍勃喜欢冒险。

He risked his life to save the child. 他冒着生命危险去救那个孩子。

及物动词，“冒……的危险”，后接名词、代词或 v.-ing 形式作宾语。

I'm willing to risk losing everything. 我愿意冒失去一切的危险。

考题在线 3 —It's dangerous to drive after drinking.

—That's true. It can increase the _____ of traffic accidents.

A. advantage B. stress C. safety D. risk

点拨：考查名词辨析。句意：酒后开车可能增加交通事故的风险。advantage 优势；stress 压力；safety 安全；risk 风险。由句意可知答案。

常用搭配

take a risk/risks 冒险

the risk of... ……的风险

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★**But when his water ran out, he knew that he would have to do something to save his own life.**

⑦ **run out 用尽；耗尽**

辨析：run out 与 run out of

run out：“动词+副词”型动词短语；主语通常是时间、食物、金钱等名词。

run out of：作及物动词用（=use up）；后接宾语，主语通常是人。

e.g. His money soon ran out. 他的钱很快用完了。

After a long walk, he ran out of his water. 长途步行后，他用尽了他的水。

考题在线 4 I'm afraid that this type of energy will _____ if we continue to waste it. [南通]

A. run out　　B. break out

C. come down　　D. fall down

点拨：用短语辨析法解题。句意：如果我们继续浪费这种能源，恐怕它会耗尽。run out 用尽，耗尽；break out 突然开始，爆发；come down 降落，落下；fall down 摔倒，跌倒。

⑧ **save one's life 挽救某人的生命**

e.g. He saved the girl's life from the fire yesterday.

昨天他从火中救了那个女孩的命。

★**So he used his knife to cut off half his right arm.**

⑨ **use sth.to do sth.=use sth. for doing sth. 用某物做某事**

e.g. I use a knife to cut apples. = I use a knife for cutting apples.

我用刀子切苹果。

⑩ **knife** /naɪf/ *n.* 刀

【高频】knife 的复数形式为 knives。初中阶段学到的以 -f 或 -fe 结尾的名词，其复数形式是变 f/fe 为 v，再加 -es 的还有以下速记小筏中的几个。

e.g. The same knife cuts bread and fingers.（谚）水能载舟，亦能覆舟。

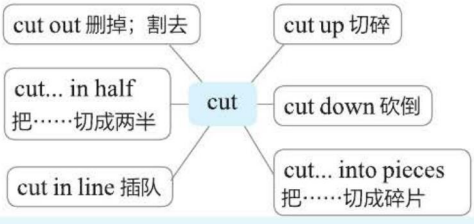
⑪ **cut off 切除，切断**

由“动词+副词”构成的短语。后跟代词时，代词应放于 cut 和 off 之间。

e.g. cut off the wire 切断电线

cut it/them off 把它 / 它们切断

cut 短语来集会：



一语辨异：Susan has run out of money and her patience is also running out. 苏珊的钱已经用尽了，她的耐心也要耗尽了。

save 一词多义


save one's life 救某人的命


save money 存钱


save time 节省时间

速记小筏：妻子（wife）持刀（knife）去宰狼（wolf），小偷（thief）吓得发了慌；躲在架（shelf）后保己命（life），半（half）片树叶（leaf）遮目光。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考题在线 5 Our country is taking action to _____ air pollution.

[青岛]

A. cut down　　B. cut up

C. cut out　　D. cut off

点拨：用短语辨析法解题。cut down 减少；cut up 切碎；cut out 剪下，阻止；cut off 切除，切掉。

★Then, with his left arm, he bandaged himself so that he would not lose too much blood.



⑫【高频】**so that** 以便；为了

e.g. We went early so that we could get good seats.

为了占到好座位，我们早早就去了。

引导目的状语从句，从句谓语动词常用情态动词 may/might/can/could（+动词原形）等。

He got up early so that he could catch the early bus.

=He got up early in order to/so as to catch the early bus.

为了赶早班公交车，他早早就起床了。

引导目的状语从句，当主句主语与从句主语一致时，可用"so as to/in order to+动词原形"转化为简单句。

He worked day and night so that/in order that he could succeed.

他夜以继日地工作，为的是成功。可从与 in order that 互换。

考题在线 6 —What a mess! The sharing bikes are thrown everywhere.

—Let's collect and put them in the right place _____ they can be used conveniently.

[东营]

A. unless　　B. so that

C. because　　D. so long as

点拨：本题用语境分析法。句意：——真是乱七八糟！共享单车被扔得到处都是。——我们收集一下，把它们放在合适的位置以便它们可以很方便地被使用。unless 除非；so that 以便，为了；because 因为；so long as 只要。

★This means being in a difficult situation that you cannot seem to get out of.

⑬ **mean** /mi:n/ *v.* 意思是；打算；意欲

e.g. Do you mean that it's none of my business?

你的意思是它与我无关吗？

Doing that means wasting time. 做那件事意味着浪费时间。

I mean to go, but my father would not allow me to.

我打算去，但我父亲不允许我去。

What's the meaning of the word?=What does the word mean?

这个单词是什么意思？

mean 的用法总结：

- 及物动词，"意思是；意为"，后跟名词或 that 从句。
- "意味着"，后接名词、代词或 v.-ing 形式作宾语。
- "打算；意欲"。mean to do sth. 打算做某事。

mean 名词形式为 meaning，意为"含意；意思"，常用句型：What's the meaning of...?=What does/do...mean?

⑭ **get out of** 离开；从……出来，其反义短语为 **get into**（进入）

e.g. Get out of the kitchen! 出去，别待在厨房！

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

A tiger got out of the zoo yesterday.
昨天一只老虎从动物园里跑了出来。"逃跑；从……中逃出去"。

★**In this book, Aron tells of the importance of making good decisions, and of being in control of one's life.**

⑮ **importance** /ɪm'pɔ:(r)tns/ *n.* 重要性；重要

importance 是不可数名词，其形容词形式是 important，意为"重要的"。

e.g. Health is very important to us.
健康对我们很重要。

To know yourself is very important.(谚) 了解自己很重要。

He began to realize the importance of studying hard.
他开始意识到努力学习的重要性了。
the importance of (doing) sth.（做）某事的重要性

⑯【高频】**decision** /dɪ'sɪʒn/ *n.* 决定；抉择

e.g. He made a decision/decided to go to New York finally.
最后他决定去纽约。=make decisions

make a decision to do sth.=decide to do sth.=make up one's mind to do sth. 决定做某事。

考题在线 7 It was very hard for me to make a _____, but I decided to leave my job.
A. invitation　　B. decision　　C. plan　　D. discussion
点拨：用词义辨析法解题。invitation 邀请；decision 决定；plan 计划；discussion 讨论。句意：对于我来说做出决定很难，但是我决定辞职。

⑰ **control** /kən'trəʊl/ *n.*& *v.* 限制；约束；管理

be in control of 管理；掌管
be under control 在控制之下
be out of control 失去控制

e.g. A teacher must be in control of his class.
老师必须掌控自己的课堂。

★**His love for mountain climbing is so great that he kept on climbing mountains even after this experience.**

⑱ **so...that...** 如此……以至于……

that 引导结果状语从句，so 是副词，常用来修饰形容词或副词。

e.g. He runs so fast that nobody can catch up with him.
他跑得非常快，以至于没人能追上他。

There was so much smoke that they could see nothing.
浓烟密布，他们什么也看不见。

如果 so...that... 句型中，that 引导的从句中的主语与主句中的主语一致，在否定句中可以和 not...enough to do sth. 及 too...to... 结构进行句型转换。

The girl is so young that she can't dress herself.
= The girl is too young to dress herself.
= The girl isn't old enough to dress herself.
这个女孩太小了，还不能自己穿衣服。

考题在线 8 Peter spoke _____ quietly _____ I could hardly hear him.
A. such; that　　B. so; that
C. too; to　　D. as; as
点拨：本题用语境分析法。句意：彼得讲话如此小声，以至于我几乎听不见他的声音。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

⑲ **keep on doing sth.** 继续或重复做某事

e.g. Don't keep on interrupting me!
别老是跟我打岔!

Keep smiling!
保持微笑!

I'm sorry to keep you waiting.
对不起，让你久等了。

You shouldn't keep him from watching cartoons.
你不该阻止他看动画片。

keep 短语
- keep on doing sth. 强调继续或重复做某事，中间有间隔。
- keep doing sth. 一直做某事，强调动作持续不间断，无停顿。
- keep sb. doing sth. 让某人一直做某事
- keep sb. from doing sth. 阻止某人做某事

★Aron loves mountain climbing and doesn't mind taking risks.

⑳ **mind** *v.* 介意（请求允许或客气地请人做事）

e.g. Would you mind opening the window?
请你打开窗户，行吗?

I don't mind at all. 我一点儿都不介意。

Do you mind if I park your car there? 我把你的车停在那边好吗?

后常跟名词、代词或 v.-ing 形式，且常用于疑问句、否定句或条件句中。

速记小筏:
英语中后接 doing 作宾语的词（组）:

完成练习值得忙	finish, practise, be worth, be busy
继续习惯别放弃	keep on, be used to, give up
考虑建议不禁想	consider, suggest, can't help, feel like
喜欢思念要介意	enjoy, miss, mind

★Aron did not give up after the accident and keeps on climbing mountains today.

㉑ **give up** 放弃 后接名词、代词或 v.-ing 形式。

e.g. You shouldn't give up running. 你不应该放弃跑步。

I find it too difficult to play the piano well. I want to give it up.
我发现弹好钢琴太难。我想放弃它。

give up 是"动词＋副词"型短语，故 give up 与代词连用时，代词需放中间。

考题在线 9 —I find it difficult to learn English well. I want to drop it.
—English is very important in our daily life. Never _____.

A. give up it　　B. give it up
C. give away it　　D. give it away

点拨: 本题用语境分析法。句意：——我发现学好英语很难，我想放弃它。——英语在我们日常生活中很重要。永远不要放弃它。排除 C，D。give up 是动副短语，宾语是人称代词时必须放中间。

考题在线答案 1.B 2.B 3.D 4.A 5.A 6.B 7.B 8.B 9.B

give 其他相关短语
- give out 分发
- give in 屈服
- give away 赠送
- give back 归还；恢复

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础20分

(答案见278页)

一、用括号内所给单词的适当形式填空

1. As a mountain climber, Alex is used to taking _____ (risk). [黄冈改编]

2. It means _____ (need) more help.

3. All of us know the importance of _____ (finish) the work on time.

4. They haven't made a _____(decide) where to spend their summer vacation. [烟台]

5. —Would you mind _____(pick) up the keys?

—Of course not.

二、单项选择

6. The boy has _____ translating the sentence into Chinese. Please help him.

A. matter

B. questions

C. problems

D. troubles

7. All the members decided to _____ the money from the book sale to homeless people. [孝感]

A. give up

B. give away

C. take up

D. take away

8. My sister _____ be lazy. But now she's working really hard. [宜宾]

A. used to

B. is used to

C. was used to

9. The little boy is saving every coin _____ he can buy his mother a present on Mother's Day. [贵阳]

A. even if

B. so that

C. as soon as

10. The _____ show on Hunan TV, *Happy Camp*, makes lots of people _____ .

A. interesting; relaxing

B. interesting; relaxed

C. interested; relaxed

D. interested; relaxing

三、根据汉语意思完成英语句子，每空一词

11. 他不断地给我打电话，可我不想和他保持联系了。

He_____ _____ _____ me up, but I didn't want to keep in touch with him anymore.

12. 如果你在家里做饭，你可以控制你吃什么和你花多少钱。

You can be _____ _____ _____ what you eat and how much you spend if you cook at home.

13. 医生尽其所能去挽救她的生命。

The doctor did everything he could to _____ _____ _____.

14. 放弃这次机会将会成为遗憾。

_____ _____ this chance will be a pity.

15. 他们觉得与外界隔绝了。

They felt _____ _____ from the outside world.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 6 Section B（3a–Self Check）

I. 课文原文、译文

3a **Imagine you are the school nurse and a student just had an accident or a health problem. Make notes about what he / she should and shouldn't do.** 想象一下你是学校的护士，一个学生刚刚发生了事故或出现了健康问题。记下他 / 她应该做的事和不应该做的事。

Accident or health problem 事故或健康问题	He / She should 他 / 她应该	He / She shouldn't 他 / 她不应该

3b **Write a conversation between the nurse and the student using the notes in 3a. Use the questions and phrases below to help you.** 用 3a 中的笔记写一个护士和学生间的对话。用下面的问题和词组来帮助你。

What's the matter?/What happened?/Are you OK? 怎么了？ / 发生了什么？ / 你还好吧?
No, I don't feel well./I feel.../I have a.../ 不，我觉得不好。/ 我觉得……/ 我有一个……
Should I...?/ 我应该……吗?
You should.../ You shouldn't... 你应该……/ 你不应该……
fell down/got hit by.../cut myself/ hurt my... 摔倒 / 被……打到 / 割伤我自己 / 伤到我的……

Nurse/nɜ:(r)s/ 护士 : _____ Student 学生 : _____

Nurse 护士 : _____ Student 学生 : _____

Self Check 自我检测

1 **Write different health problems next to the body parts. Then write more health problems you know of.** 在身体部位的旁边写下不同的健康问题。然后写下更多你所了解的健康问题。

Head 头 : _____ Back 背 : _____

Throat 嗓子 : _____ Tooth 牙齿 : _____

Stomach 胃；腹部 : _____ Other problems 其他问题 : _____

2 **Put these questions and answers in order to make a conversation.** 把这些问题和回答排序编个对话。

_____I hurt myself playing soccer. I have a sore leg. 我踢足球时伤到我自己了。我腿疼。

_____I think you should see a doctor and get an X-ray. 我认为你应该去看医生并拍个 X 光片。

_____What's the matter? 怎么了?

_____What should I do? 我应该做什么?

_____OK, thanks. I'll do that now. 好的，谢谢。我现在就去做那个。

_____Oh, that doesn't sound good. 噢，那听起来不好。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

3 Write advice for these people. 为这些人写建议。

1. Problem: Alan cut himself. 艾伦割到他自己了。
   Advice 建议：_____
2. Problem: Cindy has a headache. 辛迪头疼。
   Advice 建议：_____
3. Problem: My cousins have bad colds. 我堂兄们得了重感冒。
   Advice 建议：_____
4. Problem: Jack hurt his back playing volleyball. 杰克打排球时弄伤了他的后背。
   Advice 建议：_____

Ⅱ. 写作一课一法 夺取中考写作 20分

写作小练笔

Aron Ralston

Aron Ralston is an American man. He is a mountain climber. On April 26, 2003, his arm was caught under a rock while he was climbing in Utah. He could not free his arm. So he stayed there for five days. Then he cut off half his right arm, bandaged himself and climbed down the mountain. He saved his own life.

At last, he wrote a book to tell people about the importance of making good decisions and being in control of our lives.

I think Aron Ralston is a great hero.

单元话题 [来宾]

根据以下提示，请以“How to Keep Healthy”为题写一篇短文。从良好的生活习惯、适当的体育锻炼以及健康的饮食习惯等方面，为“保持健康”提出良好的建议。

要求：（1）表达清楚，语句通顺，意思连贯；

（2）不得使用真实的地名、校名和姓名等；

（3）词数：80左右。文章的开头与结尾部分已给出，不计入总词数。部分参考词汇：熬夜 stay up；垃圾食品 junk food；均衡饮食 keep a balanced diet；规律饮食 have meals regularly

How to Keep Healthy

Nowadays, more and more people know the importance of keeping healthy. _____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____In this way, we can enjoy a happy life.

审题指导（把握中心，得方向分）

在写作过程中，要注意关键词语的正确使用，并能够针对健康问题运用 should 或 shouldn't 提出更加正确、具体和深入的合理化建议。

写作技法（学会方法，巧得高分）

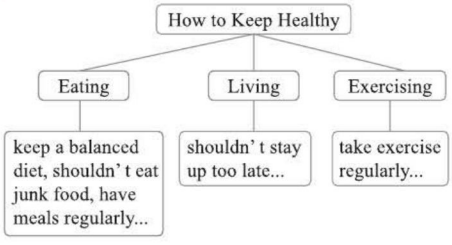
“三步法”写就健康或安全问题提建议类作文

第一步：引出话题，总起全文。

第二步：展开表述，提出建议。

第三步：结尾综述，总结全文。

写作模板（学会套路，得基本分）



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

经典词句（妙用句式，得出彩分）

单词	necessary, better, main, should, shouldn't, enjoy
短语	keep a balanced diet, stay up, have meals regularly, what's more, in a word
句子	① Here are... main ways to... ② It is necessary to... ③ It is better/ important for us to...

学生习作（书写工整，得印象分）

How to Keep Healthy

Nowadays, more and more people know the importance of keeping healthy. Here are three main ways to keep healthy.

Firstly, it is necessary to keep a balanced diet. We aren't supposed to eat too much junk food. It is better for us to have more fruit and vegetables every day. What's more, we should have meals regularly. Secondly, we shouldn't stay up too late. Getting enough sleep is also necessary. Finally, it is important to take exercise regularly, such as swimming, jogging and so on.

In a word, we should develop a good habit of keeping healthy. In this way, we can enjoy a happy life.

名师点评：

1. Here are ...main ways to..., It is necessary to..., It is better/important for us to... 等经典句型运用熟练。
2. Firstly, What's more, Finally, In a word 等的运用使文章结构严密。
3. 短语 such as, 动名词短语 getting enough sleep 作主语，及 swimming, jogging 等使文章异彩纷呈，可读性强。



Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见279页)

单元知识浓缩（根据汉语提示完成短文）

Yesterday Mr. Black, a bus driver, was not feeling well. He _____[1]（感冒了）. His wife took his temperature and found that he had a _____[2]（发烧）. He took some medicine and drank lots of water. His wife said that he _____[3]（应该）have a day off to lie down and rest or go to a doctor. But he made a _____[4]（决定）to keep on working.

Unluckily, a bus accident _____[5]（发生）while he was driving. The bus accident was near a bridge. The bus ran off the road. Eight people were _____[6]（受伤）. The bus driver was too tired and he was going too fast.The road is narrow and not straight. It bends a lot. The speed limit is 25 mph. The bus was going 50 mph. The _____[7]（乘客）were afraid. The bus ran into a guard rail.Some yelled. Some _____[8]（摔倒）. Luggage（行李）flew to the air. Luggage_____[9]（击；打）people. The windows broke. Glass was everywhere. Soon the ambulances came. They took wounded（受伤的）people to the _____[10]（医院）. The police came. They took the driver to the police station.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 2 I'll help to clean up the city parks.

词汇表听写



记忆大师

Period 1 Section A (1a–2d)

必背单词

1. **cheer** *v.* 欢呼；喝彩→cheer up 振奋起来
2. **volunteer** *v.* 义务做；自愿做 *n.* 志愿者
3. **sign** *n.* 标志；信号
4. **notice** *n.* 通知；注意；通告 *v.* 注意到；意识到
5. **lonely** *adj.* 孤独的；寂寞的→alone *adv.* 独自；单独

必背短语

6. clean up 打扫（或清除）干净
7. give out 分发；散发→hand out 分发
8. come up with 想出；提出（主意、计划、回答等）
9. put off doing sth. 推迟做某事
10. used to 过去……→be used to do 被用来做……→be/get/become used to doing 习惯于做……
11. care for 照顾；非常喜欢→look after 照顾→take care of 照顾

必背句子

12. You **could help** to clean up the city parks.
你可以帮助打扫城市公园。
13. We **need to come up with** a plan to tell people

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

about the city park clean-up.
我们需要想出一个计划来告诉人们关于打扫城市公园的事。

14. They told me stories about the past and **how things used to be**.
他们给我讲过去的生活经历，讲过去是什么样子的。

Period 2 Section A (3a–3c)

必背单词

1. **several** *pron.* 几个；数个；一些
2. **strong** *adj.* 强烈的；强壮的
3. **feeling** *n.* 感觉；感触→ feel *v.* 感觉
4. **satisfaction** *n.* 满足；满意→ satisfy *v.* 使满意→ satisfied *adj.* 满意的；满足的（主语多用人）→ satisfying *adj.* 令人满意的（主语多用物）
5. **joy** *n.* 高兴；愉快
6. **owner** *n.* 物主；主人→ own *v.* 拥有
7. **journey** *n.*（尤指长途）旅行；行程

必背短语

8. try out 参加……选拔；试用

必背句子

9. Last year, she **decided to** try out for a volunteer after-school reading program.
去年，她决定参加一个课外阅读项目的志愿者选拔。
10. I can do **what I love to do** and help others at the same time.
我可以做我喜欢做的事，同时也能帮助别人。

Period 3 Section A (Grammar Focus–4c)

必背单词

1. **raise** *v.* 募集；征集

必背短语

2. call up 打电话给（某人）(=call)；征召

必背句子 & 语法

3. **I'd like to** help homeless people.
我想帮助无家可归的人。
4. You **could ask** hospitals **to** let you visit the kids and cheer them up.
你可以要求医院让你探望孩子们并使他们振奋起来。

Period 4 Section B (1a–1e)

必背单词

1. **repair** *v.* 修理；修补→ fix *v.* 安装；修理
2. **broken** *adj.* 破损的；残缺的→ break 的过去分词 broken
3. **wheel** *n.* 车轮；轮子

必背短语

4. fix up 修理；装饰　5. give away 赠送；捐赠
6. take after（外貌或行为）像
7. be similar to 与……相似、类似

Period 5 Section B (2a–2e)

必背单词

1. **letter** *n.* 信；函→ write to sb. =write a letter to sb. =write sb. a letter 给某人写信→ hear from sb. 收到某人的来信
2. **Miss** *n.* 女士；小姐→ sir *n.* 先生→ madam *n.* 夫人；女士
3. **disabled** *adj.* 丧失能力的；有残疾的→ blind *adj.* 瞎的；失明的→ deaf *adj.* 聋的
4. **imagine** *v.* 想象；设想→ imagination *n.* 想象；想象力
5. **difficulty** *n.* 困难；难题→ difficult *adj.* 困难的
6. **open** *v.* 开；打开　7. **door** *n.* 门
8. **carry** *v.* 拿；提；扛
9. **train** *v.* 训练；培训→ training *n.* 训练；培训
10. **excited** *adj.* 激动的；兴奋的
11. **kindness** *n.* 仁慈；善良→ kind *adj.* 善良的 + -ness（名词后缀）
12. **clever** *adj.* 聪明的；聪颖的
13. **understand** *v.* 理解；领会
14. **change** *v.* & *n.* 变化；改变

必背短语

15. set up 设立；建起
16. make a difference 影响；有作用

必背句子

17. You helped to **make it possible for me to** have Lucky. 有了你的帮助，我才有可能拥有“幸运儿”（狗名）。

Period 6 Section B (3a–Self Check)

必背单词

1. **interest** *n.* 兴趣；关注　*v.* 使感兴趣；使关注→ interesting *adj.* 有趣的（主语多用物）→ interested *adj.* 感兴趣的（主语多用人）

必背短语

2. be strong in... 擅长……
3. work out 产生效果；成功地发展

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 1 Section A(1a–2d)

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

Language Goal: Offer help
语言目标：提供帮助

1a Look at the ways you could help people in the picture. Then list other ways.
看图片中你可以帮助别人的方式。然后列出其他方式。

I hope to work outside. 我希望在室外工作。
You could help to clean up① the city parks. 你可以帮助打扫城市公园。

Other ways you could help people 你能帮助人们的其他方式

_____

1b Listen and number the ways the boy and girl could help others.
听录音并按顺序标出这个男孩和这个女孩能够帮助他人的方式。

课文听力1b

_____ The girl could visit the sick kids in the hospital to cheer/tʃɪə/, /tʃɪr/② them up. 这个女孩可以去医院看望生病的孩子，让他们振奋起来。

_____ The boy could give out③ food at the food bank. 这个男孩可以在食物赈济处分发食物。

_____ The girl could volunteer/ˌvɒlən'tɪə/, /ˌvɑːlən'tɪr/④ in an after-school study program to teach kids. 这个女孩可以志愿参加课外学习项目去教儿童。

_____ The boy could help to clean up the city parks. 这个男孩可以帮助打扫城市公园。

1c Practice the conversation in the picture above. Then make other conversations using the information in 1b. 练习上面图片中的对话，然后用 1b 中的信息编写其他的对话。

2a A group of students are planning a City Park Clean-Up Day. Listen and check(√)the things they are going to do to tell people about it. 一群学生正在策划一个城市公园清洁日。为了告诉人们有关它的情况，他们打算做些事情。听录音并用对勾(√)标出这些事情。

课文听力2a

2b Listen again. Fill in the blanks. 再听一遍录音，并填空。

1. We need to _____ _____ _____ a plan to tell people about the city park clean-up.
我们需要_____一个计划来告诉人们关于城市公园清扫(的事)。
2. Clean-Up Day is only two weeks from now. We can't _____ _____⑤ making a plan.
现在离清扫日只有两周了。我们不能_____制订计划。
3. We could _____ _____ signs/saɪnz/. 我们可以_____标语。
4. Let's make some notices/'nəʊtɪsɪz/⑥, too. Then I'll _____ them _____ after school.
我们也制作一些公告牌吧。然后放学后我去_____。
5. We could each _____ _____ 10 students and ask them to come.
我们可以每人_____10 个学生并让他们来。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

2c Make a conversation using the information in 2a and 2b. 用 2a 和 2b 中的信息编对话。

A: We need to come up with ⑦ a plan for the City Park Clean-Up Day.
我们需要想出一个城市公园清洁日的计划。

B: Let's have lunch first. 我们先吃午饭吧。

A: No, we need to start now. Clean-Up Day is only two weeks from now.
不，我们需要现在开始。现在离清洁日只有两周了。

2d Role-play the conversation. 分角色表演对话。



Helen: Hi, Tom. I'm making some plans to work in an old people's home this summer. 嗨，汤姆。我正在制订今年夏天去一家敬老院工作的计划。

Tom: Really? I did that last summer! 真的吗？我去年夏天就去帮助过老人们！

Helen: Oh, what did they ask you to help out with? 哦，他们让你帮忙做了什么？

Tom: Mm...things like reading the newspaper to the old people, or just talking to them. They told me stories about the past and how things used to ⑧ be. 嗯……诸如给老人读报纸或者只是跟他们聊天之类的事情。他们给我讲过去的生活经历，讲过去是什么样子的。

Helen: That sounds interesting. 那听起来挺有趣。

Tom: Yeah, a lot of old people are lonely/'ləʊnli/ ⑨. We should listen to them and care for ⑩ them. 是的，很多老人很孤独。我们应该听他们说话并照顾他们。

Helen: You're right. I mean, we're all going to be old one day, too. 对的。我是说，我们将来有一天也会老的。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用

•考点批注

速记小筏：动副短语遵循下面的用法：名词宾语，副词前后都乐意；代词宾语，遇到副词就前提。

★You could help to clean up the city parks.

① **clean up** 打扫（或清除）干净 clean-up名词，意为"打扫；清除"。

clean up "动词＋副词"型动词短语，代词作其宾语时，要放在clean和up之间。

e.g. Chinese people clean up their houses before the Chinese New Year.
中国人在新年前会打扫干净他们的房子。

★The girl could visit the sick kids in the hospital to cheer them up.

② **cheer** /tʃɪə/, /tʃɪr/ *v.* (to shout loudly or to show praise for sb.) 欢呼；喝彩

e.g. The beautiful song cheered her up.
那首美妙的歌曲使她高兴了起来。

★常用口语：Cheers! 干杯！

Cheer up! The news isn't too bad.
振作起来！这消息不是太坏。

cheer 作可数名词，意为"欢呼声；喝彩声"。

We can hear the cheers of students outside the gym.
我们在体育馆外就能听到学生的欢呼声。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

考题在线1 —Little Jenny looks unhappy today.

—Don't worry. A box of chocolates will _____ her _____. [苏州]

A. give; up　　B. wake; up

C. cheer; up　　D. pick; up

点拨：本题用语境分析法。A. 放弃；B. 叫醒；C.（使）变得更高兴；D. 接某人。由"小珍妮今天看起来不高兴。"和"别担心。"可知，一盒巧克力就会让她高兴起来。

★**The boy could give out food at the food bank.**

③ **give out 分发；散发**　与 hand out 同义，分发，动副结构

e.g. Here are some new papers. Give them out.

这儿有些新试卷。把它们发下去吧。

The flowers in my garden give out/off a fragrant perfume.

我花园里的花散发出芬芳的味道。发出（光、热等），与 give off 同义。

Our food will give out.

我们的食物要吃完了。→用完；耗尽，为不及物动词短语，主语是被用光、耗尽之物。



分发



散出，发出



用完，耗尽

考题在线2 —Would you please help me _____ the invitations to all my friends?

—Sure. You'd better let me know their phone numbers. [青海]

A. make up　　B. clean out　　C. give out

点拨：用逻辑推理法解题。make up 编造；clean out 把（某物）内部彻底打扫干净；give out 分发。由答句"当然。你最好让我知道他们的电话号码。"可知此处是请求帮忙给朋友分发邀请函。

★**The girl could volunteer in an after-school study program to teach kids.**

④ **volunteer**/ˌvɒlən'tɪə/，/ˌvɑːlən'tɪr/ *v.* (to offer to do sth. without being forced to do it or without being paid for it) **义务做；自愿做** *n.* **志愿者**

e.g. The volunteers for the community service are doing a very good job.

社区服务的志愿者干得很好。

He volunteers to help to clean up the city parks.

他自愿帮助打扫城市公园。→volunteer to do 自愿做

素养 行动 让我们中学生积极地加入志愿者中来吧！我们可以帮助同学，照顾病人，老人，小孩，也可以到社区内粉刷（paint）墙壁等。

素养 行动结果 学会奉献、感恩、融入团体，从而体现人的社会价值。

核心素养之文化意识

回馈社会，志愿助人

联合国定义：志愿者——自愿进行社会公共利益服务而不获取任何利益、金钱、名利的活动者。美国志愿者遍布社会各个角落，从家庭、学校、机关、教堂（church）、社区到市里，都可以看到有志愿人员在服务。在美国有不成文的鼓励，志愿服务时间长、表现优异的人，在升学、就业方面会被优先考虑或受重视。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★We can't _____ _____ making a plan.

⑤【高频】**put off 推迟，延期** 后接名词、代词或 v.-ing 形式作宾语，不能接动词不定式作宾语。

e.g. We have to put off (holding) the sports meeting because of the bad weather. 因为天气不好，我们不得不推迟（举办）运动会。

考题在线 3 The school sports meeting will be _____ because of the heavy rain. [益阳]

A. put up　　B. put on　　C. put off

点拨：考查动词短语辨析。put up 举起；put on 穿上，上演；put off 推迟。句意：学校运动会因为大雨将被推迟。

★由 put 构成的常用短语：

- put on 穿上；上演；发胖
- put out 熄灭
- put away 收起来；放好
- put down 放下
- put up 张贴；搭建；举起

★Let's make some notices, too.

⑥【高频】**notice**/'nəʊtɪs/ *n.* 通知；注意；通告 *v.* 注意到；意识到

e.g. The notice on the wall says "No Smoking".
墙上的布告上写着"禁止吸烟"。→ 可数名词，布告；通告；启事。

These rules can't be changed without notice.
这些规则没有预先通知不可以更改。不可数名词，警告，预告。

Did you notice him leave the party early?
你注意到他提前离开聚会了吗？→ 作动词，注意到；意识到。

notice sb. do/doing sth. 意为"注意某人（正）做某事"。

★We need to come up with a plan for the City Park Clean-Up Day.

⑦ **come up with 想出；提出（主意、计划、回答等）** 后常跟 idea, plan, answer 等名词，相当于 think of。

e.g. Who can come up with another idea?
谁能再想出一个主意？

★They told me stories about the past and how things used to be.

⑧ **used to 曾经……；过去……**

e.g. There used to be a cinema. 这里曾经有个电影院。

used to 后跟动词原形，表示过去的习惯动作或状态，现在已不发生或不存在。

拓展 :used to 的各种句式：

used to 的句式
- 肯定句：主语 +used to do...
- 否定句：主 语 +used not to/usedn't to/didn't use to do...
- 疑问句：Did+ 主语 +use to do...? 或 Used+ 主语 +to do...?

辨析：be used to doing, be used to do 与 used to do

be used to doing	"习惯做……"，to 是介词，后接名词、代词或动词 -ing 形式。
be used to do	"被用来做……"，to 为不定式符号；后接动词原形。
used to do	"曾经……；过去……"，to 是不定式符号；后跟动词原形。

考题在线 4 Jay _____ play computer games after class, but now he would rather go over his lessons.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料



alone 单独



lonely 孤独的

★Yeah, a lot of old people are lonely.

⑨ **lonely** /'ləʊnli/ *adj.* (unhappy because you have no friends or people to talk to) 孤独的；寂寞的

e.g. He always feels lonely and wants to have a friend to talk to.
他总是感到孤独，想有个说话的朋友。

辨析: lonely 与 alone:

alone	形容词	单独的；独自的	强调客观情况，数量上就一个。
	副词	单独；独自	
lonely	形容词	孤独的，寂寞的；也可指“荒凉的，偏僻的”	强调主观感情，心灵上的孤独，具有伤感色彩。

一语辨异：He lives alone but he doesn't feel lonely. 他独自生活，但并不感到孤独。

考题在线 5 —I know Old Joe lives _____.
—We are supposed to visit him from time to time. Then, he won't feel _____. [南充]

A. alone; alone　　B. lonely; lonely
C. lonely; alone　　D. alone; lonely

点拨: alone 强调客观；lonely 强调主观。由句意可知答案。

知识微课

★We should listen to them and care for them.

⑩ **care for** 照顾；非常喜欢

care for 后可接名词、代词或动词-ing形式作宾语。相当于 look after 或 take care of。

e.g. She used to care for her little brother after school.
她过去常在放学后照顾她的小弟弟。
I don't care for basketball. “非常喜欢”，通常用于否定句或疑问句中。其同义短语为 be fond of。
我不喜欢篮球。

考题在线 6 We teenagers should _____ the old and offer our seats to them on buses. [泉州]

A. care for　　B. depend on　　C. laugh at

点拨: 用逻辑推理法解题。care for 照顾；depend on 依靠；laugh at 嘲笑。由“主动在公交车上给他们让座”可知，我们青少年应该照顾老年人。

考题在线答案 1. C　2. C　3. C　4. used to　5. D　6. A

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

(答案见279页)

听力技巧

抓关键词法（听录音时，抓住相关关键词或短语，集中注意力，能快速提取答案所需要的信息。）

听力过程

课文听力1b

一、听 1b，选择正确答案

1. Which of the following is not talked about?
A. To clean up the room.
B. To help homeless people.
C. To help sick kids.

二、听 2a，把以下句子补充完整，每空不超过 3 个单词

课文听力2a

2. The students need to _____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

a plan to tell people about the city park clean-up.

3. Clean-up Day is only two weeks from now. So they can't _____ making a plan.

4. They have _____ good ideas.

5. They could _____ signs.

6. They could each _____ ten students and ask them to come.

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见279页)

一、根据首字母或汉语提示用适当的单词或词组完成句子

1. Now more and more young teachers v_____ to teach in the countryside.

2. Look at the n_____ on the board. It says, "There will be a fashion show in our school next week."

3. The s_____ means that cars cannot enter.

4. The teacher often sings songs to _____ (使振奋起来) his students in class.

5. Many volunteers will help to _____ (打扫干净) the city parks next Friday.

二、单项选择

6. The old woman lives in the small village _____. But she doesn't feel _____.

A. alone; alone　　B. alone; lonely

C. lonely; alone　　D. lonely; lonely

7. On the first day of Chinese New Year, we _____ new clothes and visit people. [河北]

A. pick up　　B. put on

C. take off　　D. throw away

8. —Do you think it is popular to _____ red envelopes (红包) on WeChat during festivals?

—Yes. But I prefer giving gifts to family members. [南充]

A. give out　　B. give away

C. give back　　D. give up

9. —Does the old man have to _____ his wife?

—Yes. They have no children to depend on. [襄阳]

A. look after　　B. look for

C. look up　　D. look like

10. The government of China _____ the idea of the Belt and Road in 2013.

A. came up with　　B. made up with

C. cheered up　　D. put up

Period 2 Section A(3a–3c)

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

3a Read the article.What do Mario and Mary volunteer to do?

阅读短文。马里奥和玛丽自愿做什么?

课文朗读 3a

Students Who Volunteer 做志愿者的学生

Mario/'mæriəʊ/ Green and Mary Brown from Riverside High School give up several/'sevrəl/ ① hours each week to help others. 来自河岸高中的马里奥·格林和玛丽·布朗每周牺牲几个小时去帮助他人。

Mario loves animals and wants to be an animal doctor. He volunteers at an animal hospital every

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Saturday morning. Mario believes it can help him to get his future dream job. "It's hard work," he says, "but I want to learn more about how to care for animals. I get② such③ a strong/strɒŋ/, /strɔːŋ/ feeling/'fiːlɪŋ/ of satisfaction/ˌsætɪs'fækʃn/④ when I see the animals get better and the look of joy /dʒɔɪ/ on their owners'/'əʊnə(r)z/⑤ faces." 马里奥喜欢动物而且他想要成为一名动物医生。他每个周六上午在一家动物医院做志愿者。马里奥认为这样做能帮助他得到他未来的理想工作。"工作很辛苦，"他说，"但是我想要学习更多关于如何照顾动物。当我看到动物们（病情）渐好以及它们主人脸上喜悦的表情时，我产生出那么一种非常强烈的满足感来。"

Mary is a book lover. She could read by herself at the age of four. Last year, she decided to try out⑥ for a volunteer after-school reading program. She still works there once a week to help kids learn to read. "The kids are sitting in the library, but you can see in their eyes that they're going on a different journey/'dʒɜː(r)ni/⑦ with each new book. Volunteering here is a dream come true⑨ for me.⑧ I can do what I love to do and help others at the same time.⑩" 玛丽是一个书籍爱好者。她四岁时就可以独自看书了。去年，她决定参加一个课后阅读项目的志愿者选拔。她（现在）仍然每周在那里工作一次帮助儿童学习阅读。"孩子们正坐在图书馆里，但是你可以从他们的眼里看出他们正随着每一本新书踏上一段不同的旅程。在这里当志愿者对我来说是梦想成真。我可以做我喜欢做的事情并且同时帮助他人。"

谓语1　连接两个并列谓语　主语　what引导的宾语从句　谓语2

3b Read the article again and answer the questions. 再读一遍短文并回答问题。

1. Why do Mario and Mary volunteer to help others? 为什么马里奥和玛丽自愿帮助他人?
2. What do they say about volunteering? 关于当志愿者他们说什么?

3c Use infinitives to complete the sentences below. 用不定式完成下面的句子。

1. Mario would like _____ an animal doctor. 马里奥想要_____一名动物医生。
2. Mario works for an animal hospital because he wants _____ about how _____ for animals. 马里奥在一家动物医院工作，因为他想要_____关于如何_____动物。
3. Mary decided _____ for a job at an after-school reading program last year. She still works there now _____ kids learn to read. 去年玛丽决定_____一份在课后阅读项目的工作。她现在仍然在那里工作 _____儿童学习阅读。
4. Mary has a dream job because she can do what she loves _____. 玛丽有一份理想的工作因为她可以做她喜欢_____的事情。

宾语从句且what在从句中作宾语。

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读60分

（答案见279页）

阅读过程

一、速读3a，写出正确答案

1. What's the passage about? （主旨大意题）

_____

_____

二、细读3a，选择正确答案

2. What does Mario want to be? （细节查找题）

A. A teacher.　　B. A driver.
C. A zookeeper.　　D. An animal doctor.

3. How often does Mario volunteer at an animal hospital? （细节查找题）

A. Every day.　　B. Once a week.
C. Twice a week.　　D. Twice a month.

4. What does Mario feel when he sees animals get better? （细节查找题）

A. Nervous.　　B. Happy.
C. Satisfied.　　D. Excited.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

5. The sentence "Volunteering here is a dream come true for me." means _____.

（推理判断题）

A. Mary likes to read books very much

B. Mary got the job at an after-school reading program

C. Mary can do what she loves to do

D. Mary has a dream to help kids learn to read

Ⅲ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用 •考点批注

★…give up several hours each week to help others.

① **several**/'sevrəl/*pron.* 几个；数个；一些

e.g. Several students volunteered to go.
几名学生自愿前往。→作限定词，用来修饰可数名词复数。

Several of her classmates agreed with her.
她的同班同学中有几名赞同她。→作代词，意为"几个；数个；一些"。

Several men, several minds.（谚）人多心不齐。

★I get such a strong feeling of satisfaction when I see the animals get better and the look of joy on their owners' faces.

② **get** 产生；变得 作及物动词，"产生；形成"，常与 feeling、idea 等词搭配。

e.g. Think hard, and you'll get a good idea. 努力想想，你会有一个好主意。

It's getting hotter and hotter now.
现在天气变得越来越热了。→作连系动词，意为"变得；变为"，后接形容词，表示体质、情绪、天气等方面的改变。

③ **such** 这样的

辨析：such 与 so

such	限定词	such+a/an+ 形容词 + 可数名词单数形式
		such+ 形容词 + 可数名词复数形式 / 不可数名词
so	副词	so+ 形容词 / 副词
		so+ 形容词 +a/an+ 可数名词单数形式
		so+many/much/few/little（少）+ 名词

速记小筏：名前 such，形副 so，多多少少也用 so，little 一词属特殊，"小"用 such，"少"用 so。

e.g. It's such an interesting story. 这是个如此有趣的故事。

I have such good books to read. 我有这么好的书可读。

I'm so glad to hear from you. 收到你的来信我很高兴。

It's so nice a day! 今天天气真好！

There are so many visitors in the park today. 今天公园里有这么多游客。

She is such a kind girl. = She is so kind a girl. 她是如此友好的一个女孩。

小贴士："such+a/an+ 形容词 + 可数名词单数形式"可与"so+ 形容词 +a/an+ 可数名词单数形式"进行转换。

考题在线 1 —What do you think of the new movie *Wandering Earth*（《流浪地球》）?

—It's _____ wonderful _____ I really like it. [黄冈]

A. so; that B. such; that C. too; to D. enough; to

点拨：本题用语法判定法。A. so+*adj.* /*adv.*+that; B. such+*adj.*+*n.*+that;

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

C. too+*adj.* /*adv.*+to do; D. *adj.*+enough to+do。wonderful 为 *adj.*。

④ **satisfaction**/ˌsætɪs'fækʃn/ *n.* 满足；满意

e.g. The old man nodded with satisfaction at the news.

听了这个消息老人满意地点了点头。 满意 / 足地

To her satisfaction, her son didn't tell lies.

令她满意的是，她的儿子没说谎。→令某人满意 / 足的是

Your answer satisfied me. 你的回答让我满意。

Your answer is satisfying. 你的回答令人满意。

I'm satisfied with your answer. 我对你的回答感到满意。

satisfaction 的相关词
satisfy(v.) 满足；满意
satisfied(adj.) 满意的（主语多用人）
satisfying(adj.)（主语多用物）

考题在线 2 用括号内词的适当形式填空。

We are sorry to hear that you are not _____ (satisfy) with your new car.

⑤ **owner**/'əʊnə(r)/ *n.* 物主；主人

e.g. He is the owner of the shop.

他是这家商店的主人。……的主人

I'd love to have my own room. = I'd love to have a room of my own.

我想有一个我自己的房间。 …of one's own=one's own… 某人自己的……

I finished it on my own.=I finished it by myself.

我独自完成了它。 on one's own=by oneself 独自

动词是 own 拥有；own 还可作形容词或代词。

★Last year, she decided to try out for a volunteer after-school reading program.



⑥ **try out** 参加……选拔 常与介词 for 连用

e.g. Over fifty boys came to try out for the football team.

50 多个男孩来参加足球队选拔。

I'm trying out a new computer.

我在试用一台新电脑。→试用

try out 参加……选拔

★…but you can see in their eyes that they're going on a different journey with each new book.

⑦ **journey** / 'dʒɜ:(r)ni/ *n.*（尤指长途）旅行；行程

e.g. I wish you a pleasant journey. 祝你旅途愉快。

He made a journey to Beijing. 他去北京旅行了。

go on a picnic/trip/diet 去野餐 / 旅行 / 节食

"go on+a+ 名词"结构，意为"举行……，进行……"。

journey 作名词，通常指远距离的陆地旅行，并且不一定要返回到出发地（即通常指单程）。

★Volunteering here is a dream come true for me.

⑧【句法分析】本句是一个动名词作主语的句子。单个的动名词（短语）作主语时，谓语动词用第三人称单数形式。

e.g. Eating too much isn't good for you.

吃太多对你不好。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

考题在线 3 Doing eye exercises _____ one of the useful ways to protect our eyes. [哈尔滨]

A. is B. are C. were

点拨：用语法判定法解题。doing eye exercises 为动名词短语，作主语时谓语动词用单数形式。

⑨ **a dream come true 梦想成真**

这是一种常见的表达方式。come true 意为"实现；成为现实"。

e.g. I've always wanted to visit Beijing, so going there on vacation next week will be a dream come true for me.

我一直都想去参观北京，所以下周去那儿度假对我来说将是梦想成真。

★I can do what I love to do and help others at the same time.

⑩ 宾语从句

e.g. Could you please tell me where we will have a meeting?

请你告诉我我们将在哪儿开会好吗？

当宾语从句为疑问句时，要用陈述语序。

考题在线 4 —What did Tom say to you just now, John?

—He asked _____. [眉山]

A. why I am so happy today

B. what will I do for the weekend

C. who did I play football with after school

D. if I could go to the movies with him tonight

点拨：本题用语法判定法。当疑问句充当宾语从句时，该疑问句要用陈述句语序，即特殊疑问词 /if/whether+ 主语 + 谓语 + 其他。同时，该疑问句的时态要与主句一致。

考题在线答案 1. A 2. satisfied 3. A 4. D

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

（答案见279页）

一、根据首字母提示完成单词

1. Tom doesn't like talking with others, so he only has s_____ friends.
2. We had a very good time during the j_____ to Mount Tai last month.
3. —I really hate myself for what I said to Mum the other day.
   —I know the f_____. It's awful, isn't it? [无锡改编]
4. She has a s_____ desire to become a writer.
5. They decided to give the pet back to its o_____.

二、用方框内所给短语的适当形式填空

come true, (not) try out, call up, to one's satisfaction, at the same time

6. Li Mei finally decided _____ for *Chinese Poetry Conference*（《中国诗词大会》）.
7. If we all pull together, our China Dream is sure to _____. [黄冈改编]
8. You can _____ your pen friend for some advice.
9. Tom and Joe stood up _____.
10. _____, all the students passed the exam.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 3 Section A（Grammar Focus-4c）

I. 课文原文、译文

Grammar Focus 语法聚焦

I'd like to help homeless people. 我想帮助无家可归的人。	She decided to try out for a volunteer after-school reading program. 她决定参加一个课后阅读项目的志愿者选拔。
You could ask hospitals to let you visit the kids and cheer them up. 你可以让医院允许你看望儿童并且让他们振奋起来。	Mario believes it can help him to get his future dream job. 马里奥相信这样做能帮助他得到他未来的理想工作。
She volunteers there once a week to help kids learn to read. 她自愿每周一次去那里工作，帮助儿童学习阅读。	I'm making some signs to put up ① around the school. 我正在做一些标语来张贴在学校四周。

4a Fill in the blanks with the phrasal verbs in the box. 用方框中的动词短语填空。

put up 张贴　hand out 分发　call up 给……打电话　cheer up 振奋起来　come up with 想出
give out 捐赠　put off 推迟

1. I want to _____ my plan to work in an animal hospital until next summer. I'm too busy with my studies this year. 我想要_____我去一家动物医院工作的计划直到明年夏天。今年我学习太忙了。
2. She hopes to _____ at least five primary schools to ask if they need volunteers for their after-school programs. 她希望_____至少五所小学，问问他们是否需要课外项目的志愿者。
3. Our class is trying to ② _____ some ideas to _____ sick children because they are often sad. 我们班正努力_____一些主意来_____生病的孩子因为他们经常很难过。
4. We decided to _____ signs around the school and _____ notices to tell students about the book sale.We will _____ the money from the sale to homeless people.
我们决定在学校四周_____标语，并_____布告来告诉学生们这次图书销售。我们将把这次售书赚的钱_____给无家可归的人。

4b Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the verbs in the box. 用方框中动词的正确形式填空。

help 帮助　move 移动　do 做　make 挣钱　visit 看望　spend 度过

Most people today are only worried about getting good jobs _____ lots of money. In their free time, they think about what _____ for fun. However, few people think about what they can do（宾语从句） _____ others. There are many people who are less lucky than us. Volunteering our time to help these people is a good way _____ our free time. For example, we can make plans _____ sick children in the hospital or raise/reɪz/ ③ money for homeless ④ people. Some people even stop doing their jobs for a few months to a year _____ to another place, like one of the countries in Africa, and help people there. 如今大多数人只为找到好工作_____很多钱担忧。在他们的业余时间里，他们考虑_____什么好玩。然而，几乎没有人思考他们能做什么_____其他人。有很多不如我们幸运的人。贡献我们的时间去帮助这些人是一

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

个_____我们业余时间的好方法。例如，我们可以制订计划_____医院里生病的儿童或给无家可归的人筹钱。一些人甚至停止工作几个月至一年_____去另一个地方，比如非洲的某一个国家，并帮助那里的人们。

4c Complete the sentences with your own ideas. Use infinitives. 用你自己的想法补全句子。使用不定式。

1. I'd like to volunteer _____.
   我想自愿_____。
2. At 12:00 midnight/'mɪdnaɪt/, I called my friend _____.
   在午夜十二点，我给我的朋友打了电话_____。
3. I'm very busy but I could help _____.
   我很忙，但是我可以帮助_____。
4. Summer vacation is coming, and I want _____.
   暑假要来了，我想_____。
5. I want to travel alone/ə'ləʊn/. My parents told me (not) _____.
   我想独自去旅行。我的父母告诉我（不）要_____。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用　　•考点批注

★I'm making some signs to put up around the school.

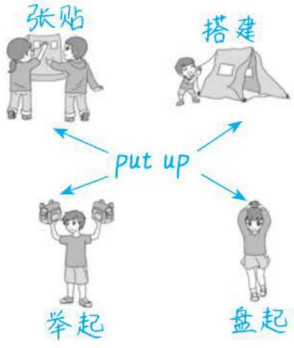
① put up 张贴

e.g. Look! There is a man putting up the notice. 看！有人在张贴布告。
Put up your hands, please. 请举手。

考题在线 1 A primary school in England has _____ signs at its three entrances（入口）, saying: Greet your child with a smile, not a mobile. [临沂]

A. put into　　B. put off
C. put on　　D. put up

点拨：句意：英格兰的一所小学已经在它的三个入口处张贴了标牌，上面写着：用微笑迎接你的孩子，而不是手机。A. 投入；B. 推迟；C. 穿上；D. 张贴，搭建，举起。



★Our class is trying to _____ some ideas to...

② try to do sth. 设法或尽力做某事 否定形式为 try not to do sth. "尽量不做某事"。

e.g. Please try not to eat too much junk food.
请尽量不要吃太多垃圾食品。

辨析：try to do sth. 与 try doing sth.

try
- try to do sth.：强调动作，表示设法去完成，但不一定成功
- try doing sth.："试着做某事"，抱着试试看的想法，用某种方法或手段做某事



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★**For example, we can…or raise money for homeless people.**

③ **raise**/reɪz/*v.* 募集；征集

e.g. Our class tried to raise money for the sick kids in the hospital.
我们班努力为医院里生病的孩子们筹钱。（为……）筹款

Mrs Wang helps her sister raise the young child.
王女士帮助她姐姐抚养这个小孩。培养；抚养

I raised my voice to make sure everyone could hear me.
我提高嗓门确保每个人都能听见。提高

If anyone has questions，please raise your hand.
如果有人还存在问题，请举手。举起

请开始你的表演



考题在线 2 选出与画线部分意思相同或相近的一项。

—How did your class raise money for the poor old man in hospital?
—We organized a book fair on the playground and sold some books and CDs. [深圳]

A. collect　　B. put up　　C. spend

点拨：本题用词义辨析法。raise 是动词，意为“筹集，募捐”；collect 收集；put up 张贴；spend 花费；raise money 和 collect money 都可表示“筹款”。

④ **homeless** *adj.* 无家可归的

“名词＋-less”构成的复合词。



英语中，名词加后缀 -less 构成形容词，表示否定意义，意为“没有，无”，类似的词还有：
hope（希望）→hopeless（没有希望的）
use（用处）→useless（无用的）
help（帮助）→helpless（无助的）

考题在线答案 1. D　2. A

Ⅲ. 单元语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

认识“动词不定式”

动词不定式的基本形式是 to do（to 有时可省略），其否定形式为 not（to）do；动词不定式无人称变化，在句中不能作谓语。

动词不定式在句中可作主语、宾语、补足语、定语、状语等。

考点 1 不定式作宾语

to do 不定式可表“将来”或“去做”的含义。常见的后接不定式作宾语的动词有：need, like, want, wish, hope, decide, expect 等。

e.g. would like to do sth. 想要做某事（去做）
plan to do sth. 计划做某事（计划将来）

考点 2 不定式作宾补

有的动词后加不定式作宾补，构成“*v.*+sb. to do”结构，此类动词中常见的有：ask, tell, invite, want, expect（期待），wish，allow（允许），encourage（鼓励）等。

考题在线 1 Harry invited me _____ with him when his parents were out of town.

A. stay　　B. stayed

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

C. staying　　D. to stay

点拨：本题用固定搭配法。invite sb. to do sth. 意为“邀请某人做某事”，不定式在此作宾补。

考点3 不定式作状语

不定式作状语表目的、结果，或用在某些表示人的心情类的形容词后表原因。

考题在线2 He took off his expensive watch _____ the fact that he was rich. [重庆]

A. to hide　　B. hid

C. hide　　D. hidden

点拨：本题用语境分析法。句意：他摘下他贵重的手表来掩饰他很富有的事实。动词不定式表目的。

考点4 动词不定式和特殊疑问词连用

动词不定式可以和 what, which, how, where, when 等特殊疑问词连用。

e.g. The question is that I don't know when to start.

问题是我不知道什么时候开始。

考点5 不带 to 的不定式

两类动词后作宾补的不定式不带 to：

（1）感官动词：see, hear, watch, feel, notice 等

（2）使役动词：let, make, have 等

e.g. I heard them argue this morning.

今天早上我听到他们吵架了。（强调整个过程）

They made the children play the piano for 6 hours a day last month.

上个月他们让这些孩子一天弹 6 个小时钢琴。

小贴士：①help 带不带 to 均可。②此类动词后用不带 to 的不定式作宾补，当变被动时，必须还原 to。

e.g. William is often seen to play Chinese kung fu in the park.

人们常看到威廉在公园练中国功夫。

考题在线3 Though he often made his little sister _____, today he was made _____ by his little sister. [梅州]

A. cry; to cry　　B. crying; crying

C. cry; cry　　D. to cry; cry

点拨：make sb. do sth. 变为被动语态时，被省略的 to 要恢复，即 sb. be made to do sth.。

“动词短语”来集会

动词短语是一种固定词组，由动词加介词或副词等构成，其作用相当于一个动词。

考点1 动词＋副词

【重难点】此类动词短语有的可用作不及物动词，如 get up（起床），start off（动身），come back（回来）等；有的可用作及物动词，如 cheer up（振奋起来），clean up（打扫干净），set up（建立），put up（搭建；张贴），cut up（切碎）等。

小贴士：此类短语相当于及物动词时，后面必须跟宾语，若名词作宾语，可以放在副词前面或后面，但代词作宾语时，必须置于副词之前。

考题在线4 Tina comes to China in order to experience Chinese culture and _____ which university is the best for her to attend. [南京]

A. put out　　B. stay out

C. find out　　D. run out

点拨：本题用短语辨析法。A. 熄灭；B. 待在户外；C. 查明；发现；D. 用完。

考点2 动词＋介词

这种结构的动词短语在句中作谓语时，后面必须接宾语。常见的有：look for（寻找），stand for（代表），wait for（等待），pay for（付费），send for（派人去请）等。

考题在线5 —Why are you late for school today?

—I'm sorry. I didn't catch the early bus and I had to _____ the next one. [福州]

A. wait for　　B. ask for　　C. care for

点拨：由交际情景可知，“我”上学迟到了。因为“我”没有赶上早班车，所以“我”必须等下一班车。wait for 等候；ask for 请求，征求；care for 照顾，非常喜欢。

考点3 动词＋副词＋介词

这种动词短语相当于及物动词，介词后面须跟

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

宾语。常见的有：add up to（总共是），catch up with（赶上），look down upon（瞧不起），run out of（耗尽，用光）等。

考点4 动词＋名词＋介词

这种动词短语相当于及物动词，后面须接宾语，有时名词前可以加形容词修饰。常见的有：make fun of（取笑），make use of（利用），pay attention to（注意），take care of（照顾）等。

小贴士：这类动词短语后面的宾语无论是名词还是代词，都要放在介词之后。

e.g. He is taking care of his little brother.
他在照顾他的小弟弟。

We shouldn't make fun of others.
我们不应该取笑他人。

考题在线6 —A lot of athletes will go to Japan to _____ the 2020 Tokyo Olympics.
—I love sports and I can't wait to enjoy the exciting moments.
A. take part in　　B. take pride in
C. take in　　D. take place

点拨：本题用短语辨析法。take part in 参加；take pride in 因……而骄傲；take in 理解，吸收，欺骗；take place 发生。take part in 后面接活动。

方法真题练

考题在线答案 1. D　2. A　3. A　4. C　5. A　6. A

Ⅳ. 单元语法专练 夺取中考语法满分

（答案见279页）

单项选择

1. —What are you going to do tonight?
—I plan _____ *Days of Our Past.* [德阳]
A. watch　　B. watching
C. to watch　　D. watched

2. —We are planning a Yangtze River Protection Day this weekend. Do you have any advice?
—You'd better _____ signs around the school to tell all the students about that. [荆州]
A. make up　　B. put up
C. set up　　D. show up

3. —Jack is telling everyone he has bought a new car.
—Pay no attention to him. He is just _____. [河南]
A. taking off　　B. showing off
C. driving off　　D. setting off

4. It was raining. My father asked me _____ a raincoat. [重庆]
A. take　　B. takes　　C. took　　D. to take

5. —Julia, your mobile phone is ringing.
—Wait a minute. It's dangerous _____ it while crossing the street. [乐山]
【导学号：2039901】
A. answering　　B. answer
C. to answer

Period 4 Section B（1a–1e）

Ⅰ. 课文原文、译文

1a Match the sentences with similar meanings. 搭配意思相近的句子。

__b__ 1. I've run out of it. 我把它用完了。　　a. I repaired/rɪ'peəd/ it. 我修理好它了。
_____ 2. I take after① my mother. 我像我的母亲。　　b. I don't have any more of it. 我没有更多了。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

_____ 3. I fixed/fikst/ it up. 我把它修好了。　　c. I'm similar to② her. 我跟她很像。

_____ 4. I gave it away. 我把它送人了。　　d. I didn't keep it. 我没有留着它。

1b Match the phrasal verbs with the nouns. Then make sentences with the phrases.

把动词短语和名词搭配起来。然后用短语造句。

run out of 用光	my bike 我的自行车	I gave away my bike to a children's home.
take after 像	money 钱	我把我的自行车捐赠给了儿童之家。
fix up 修理	my father 我的爸爸	_____
give away 捐赠	old clothes 旧衣服	_____

1c Listen and number the pictures [1-4] in the correct order. 听录音并按正确顺序从 1 到 4 给图片编号。

a　b　c　d



1d Listen again. Circle *T* for true or *F* for false.

再听一遍录音。圈出 T（正确的）或 F（错误的）。

1. Jimmy/'dʒɪmi/ fixes up broken/'brəʊkən/③ bicycle parts, like wheels/wi:lz/.
吉米修理车子坏的部件，像轮子。　T　F
2. Jimmy sells bikes. 吉米卖自行车。　T　F
3. Jimmy takes after his mother. 吉米像他的妈妈。　T　F
4. Jimmy has run out of money. 吉米已经把钱用光了。　T　F

1e Role-play a conversation between Jimmy and the reporter. Use the information in 1c and 1d. 分角色表演一段吉米和记者之间的对话。用 1c 和 1d 中的信息。

A: What do you do, Jimmy? 吉米，你是做什么的?

B: I fix up... 我修理……

Ⅱ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

☞（答案见279页）

Ⅱ 听力过程

听 1c，选择正确答案



1. When are they talking?
A. In the morning.
B. In the afternoon.
C. In the evening.

2. What does Jimmy do?
A. He finds and sells old bikes.
B. He buys old bikes and then sells them.
C. He fixes up old bikes and gives them away to other kids.

3. Who gave Jimmy the idea?
A. His father.　B. His teacher.
C. His brother.

4. How do Jimmy's parents feel about him?
A. They are worried about him.
B. They feel ashamed of him.
C. They feel proud of him.

5. What's Jimmy's problem now?
A. He is too tired.
B. He is too busy.
C. He runs out of money.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注 •考点应用

★I take after my mother. 相当于 be similar to, look like。其中 after 是介词，后常接名词或代词。

① **take after**（外貌或行为）像

e.g. She takes after/looks like/ is similar to her mother. 她长得像她妈妈。



take after（外貌或行为）像

辨析: take after 与 look like

take after	指由于血缘关系而在外貌、性格等方面相似。
look like	意为“看上去像”，既可指人也可指物，只强调外表。

e.g. The girl takes after her mother in appearance. 这个女孩长相随她母亲。

You look like your father very much. 你长得太像你爸爸了。

考题在线 —Is the girl really that woman's daughter? She doesn't _____ her at all.

—But sure she is. She looks like her father.

A. look after B. take after C. run after

点拨: 本题用短语辨析法。look after 照顾；take after（外貌或行为）像；run after 追赶；追逐。

★I'm similar to her.

② **be similar to...** 与……类似的，相像的

e.g. My best friend is similar to me because we are both hard-working. 我最好的朋友跟我相似，因为我们俩都是勤奋的。

The brothers look similar. 他们兄弟看上去很像。

They have the same age. 他们的年龄相同。

similar 相似的；类似的 可作定语和表语。

same 相同的；同样的 前面要加定冠词 the。

★Jimmy fixes up broken bicycle parts, like wheels.

③ **broken** /'brəʊkən/ *adj.* (no longer whole or working correctly) 破损的；残缺的

e.g. The TV is broken. 电视机坏了。

Mary broke a glass. 玛丽打破了一个玻璃杯。

She's worked for 27 hours without a break. 她已经不间断地工作了 27 个小时。

break 还可用作名词，意为“间歇；休息时间”。

break 动词，意为“损坏”。其过去式是 broke，过去分词是 broken。

考题在线答案 B

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见279页)

根据汉语提示完成句子

1. Jim _____（用完）his exercise books, so he had to go to the shop to buy some.
2. Look at the picture. Tom doesn't _____（像）his father at all.
3. Watch out! There is some _____（破损的）glass.
4. My watch is broken. Who can help me to _____（修理它）?
5. My new shoes _____（与……相似）yours.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 5 Section B（2a–2e）

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文及导读

原文译文 · 导读　　导读批注

Pre-reading（读前）

2a **How do you usually thank someone who helps you? Discuss this with a partner.** 你通常如何感谢帮助你的人？与一个搭档讨论这个问题。

While-reading（读中）

课文朗读 2b

2b **Read the letter/'letə(r)/ and answer the questions.**
读这封信并回答问题。

1. Who wrote the letter to Miss Li? Why? 谁给李小姐写了这封信？为什么？
2. What did Miss Li do? 李小姐做了什么？

> Understanding Parts of Speech 了解词性
> Knowing what part of speech a word is (noun, verb, preposition, etc.) can help you understand the word's meaning. 知道一个词的词性（名词、动词、介词等）能帮助你理解词的意思。

批 体裁：英文书信（记叙文）

Dear Miss/mɪs/ Li, 亲爱的李小姐：

I'd like to thank you for giving money to Animal Helpers. I'm sure you know that this group was set up① to help disabled/dɪs'eɪbld/② people like me. You helped to make it possible for me to have Lucky. Lucky makes a big difference to③ my life. Let me tell you my story.

批 句子：本文中心句，总领全文。

形式宾语　真正的宾语

我想感谢你向“动物帮手”捐钱。我确信你知道这个组织是为帮助像我这样的残疾人设立的。有了你的帮助，我才有可能拥有“幸运儿”。“幸运儿”对我的生活产生了很大影响。让我来给你讲讲我的故事吧。

What would it be like to be blind/blaɪnd/④ or deaf/def/? Or imagine /ɪ'mædʒɪn/⑤ you can't walk or use your hands easily. Most people would never think about this, but many people have these difficulties/'dɪfɪkəltiz/⑥. I can't use my arms or legs well, so normal things like answering the telephone, opening/'əʊpənɪŋ/ and closing doors/dɔ:(r)z/, or carrying /'kærɪŋ/ things are difficult for me. Then one day last year, a friend of mine helped me out. She talked to Animal Helpers about getting me a special trained/treɪnd/⑦ dog. She also thought a dog might cheer me up. I love animals and I was excited/ɪk'saɪtɪd/⑧ about the idea of having a dog.

批 句子：用特殊疑问句设问，承上启下，引出 my story，吸引读者的阅读兴致。

双目失明或双耳失聪会是什么样呢？或者想象一下你不能自如地走路或使用你的双手。

批 结构：总、分、总结构，清晰明了。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

大部分人从不会想到这个，但是很多人有这些困难。因为我不能自如地使用我的胳膊和腿，所以一些寻常的事情像接电话、开门、关门或拿东西对于我来说都是困难的。然后去年的一天，我的一个朋友帮助我解决了困难。她跟“动物帮手”谈了关于给我一只经过特殊训练的狗的事。她也认为一只狗可能使我变得振奋起来。我喜欢动物，并且我对拥有一只狗这个主意感到兴奋。

After six months of training/'treɪnɪŋ/ with a dog at Animal Helpers, I was able to bring him home. My dog's name is Lucky—a good name for him because I feel very lucky to have him. You see, I'm only able to have a "dog helper" because of your kindness/'kaɪndnəs/[9]! Lucky is very clever[10] /'klevə(r)/ and understands/ˌʌndə(r)'stændz/[11] many English words.He can understand me when I give him orders. For example, I say, "Lucky! Get my book, "and he does it at once.

批 句子：运用举例法形象描述了 Lucky 的 clever。

在“动物帮手”同一只狗一起训练了六个月后，我能够带他回家了。我的狗叫“幸运儿”——对他来说是一个好名字，因为我感觉拥有他很幸运。你看，由于你的善良我才能够拥有一个“狗帮手”！“幸运儿”很聪明，并且懂很多英语单词。当我给他指令时他能理解我。例如，我说：“幸运儿！把我的书拿过来。”他马上就做。

Industry is the parent of success.
成功源于勤奋。

Lucky is a fantastic dog. I'll send you a photo of him if you like, and I could show you how he helps me. Thank you again for changing/'tʃeɪndʒɪŋ/[12] my life.

“幸运儿”是只了不起的狗。如果你喜欢，我会给你寄一张他的照片，并且我可以让你看看他是怎么帮助我的。再次感谢你改变了我的生活。

Best wishes,
最美好的祝愿，

Ben Smith
本·史密斯

Post-reading（读后）

写作小练笔 ☞（答案见62页）

2c Look at the list of words below. Circle the part of speech of each word and make your own sentences with these words.

看下面的单词列表。圈出各个词的词性并用这些词自己造句子。

1. group 组 (*adj./n.*)（形容词 / 名词）_____
2. disabled 有残疾的 (*adj./adv.*)（形容词 / 副词）_____
3. difference 不同 (*adv./n.*)（副词 / 名词）_____
4. imagine 想象 (*v./n.*)（动词 / 名词）_____
5. difficulties 困难 (*n./adj.*)（名词 / 形容词）_____
6. normal 正常的 (*adv./adj.*)（副词 / 形容词）_____
7. training 训练 (*adv./n.*)（副词 / 名词）_____
8. kindness 善良 (*n./v.*)（名词 / 动词）_____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

2d Use the information in the letter to make true sentences by matching the different parts. 利用信件中的信息，通过连接不同部分造正确的句子。

SUBJECT 主语	VERB 谓语	OBJECT 宾语
Miss Li 李小姐	can get 能够取	a letter to Miss Li. 一封信给李小姐。
Ben Smith 本·史密斯	trains 训练	money to Animal Helpers. 钱给“动物帮手”。
Lucky “幸运儿”	sent 寄	animals like Lucky. 像“幸运儿”这样的动物。
Animal Helpers “动物帮手”	wrote 写	things for disabled people. 东西给残疾人。

2e Discuss the questions with a partner. 与一个搭档讨论这些问题。

1. In what other ways do you think dogs are able to help people? 你认为狗还可以以其他什么方式帮助人们?
2. What other animals can we train to help people? 我们还可以训练其他什么动物来帮助人们?

课文背诵指南



A thank-you letter

- **Para.1** → Animal Helpers: giving money, was set up to help disabled people, make it possible to have Lucky, makes a big difference
- **Para.2** → Ben Smith's difficulties: can't use my arms or legs well, normal things are difficult for me a friend of mine: helped me out
- **Para.3~4** → Lucky: six months of training, bring him home, feel very lucky, have a “dog helper”, clever, understands many English words, understand me, a fantastic dog

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读 60分

(答案见279页)

阅读策略

首句点题法（分析文章或段落首句，可以解答一些写作意图或主旨大意类的题目。）

拓展阅读

阅读过程

一、速读 2b，选择正确答案

1. ⊙ Why does Ben write this letter to Miss Li? （主旨大意题）

A. To thank her.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

B. To help her.

C. To ask for help.

D. To make friends with her.

二、细读 2b，选择正确答案

2. What's the purpose（目的）of setting up Animal Helpers? （细节查找题）

A. To help homeless animals.

B. To help disabled people.

C. To train animals for fun.

D. To help people make friends with animals.

3. What's wrong with Ben? （细节查找题）

A. He has a bad cold.

B. He can't hear clearly.

C. He can't see clearly.

D. He can't use his arms or legs well.

4. How long did Ben train with Lucky? （细节查找题）

A. For six months.

B. For half an hour.

C. For nine months.

D. For one year.

5. From the passage, we CAN'T know _____. （细节查找题）

A. the name of the dog

B. how the dog helps Ben

C. whether Miss Li wants a photo of Lucky

D. whether Lucky can understand Ben's orders

Ⅲ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

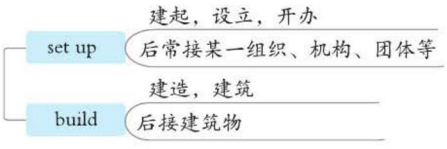
•考点批注　　•考点应用

★I'm sure you know that this group was set up to help disabled people like me.

一语辨异：They set up an organization to help the poor build houses. 他们设立了一个组织来帮助穷人建造房子。

① **set up** 建起；设立

辨析：set up 与 build



考题在线 1 This company wants to _____ a hospital on the corner of the street.

A. set about　　B. set out

C. set up　　D. set aside

点拨：用语境分析法解题。由句意"这家公司想在那条街的拐角处建立一家医院。"可知 set up 建起；设立，符合语境。set about 开始（做）；set out 出发，动身；set aside 把……放到一旁。

② **disabled**/dɪs'eɪbld/*adj.* 丧失能力的；有残疾的

e.g. I hope more people will care about the disabled.

我希望会有更多的人来关心残疾人。

拓展：disabled 由否定前缀 dis- +abled 构成，是一种构词法。有些词加否定前缀 dis- 可构成相应的反义词。

able adj. 有能力的
disable v. 使丧失能力；使伤残

[名师教你记单词]

order n. 整齐→ disorder n. 混乱
appear v. 出现→ disappear v. 消失
advantage n. 优点→ disadvantage n. 缺点
agree v. 同意→ disagree v. 不同意
honest adj. 诚实的→ dishonest adj. 不诚实的

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★Lucky makes a big difference to my life.

③ **make a difference to...** 对……有影响

to 是介词，其后可接名词、代词或 v.-ing 形式作宾语。difference 前还可用 no. any. some. much 等修饰。

e.g. Shared bikes have made a big difference to our life.
共享单车对我们的生活有着重大影响。
介词

The rain made no difference to the game.
这场雨对比赛没有产生任何影响。
介词

考题在线 2 —Which should we start with, Water World or Space World?
—Either is OK. It makes no _____ to me.
A. afraid B. promise C. difference D. decision
点拨：本题用语境分析法。根据答语前句“哪个都可以。”可推知，后句说“这对我来说没有什么影响”。

★What would it be like to be blind or deaf?

敲黑板
blind 的主语是人而非眼睛，表示一只眼失明要用介词 in。

④ **blind**/blaɪnd/ *adj.* (not able to see) 瞎的；失明的

e.g. He is blind in his left eye. 他左眼失明了。
the blind 盲人 the rich 富人 the+adj. 表示一类人。
He is blind to the mistakes. 他对这些错误视而不见。
The police turned a blind eye to this problem.
警方对这一问题佯装不见。

be blind (to sth.)（对某事）视而不见
turn a blind eye (to sth.)（对某事）佯装不见；睁一只眼闭一只眼

★Or imagine you can't walk or use your hands easily.

⑤ 【高频】**imagine** /ɪ'mædʒɪn/ *v.* 想象；设想

及物动词，后加名词、代词、动词-ing形式或从句作宾语。

e.g. We often imagine living in a big house.
我们经常想象住在一所大房子里。

imagination *n.* 想象力；想象

速记小筏：巧记后接动词 -ing 形式的词
放弃(give up)享受(enjoy)可后悔(regret)，坚持(keep)练习(practice)必完成（finish）。延期（put off）建议（advise）勿介意（mind），掌握它们今必行。

考题在线 3 You can _____ how our lives will be if there is no electricity.
A. imagine B. think C. tell D. talk
点拨：本题用词义辨析法。句意：你可以想象如果没有电，我们的生活会是什么样。imagine 想象；think 认为；tell 告诉；talk 谈论。

★... but many people have these difficulties.

⑥ **difficulty**/'dɪfɪkəlti/ *n.* 困难；难题

强调具体的“困难”时，为可数名词；指笼统的“困难；艰难”时，为不可数名词。

e.g. There are lots of children with reading difficulties.
有很多存在阅读困难的儿童。
—Do you have any difficulty in learning English?
你学英语有困难吗？

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

—No. I have no difficulty in learning English.
没有。我学英语没有困难。

have difficulty (in) doing sth. = have trouble (in) doing sth. 做某事有困难
in difficulty/difficulties 处境困难

★She talked to Animal Helpers about getting me a special trained dog.

⑦ **train** /treɪn/ *v.* 训练；培训 train sb./sth. to do sth. 训练某人/某物去做某事

本句中 trained 是过去分词作定语，修饰名词 dog。过去分词作定语，在语态上，表被动；在时间上，表示动作已经发生或完成，与它所修饰的名词存在逻辑上的动宾关系。

e.g. Sue is trained to be a doctor. 苏在接受医生培训。

trainer *n.* 教练员
training *n.* 培训（不可数）

★I love animals and I was excited about the idea of having a dog.

⑧ **excited** /ɪk'saɪtɪd/ *adj.* 激动的；兴奋的

e.g. China's spacecraft will fly to Mars in 2020. Are you excited about it?
中国的宇宙飞船将在 2020 年飞上火星。对此你感到兴奋吗？

be excited about/at 对……感到兴奋
be excited to do… 很兴奋做……

辨析：excited 与 exciting

excited	意为“激动的；兴奋的”，用来修饰或描述人。
exciting	意为“令人兴奋的；令人激动的”，用来修饰或描述物。

考题在线 4 —Did you watch the first match of the Russian World Cup?
—Of course! We were so _____ to watch the _____ match. [乌鲁木齐]

A. exciting; excited　　B. excited; excited
C. exciting; exciting　　D. excited; exciting

点拨：本题用词义辨析法。此处句意：我们很兴奋观看了那场令人兴奋的比赛。

一语辨异：We were all very excited when we heard the exciting news. 听到那个令人振奋的消息时，我们都很激动。

★You see, I'm only able to have a "dog helper" because of your kindness!

强调具体举动为可数名词；笼统指“仁慈；善良”，为不可数名词。

⑨ **kindness** /'kaɪndnəs/ *n.* 仁慈；善良

拓展：kindness 由形容词 kind+ -ness 构成，是一种构词法。

e.g. I can never repay your many kindnesses to me.
我无法报答你对我无微不至的关怀。

cold+-ness= coldness 寒冷
sad+-ness= sadness 悲伤
good+-ness= goodness 善良
ill+-ness= illness 疾病

★Lucky is very clever and understands many English words.

⑩ **clever** /'klevə(r)/ *adj.* 聪明的，近义词为 **smart**

e.g. A clever man won't do that. 聪明人不会那样做。
Lucy is quite clever and she does well at school. 作定语 作表语
露西相当聪明，学习成绩很好。

⑪ **understand** /ˌʌndə(r)'stændz/ *v.* 理解；领会

e.g. —Do you understand what I mean? 你明白我什么意思吗？
—I'm sorry. I don't understand. 对不起，我不明白。 及物动词 不及物动词

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★**Thank you again for changing my life.**

⑫ **change** /tʃeɪndʒ/ *v.*& *n.* 改变；变化 可用作及物动词，也可用作不及物动词。

e.g. He has changed a lot since he left school. 自毕业以来他改变了很多。

Please pay attention to the change in the weather.
请注意天气的变化。 作名词，表示"变化"时，既可作可数名词，也可作不可数名词。

I'm afraid I've got no small change.
我恐怕没有零钱了。 作名词时，还可表示"零钱"，为不可数名词。

A mother's love never changes.(谚) 母爱永恒。

参 change 常用搭配
- change (…) into… (把……) 变成……
- change one's mind 改变主意

考题在线答案 1. C 2. C 3. A 4. D

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见279页)

一、根据汉语提示完成句子

1. There's no time for me to _____ (写信) to him.

2. The box is so heavy that I can't _____ (拿；提；扛) it.

3. The _____ (失明的) girl can take care of herself.

4. If you want to change the world, you have to _____ (改变) yourself first.

5. She is a very _____ (聪明的) girl; she will do well in life.

二、用所给词的适当形式填空

6. If you have _____ (difficult) in English syntax, call me.

7. Although Peter's mom is _____(able), he still takes pride in her. [南充]

8. There will be a _____ (train) course (课程) before you take the job.

9. Tom said he _____ (understand) what you had said.

10. He is famous not only for his talent but also for his _____(kind).

三、单项选择

11. —Have you noticed that Anna's spoken English is greatly improved?
—Yes, she sets us a good example. Hard work always _____ .
A. makes no difference
B. makes a difference
C. makes a problem
D. make different

12. —What should we do for the disabled children in the children's home?
—You're supposed to _____ a study group to help them.
A. take up B. fix up
C. set up D. stay up

13. Your help makes _____ possible for her to pass the exam.
A. this B. that
C. one D. it

14. We are _____ about the _____ news that Beijing will hold the Winter Olympics in 2022. [龙东]
A. excited; exciting
B. exciting; excited
C. excited; excite

15. _____, he has to listen to tapes every day. [益阳]
A. To learn English well
B. Learn English well
C. Learning English well

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 6 Section B（3a–Self Check）

I. 课文原文、译文

3a Look at these kinds of volunteer work. Can you add more? What would you like to do? Discuss it with a partner. 看这些种类的志愿工作。你能增加更多吗？你想做什么？与一个搭档讨论。

· Working in an old people's home 在一家敬老院工作

· Helping kids in an after-school program 在一个课外项目中帮助孩子们

· Being a guide at a museum 在一家博物馆当向导

3b Write a letter or e-mail to the place you want to volunteer at.

写一封信或邮件给你想做志愿工作的地方。

Which volunteer job do you want to do? 你想做哪项志愿工作? What are your interests/'ɪntrəsts/ ① and hobbies? 你的兴趣和业余爱好是什么? How can these help you to do the job? 这些怎样帮助你做这项工作? Why do you want to do the volunteer job? 你为什么想做这项志愿工作? When are you free to do the job? 你什么时候有空做这项工作?	I'd like to /I'm interested in/I want to volunteer as... 我想 / 我对……感兴趣 / 我想要志愿作为…… I'm good at/I'm strong in/In my free time, I like to...so I think I'd be good at this job. 我擅长 / 我擅长 / 在我的业余时间里，我喜欢……所以我认为我会做好这份工作。 I want to help out as a volunteer in your old people's home/school/museum/group because... 我想要在你们敬老院 / 学校 / 博物馆 / 集团作为一名志愿者帮忙，因为…… I'm free to help in/on... 在……的时候我有空帮忙。

Dear Sir/sɜ: (r)/ or Madam/'mædəm/, 敬爱的先生或女士:

_____

Yours truly, 敬启，

_____

Self Check 自我检测

1 Fill in each blank with a possible verb to make a phrasal verb. 用可能的动词组成动词短语填空。

1. _____ up 向上
2. _____ off 离开
3. _____ away 离开
4. _____ out of 外面
5. _____ after 之后
6. _____ up with 提出；想出

2 Fill in the blanks with the appropriate phrasal verbs or infinitives. 用合适的动词短语或不定式填空。

Last week, Jimmy, the Bike Boy _____ of money _____ old bikes. He was unhappy, so everyone was trying _____ him up. He _____ some signs asking for old bikes and _____all his friends on the phone _____ them about the problem. He even _____ notices at the supermarket. Then he told the teachers at school about his problem and they _____ a call-

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

引导词，指代 ideas，作 came up with 的宾语

in center for parents. The ideas (that he _____ with) worked out ③ fine. ④ He now has 16 bikes

先行词 定语从句 谓语

_____ up and _____ to children (who don't have bikes).

定语从句

上周，吉米，那个自行车男孩，_____钱_____旧自行车。他不开心，因此大家都在努力使他_____。他_____一些要旧自行车的标语，并且通过电话_____他所有朋友_____他们关于这个问题。他甚至在超市_____布告。然后他把他的问题告诉了学校的老师，他们为家长_____一个热线中心。他_____的这些主意效果很好。他现在有 16 辆自行车_____并_____给没有自行车的孩子们。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用 •考点批注

★What are your interests and hobbies?

① **interest** /'ɪntrəst/ *n.* 兴趣；关注 *v.* 使感兴趣；使关注

have/take/show(an)interest in (=be interested in) 后可加名词、代词或动词-ing形式。

e.g. I watched with interest. 我兴致勃勃地看着。 (n.)

The new car interests me. 我对这辆新车感兴趣。 (v.)

Why are you interested in this position? 你为什么对这个职位感兴趣？

考题在线 1 —Hi, Li Mei. How is your new school?

—Fantastic. We can choose the courses according to our _____. I love operas, so I took the Beijing Opera class. [东营]

A. grades B. talents

C. interests D. experiences

点拨：本题用语境分析法。句意："你好，李梅。你的新学校怎么样？""太好了。我们可以根据自己的兴趣选择课程。我喜欢戏曲，因此我选了京剧课。"

A. 分数；等级；B. 才能；C. 爱好；兴趣；D. 经历。

拓展：与 interested 用法相似的词还有：

surprised 惊讶的	surprising 令人惊讶的	relaxed 放松的
relaxing 令人放松的	tired 疲劳的	tiring 令人困倦的
excited 激动的；兴奋的	exciting 令人激动的	

- interested adj. 感兴趣的(主语通常是人)
- interesting adj. 有趣的(主语通常是物)

★The ideas that he _____ with worked out fine.

② **that he _____ with 是一个由 that 引导的定语从句，修饰先行词 the ideas。that 在定语从句中作宾语，此处可省略。**

考题在线 2 —Do you like the weekly talk show, *The Reader*, on CCTV?

—Sure. It's a great TV programme _____ brings the habit of reading back into the public. [福建]

A. who B. that C. what

点拨：考查定语从句的引导词。根据句意"这是一个非常好的电视节目，把阅读习惯带回给了公众。"that 作关系代词，引导定语从句，既可以指人，也可以指物。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

③ **work out 产生效果；（情况等）发展进行**

e.g. Everything worked out fine. 一切发展得很好。

The plan worked out badly. 计划进行得很不成功。

The math problem is too difficult. I can't work it out.

这道数学题太难了。我算不出来。

She worked out the problem with his help.

在他的帮助下，她解决了这个问题。

We worked out a plan very soon. 我们很快就制订出了一项计划。

相当于 work out well，是"动词+副词"结构的短语，表示"成功地发展"，相当于不及物动词，不带宾语。

算出/计算

解决

制定

考题在线 3 —Miss Li, could you please help me _____ this math problem?

—OK. Let me try. **[威海]**

A. look up　　B. work out　　C. set up

点拨：考查动词短语辨析。句意：——李女士，你能帮我_____这道数学题吗？——好的，让我试一试。look up 查询；work out 算出；set up 搭建。

考题在线答案 1. C　2. B　3. B

Ⅲ. 写作一课一法 夺取中考写作 20分

写作小练笔

Miss Li gave money to Animal Helpers which was set up to help disabled people.So she helped to make it possible for Ben Smith to have Lucky. Lucky is a special trained dog. Ben Smith can't use his arms or legs well. Many normal things are so difficult for him. Lucky makes a big difference to Ben's life. Lucky is just like a friend of him. Lucky helps him out.

Lucky was trained as a "dog helper" for six months before Ben took him home. Ben thought he was so lucky that he called the dog Lucky. Lucky was very clever. He understands many English words and understands Ben. Ben thinks that Lucky is a fantastic dog.

This is why Ben Smith wrote a thank-you letter to Miss Li.

单元话题 [湘潭]

假如你是李华。请给你的加拿大笔友 Eric 写一封 80 词左右的邮件，介绍你和你的朋友做的一次志愿者活动的情况。要点如下：

时间	上周日
地点	学校附近的街区
活动内容	上午：打扫街道，帮助老人做家务
	下午：给小朋友讲故事
感受	帮助别人是快乐的

审题指导（把握中心，得方向分）

在写作过程中，要注意学会通过描述事件来总结感受，表达如何为他人提供帮助。要求结合自身特点，弘扬社会的正能量。

写作技法（学会方法，巧得高分）

"三步法"写提供帮助和志愿服务类作文

第一步：开篇点题：说明对志愿活动的认识，点明活动时间

第二步：展开表述：写出活动的具体内容

第三步：结尾综述：表明自己的观点及活动的意义

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

写作模板（学会套路，得基本分）

引出话题	What I've done these days
叙述事件	Last Sunday: did some voluntary work in the neighborhood In the morning: cleaned the streets helped the old do housework In the afternoon: told stories to the kids
总结感受	busy but happy helping others can bring happiness not only...but also...

经典词句（妙用句式，得出彩分）

单词	voluntary, busy, happy, happiness
短语	in the neighborhood, do housework, not only...but also...
句子	① How's it going? You want to know... ② I was busy but very happy. ③ I think helping others can bring happiness not only to others but also to ourselves.

范文赏析（书写工整，得印象分）

Dear Eric,

How's it going? You want to know what I've done these days. Now let me tell you.

Last Sunday, my friends and I did some voluntary work in the neighborhood of our school. In the morning, we cleaned the streets. And then we went to the old people's home and helped the old there do housework. In the afternoon, we told stories to the kids in the children's home. That day, I was busy but very happy.

I think helping others can bring happiness not only to others but also to ourselves.

Yours,

Li Hua

名师点评：本文运用了"三步法"写志愿服务类作文。1. 开篇点题（第一段）；2. 展开表述（第二段）；3. 结尾综述（第三段）。内容连贯，句子流畅自然。

1. （that）宾语从句，what 引导的宾语从句等众多典型句型运用熟练。

2. want to do，not only... but also... 等亮点词汇显示出作者较高的词汇运用水平。

及测听试力卷

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

（答案见280页）

单元知识浓缩（根据汉语提示完成短文）

After a heavy earthquake happened in Sichuan, many people were hurt badly. All the _____[1]（志愿者）wanted to help them out and _____[2]（使他们振奋起来）. So they _____[3]（建立）many groups. What they did worked out fine.

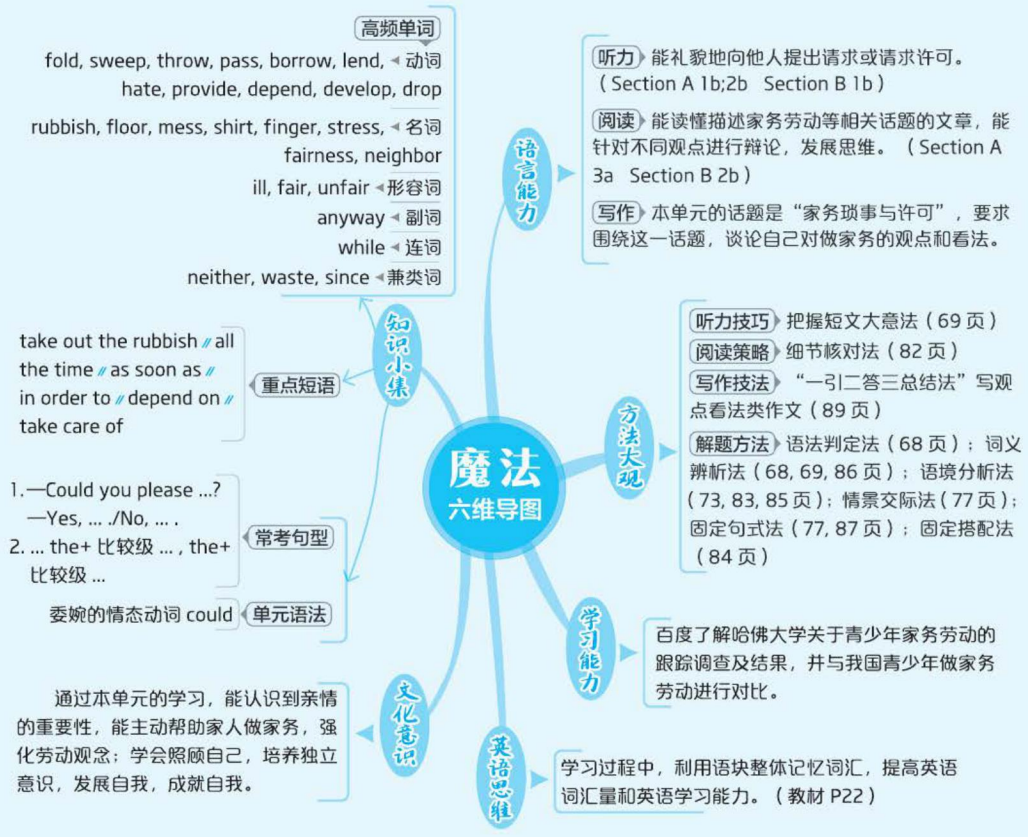
I joined one of the groups. First I received _____[4]（训练）in the group for _____[5]（几个）days. Then I helped _____[6]（分发）food to the homeless people. Sometimes we _____[7]（募集）money for the people in the earthquake area.

One day, while we were working at the help center, a dog came in with a basket in its mouth. We found a piece of paper in it and there were some words on it: "Dear children, I'm a disabled man who can't see anything. Every day I get help from the kind people. I deeply thank you for your _____[8]（善良）. I _____[9]（想出）an idea to help others. Now I let my dog _____[10]（拿）the food to you. Then you can give the food to the people who are still in hunger."

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 3 Could you please clean your room?

词汇表听写



记忆大师

Period 1 Section A (1a–2d)

必背单词

1. **rubbish** *n.* 垃圾；废弃物→ take out the rubbish 倒垃圾
2. **fold** *v.* 折叠；对折→ fold the clothes 叠衣服
3. **sweep** *v.* 扫；打扫→ swept（过去式）→ swept（过去分词）→ sweep the floor 扫地
4. **floor** *n.* 地板→ ceiling *n.* 天花板
5. **mess** *n.* 杂乱；不整洁→ messy *adj.* 凌乱的→ in a mess 乱糟糟；一团糟

必背短语

6. at least 至少→ at most 至多
7. any minute now 随时；马上；在任何时刻
8. do the dishes 洗餐具
9. clean the living room 打扫客厅
10. make the bed 铺床

必背句子

11. —**Could you please** sweep the floor?
请你扫一下地好吗？

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

—Yes, sure. 好的，当然可以。

12. —**Could I** use your computer?
我可以用一下你的电脑吗?
—Sorry. I'm going to work on it now.
对不起。我现在要用它工作。

Period 2 Section A (3a–3c)

必背单词

1. **throw** *v.* 扔；掷→threw（过去式）→thrown（过去分词）
2. **neither** *adv.* 也不 *pron.* 两者都不
3. **shirt** *n.* 衬衫

必背短语

4. all the time 频繁；反复
5. as soon as —……就……→ the minute(that) ...

必背句子

6. **The minute** I sat down in front of the TV, my mom came over.
我刚在电视机前坐下，我妈妈就过来了。
7. For one week, she did not do any housework and **neither did I**.
整整一个星期，她没有做任何家务，我也没有。

Period 3 Section A (Grammar Focus–4c)

必背单词

1. **pass** *v.* 给；递；走过；通过→pass sb. sth. =pass sth. to sb. 递给某人某物
2. **borrow** *v.* 借；借用→borrow sth. from sb. 向某人借某物
3. **lend** *v.* 借给；借出→lent（过去式）→lent（过去分词）→lend sb. sth. = lend sth. to sb. 借给某人某物
4. **finger** *n.* 手指
5. **hate** *v.* 厌恶；讨厌→like/love 喜欢（反义词）
6. **while** *conj.* 与……同时；当……的时候；而；然而

必背短语

7. hang out 闲逛

必背句子 & 语法

8. —**Could** I go out for dinner with my friends?
我可以和我的朋友们一起出去吃晚餐吗?
—Sure, that should be OK.
当然可以，那应该没问题。
9. —**Could** we get something to drink after the movie?
我们看完电影之后能喝点东西吗?
—No, you can't. You have a basketball game tomorrow.
不，你们不可以。明天你有一场篮球赛。
10. —**Could** you **please** take the dog for a walk?
请问你能遛一下狗吗?
—OK, but I want to watch one show first.
好，但是我想先看一个节目。

Period 5 Section B (2a–2e)

必背单词

1. **stress** *n.* 精神压力；心理负担
2. **waste** *n.* 浪费；垃圾　*v.* 浪费；滥用
3. **provide** *v.* 提供；供应→provide sb. with sth. =provide sth. for sb. 给某人提供某物
4. **anyway** *adv.* 而且；加之
5. **depend** *v.* 依靠；信赖→depend on 依靠；信赖
6. **develop** *v.* 发展；壮大→development *n.* 发展→developing *adj.* 发展中的→developed *adj.* 发达的
7. **fairness** *n.* 公正性；合理性→fair *adj.* 合理的；公正的→unfair *adj.* 不合理的；不公正的
8. **since** *conj.* 因为；既然
prep., *conj.* & *adv.* 从……以后；自……以来
9. **neighbor** *n.* 邻居
10. **ill** *adj.* 有病；不舒服→illness *n.* 病
11. **drop** *v.* 落下；掉下

必背短语

12. a waste of 浪费
13. in order to 目的是；为了→in order not to（否定结构）
14. take care of=look after 照顾；照料
15. as a result 结果

必背句子

16. I think **it is** important for children **to** learn how to do chores and help their parents with housework. 我认为对孩子们来说，学习如何做家务以及帮助父母做家务是很重要的。
17. **The earlier** kids learn to be independent, **the better** it is for their future.
孩子们越早学会独立，对他们的将来就越好。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 1 Section A（1a–2d）

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

Language Goals: Make polite requests; Ask for permission
语言目标：做有礼貌的请求；征求许可

Peter, could you please take out① the rubbish/'rʌbɪʃ/? 彼得，请你倒一下垃圾好吗？
Sure, Mom. 当然可以，妈妈。

1a Do you do these chores at home? Discuss them with your partner.
你在家做这些家务吗？和你的搭档讨论它们吧。

1. do the dishes 洗餐具	2. take out the rubbish 倒垃圾
3. fold your clothes 叠你的衣服	4. sweep the floor 扫地
5. make your bed 整理你的床铺	6. clean the living room 打扫客厅

课文听力1b

1b Listen.Who will do these chores? Check (√) *Peter's mother* or *Peter*.
听录音。谁将会做这些家务？在彼得的妈妈或彼得下面打钩（√）。

Chores 家务	Peter's mother 彼得的妈妈	Peter 彼得
do the dishes 洗餐具		
sweep the floor 扫地		
take out the rubbish 倒垃圾		
make the bed 整理床铺		
fold/fəʊld/ the clothes 叠衣服		
clean the living room 打扫客厅		

1c Make conversations about the chores in 1a. 用关于 1a 中的家务编对话。

A: Could you please sweep/swi:p/ the floor/flɔ:(r)/? 请你扫一下地好吗？
B: Yes, sure. Can you do the dishes? 好的，当然可以。你可以洗餐具吗？
A: Well, could you please do them? I'm going to clean the living room.
噢，你可以洗它们吗？我打算打扫客厅。
B: No problem. 没问题。

2a Listen. Peter asks his father if he can do four things. What does his father say? Check (√) *yes* or *no*. 听录音。彼得询问他的父亲他是否可以做 4 件事情。他的父亲说什么？在 yes 或 no 处打钩（√）。

课文听力2a

Peter wants to ... 彼得想……	Peter's father says ... 彼得的父亲说……	His father's reasons 他父亲的理由
go out for dinner. 出去吃晚餐。	√ yes 是 _____ no 否	I have to do some work. 我必须做些工作。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

go to the movies. 去看电影。	_____ yes 是 _____ no 否	You have to clean your room. 你必须打扫你的房间。
stay out late. 在外面待到很晚。	_____ yes 是 _____ no 否	I need to eat breakfast. 我需要吃早餐。
get a ride. 搭便车。	_____ yes 是 _____ no 否	You have a basketball game. 你有一场篮球赛。

2b Listen again. Why does Peter's father say "no"? Draw lines to the reasons in the chart in 2a.
再听一遍录音。为什么彼得的父亲说"不"？在 2a 表格中的原因下画线。

2c Make conversations between Peter and his father. 编彼得和他父亲之间的对话。

A: Could I use your computer? 我可以用一下你的电脑吗?

B: Sorry. I'm going to work on it now. 对不起。我现在要用它工作。

A: Well, could I watch TV? 好吧，我可以看电视吗?

B: Yes, you can, but first you have to clean your room. 是的，你可以，但首先你必须打扫你的房间。

2d Role-play the conversation. 分角色表演下列对话。

课文朗读 2d

Sister: Tony, could you please help out with a few things? 托尼，你能帮忙做几件事吗?

Brother: Could I at least ③ finish ③ watching this show? 我可以至少看完这个节目吗?

Sister: No. I think two hours of TV is enough for you! ④不。我认为看两个小时电视对你而言足够了!

Brother: Fine. What do you want me to do? 好的。你想让我做什么?

Sister: Could you take out the rubbish, fold the clothes and do the dishes?
你可以倒垃圾、叠衣服并且洗餐具吗?

Brother: So much? 这么多啊?

Sister: Yes, because Mom will be back ⑤ from shopping any minute now ⑥. And she won't be happy if she sees this mess/mes/ ⑦.
是的，因为妈妈随时都会买完东西回来。如果她看到这么乱，她会不高兴的。

Brother: But the house is already pretty clean and tidy! 但是房子已经很干净很整洁了!

Sister: Yes, well, it's clean, but it's not "mother clean"!
是的，很好，是很干净了，但是还不像妈妈收拾得那么干净!

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用 •考点批注

★Peter, could you please take out the rubbish?

① **take out** 把……拿出去 "动词+副词"型短语，接名词作宾语时，名词可以放在副词后面，也可以放在动词和副词之间；接代词作宾语时，代词只能放在动词和副词之间。

e.g. There is some rubbish in the bag. Please take it out.
袋子里有一些垃圾。请将它倒了。

Don't take pocket money out of your wallet so easily.
不要如此轻易地把零花钱从你的钱包里拿出来。 take … out of … 意为"把……从……里拿出来"。

★Could I at least finish watching this show?

② **at least** 至少

e.g. At least he didn't tell a lie. 至少他没有撒谎。 at most 至多；不超过

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

The ticket will cost at least 200 *yuan*. 这张票将至少要花费 200 元。

③ **finish** *v.* 完成；做好 后接动词时要用 v.-ing 形式，不能接动词不定式。

e.g. When are you going to finish your work?

你将什么时候完成你的工作？

He finished reading the book before supper.

晚饭前他把这本书看完了。

考题在线 1 We should _____ making a noise in the library. [天津]

A. avoid B. prefer C. practise D. enjoy

点拨：本题用词义辨析法。avoid 避免；prefer 更喜欢；practise 练习；enjoy 喜欢。

Q 后接 v.-ing 形式的常见动词：
- enjoy 喜欢
- suggest 建议
- keep 继续
- practise 练习
- finish 完成
- avoid 避免
- miss 错过
- mind 介意

★I think two hours of TV is enough for you!

④【句法分析】**two hours 中 hours 虽然为名词复数，但表示时间时视为一个整体，作主语时谓语动词用单数形式。**

e.g. Three years is a short time. You have to study hard.

三年是一个很短的时间。你必须努力学习。

Twenty miles is a long way to walk.

二十英里路走起来是很长的一段路程。

小贴士：英语中表示距离、金额、度量等的词语作主语时，通常视为一个整体，谓语动词也要用单数形式。

考题在线 2 Two days _____ enough for me to finish the work. I need a third day.

A. isn't B. is C. aren't D. are

点拨：用语法判定法解题。此处 two days 作为一个整体，其后谓语动词用单数形式，由“I need a third day.”可知用否定形式。

★Yes, because Mom will be back from shopping any minute now.

⑤ **be back 回来** 后面可接 from 引出地点，与 come back 同义，有时可以互换。

e.g. I'll be back in a minute. 我马上回来。（侧重状态）

You came back very late last night. 你昨晚回来得很晚。（侧重动作）

⑥ **any minute now 随时；马上；在任何时刻**

e.g. Hurry up! He'll be back any time now.

快点儿！他随时就会回来。

any minute now 表示事情在短时间内很有可能发生。是一种常见的口语表达法，其中 minute 还可用 second, moment, time 等词替换。

★And she won't be happy if she sees this mess.

⑦ **mess** /mes/ *n.*(a dirty or untidy state) 杂乱；不整洁

e.g. “What a mess!” she said after the party.

聚会后她说：“真是一片狼藉！”

He found his room in a mess.

他发现他的房间乱七八糟。

The kids made a mess in the living room.

孩子们把客厅搞成一团糟。



in a mess 乱七八糟



make a mess 搞成一团糟

mess 常用可数名词单数形式，意为“杂乱；不整洁”。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考题在线 3 —Could you take out the rubbish and do the dishes, Tony?

—Sure. Mom will be mad if she sees this _____, I think. [黄冈]

A. matter B. mess C. trouble D. difficulty

点拨：本题用词义辨析法。句意：——托尼，你可以倒垃圾和洗碗吗？——当然可以。我认为如果妈妈看到这_____会疯的。matter 事情；mess 杂乱；trouble 麻烦；difficulty 困难。

考题在线答案 1. A 2. A 3. B

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

（答案见280页）

听力技巧

把握短文大意法（听第一遍录音时，了解材料基本内容，把握材料大意，明确材料主要信息。听第二遍时，要有所侧重，有针对性地做记录，从而确定题目答案。）

听力过程

一、听 1b，选择正确答案

课文听力 1b

1. What are they talking about?

A. Cleaning the house.

B. Doing the dishes.

C. Sweeping the floor.

2. Who will come at seven?

A. Grandpa. B. Grandma. C. Nobody.

二、听2a，完成下列短文

课文听力 2a

Peter wanted to _____[3] dinner with his friends tonight. After that, he could go to see a _____[4]. His father agreed and said that he mustn't _____[5].

Peter wanted to get something to drink after the movie with his friends, too.

But his father didn't agree, because Peter had a basketball game the next day and he needed to _____[6].

At last, Peter called Alan and Alan's father gave him _____[7] to town.

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

（答案见280页）

一、根据句意及汉语提示补全句子

1. Could you _____（折叠）your clothes when you were five?

2. The old man volunteers to take away the _____（垃圾）around the neighborhood every day.

3. The room is in a _____（杂乱）. You should clean it up. 【导学号：2039901】

4. There are five books on the _____（地板）. Please pick them up.

5. Please _____（打扫）the floor with the broom（扫帚）over there.

二、用方框中所给词（组）的适当形式填空

read, take out, at least, if, any minute now

6. —Could you please _____ the rubbish? I'm very busy now.

—Sure.

7. These things can happen _____.

8. I have finished _____ this story.

9. _____ you feed the dog, Mother will be very happy.

10. Most families in this town have _____ one car nowadays.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

三、根据汉语意思完成句子，每空一词

11. 两周对我来说不是一个长的时间，因为要完成我的报告我有很多工作要做。
_____ _____ _____ not a long time for me, because I have a lot of work to do to finish my report.

12. 汤姆不能做出这道数学题。
Tom couldn't _____ _____ the math problem.

13. 你现在可以打扫一下你的房间吗?
_____ _____ _____ clean your room now?

14. 因为他的工作他不得不呆在外面到很晚。
He _____ _____ stay out late because of his work.

15. 我可以至少看完这个节目吗?
Could I _____ _____ finish watching this show?

Period 2 Section A（3a–3c）

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文及导读

导读批注

批 考点：拟标题
Should teenagers help do the housework?

批 背景：
Who: Nancy&Mom
When: Last month
Where: In the living room

批 句子：两个 could 句型表明母女二人最初的交流是客气礼貌的

原文译文·导读

Pre-reading（读前）

课文朗读 3a

3a Read the story and answer the questions.
读故事并回答问题。

1. Why was Nancy's mom angry with her? 为什么南希的妈妈生她的气?
2. Did they solve the problem? How? 她们解决问题了吗? 怎么解决的?

While-reading（读中）

批 词语：两个短语形象地向我们展示了一幅 Nancy 急匆匆甩掉书包，急于看电视的画面。

❶ Last month, our dog welcomed me when I came home from school. He wanted a walk, but I was too tired. I threw/θru:/① down my bag and went to the living room. The minute② I sat down in front of③ the TV, my mom came over④. "上个月，当我放学回到家，我们家的狗欢迎我。它想出去遛遛，但我太累了。我扔下书包去了客厅。我一坐在电视机前，我妈妈就过来了。

❷ Could you please take the dog for a walk?" she asked.
她问道："请问你能遛一下狗吗？"

❸ "Could I watch one show first?" I asked.
我问道："我可以先看一个节目吗？"

❹ "No!" she replied angrily. "You watch TV all the time⑤ and never help out around the house! I can't work all day and do housework all evening."
她生气地回答道："不可以！你一直看电视，家里的事从来不帮忙！我不能整天工作还整晚做家务。"

❺ "Well, I work all day at school, too! I'm just as tired as you are!" I shouted back. 我大喊道："哦，我也整天在上学！我和你一样累！"

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

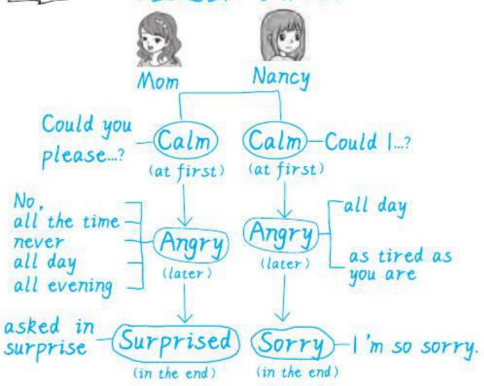
⑥ My mom did not say anything and walked away. For one week, she did not do any housework and neither /'nɑɪðə/, /'ni:ðə(r)/ ⑥ did I. Finally, I could not find a clean dish or a clean shirt/ʃɜ:(r)t/. 我妈妈什么也没说就走开了。整整一个星期，她没有做任何家务，我也没有。最后，我不能找到一个干净的盘子或者一件干净的衬衫。

⑦ The next day, my mom came home from work to find the house clean and tidy. 第二天，我妈妈下班回到家里发现屋子又干净又整洁。

⑧ "What happened?" she asked in surprise. 她惊讶地问道："发生什么事了？"

⑨ "I'm so sorry, Mom. I finally understand that we need to share the housework to have a clean and comfortable home," I replied. 我回答道："对不起，妈妈。我最终理解了我们需要分担家务去拥有一个干净而舒适的家。"

批情感：（左边画▲的 || 处）



批事件：

Last month: Mom asked Nancy to walk the dog but Nancy refused.

Event: For one week: Neither of them did the housework.

The next day: Nancy cleaned the house by herself.

Result: Nancy realized her mistake and understood everyone should share the housework in a home.

Post-reading（读后）

写作小练笔 ☞（答案见89页）

3b Read the sentences below. Underline the sentences from the reading that mean the same thing. 读下列句子。在文中画出与之意思相同的句子。

1. Neither of us did any housework for a week. 整整一星期我们两个都没有做任何家务。
2. My mom came over as soon as I sat down in front of the TV. 我一坐在电视机前，我妈妈就过来了。
3. You're tired, but I'm tired, too. 你累，但是我也累。

3c Decide whether the underlined words in the sentences are verbs or nouns. Then write another sentence using the underlined word in the other form. 判断下列句子中的画线单词是动词还是名词。然后用画线单词的另一种形式造句。

1. Could you take the dog for a walk? (noun)→I walked home from school. (verb) 你可以出去遛狗吗？（名词）→我从学校走回家。（动词）
2. Could I watch one show first? 我可以先看一个节目吗？ _____
3. I can't work all day. 我不能整天工作。 _____
4. You watch TV all the time. 你一直在看电视。 _____
5. "What happened? "she asked in surprise. "发生什么事了？"她惊讶地问道。 _____

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读 60分

☞（答案见280页）

阅读过程

一、速读 3a，选择正确答案

1. What is the best title of this passage?

（主旨大意题）

A. Share the housework
B. Take the dog for a walk
C. People don't like doing housework
D. Nancy's mom is angry with her

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

二、细读 3a，选择正确答案

2. Why did the dog welcome me when I came home? （细节查找题）

A. He wanted to play with me.

B. He wanted me to feed him.

C. He wanted a walk.

D. He liked me very much.

3. What did I want to do first? （细节查找题）

A. Watch TV. B. Do my homework.

C. Play with the dog. D. Do the housework.

4. What did Mom want me to do? （细节查找题）

A. Do my homework.

B. Take the dog for a walk.

C. Watch one show first.

D. Help her do some washing.

5. Who cleaned the house at last? （推理判断题）

A. I. B. My mom.

C. My dad. D. We don't know.

Ⅲ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注 •考点应用

★I threw down my bag and went to the living room.

① **throw**/θrəʊ/*v.* 掷；扔 throw-threw-thrown

e.g. She threw me a towel. = She threw a towel to me.

她扔给我一条毛巾。

throw sb. sth. = throw sth. to sb. 扔给某人某物

拓展：与 throw 相关的其他短语：

throw away 扔掉；丢弃

throw down 扔下

throw at 向……扔（恶意，带攻击性）

throw to 投给……（不含有恶意）



throw 扔；掷

★The minute I sat down in front of the TV, my mom came over.

② **The minute...** 一……就……

the minute 引导时间状语从句，相当于 the moment 或 as soon as。句子时态遵从"主将从现"原则。

e.g. We will leave as soon as it stops raining.

=We will leave the minute it stops raining.

雨一停，我们就离开。

速记小筏："主将从现"原则，即主句若为一般将来时，从句则用一般现在时表示将来。

③ **in front of** 在……前面

Lucy is in front of the car.



Mary is in the front of the car.

辨析：in front of 与 in the front of

in front of	在……前面	通常指在某范围之外的前面。
in the front of	在……前面	通常指在某范围之内的前面。

④ **come over** 过来；顺便来访

多指朋友、亲戚或熟人之间的非正式的探望活动，后面加介词 to，然后接表示地点的名词作宾语。

e.g. Can you come over to my house on Friday? 星期五你能来我家吗？

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★You watch TV all the time and never help out around the house!

⑤ **all the time** 频繁；反复 在句中作状语，通常位于句子的末尾。

联想：at times 有时；间或 =sometimes　　at all times 随时；总是

at that time 在那时　　at the same time 同时

e.g. We are dancing all the time. 我们一直在跳舞。

★For one week, she did not do any housework and neither did I.

⑥ **neither** /'naɪðə/, /'ni:ðə(r)/ *adv.* & *pron.* (not one nor the other of two things or people) 也不；两者都不 "Neither/ Nor + be 动词/助动词/情态动词+主语."这种倒装结构，表示前面陈述的否定情况也适用于另一人(物)。

e.g. He doesn't like sports and neither do I.
他不喜欢体育运动，我也不喜欢。

—Jim can play the guitar. 吉姆会弹吉他。
—So can I. 我也会。 "So + be 动词/助动词/情态动词+主语."这种倒装结构，表示"另一人(物)也如此。"

Neither student is from Canada.
两个学生都不是来自加拿大。 用作限定词，意为"两者都不"，放在单数名词前。

Neither of them is/are clever, but both study hard.
他们两个都不聪明，但学习都挺刻苦。 neither of 结构作主语时，谓语动词用单复数形式均可。意为"两者都不"。

Neither my father nor I am interested in the film.
我和我的父亲都对这部电影不感兴趣。 neither... nor... 意为"既不……也不……"，连接主语时，谓语动词遵循就近原则。

考题在线 —Do you like rock music or light music?

—_____. I like pop music. [随州]

A. Both　　B. None　　C. Neither　　D. Either

点拨：本题用语境分析法。句意：——你喜欢摇滚乐还是轻音乐呢？

——_____。我喜欢流行音乐。both 两者都；none（三者或三者以上）都不；neither 两者都不；either 两者任一个。

考题在线答案 C

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见280页)

根据汉语意思完成英语句子

1. 我一见他就认出了他。

I recognized him _____ _____ I saw him.

2. 教室前面有块黑板。

There is a blackboard _____ _____ _____ _____ the classroom.

3. 这些学生一直在交谈。

These students are talking _____ _____ _____.

4. 在扔垃圾之前，我们通常把它分类。 [金华改编]

Before we _____ _____ the rubbish, we usually divide it into different groups.

5. 妈妈没有去看电影，我也没有去。

Mother didn't go to the movies and _____ _____ _____.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 3 Section A（Grammar Focus-4c）

I. 课文原文、译文

Grammar Focus 语法聚焦

Could I go out for dinner with my friends? 我可以和我的朋友们一起出去吃晚餐吗？	Sure, that should be OK. 当然可以，那应该没问题。
Could we get something to drink after the movie? 我们看完电影之后可以喝点东西吗？	No, you can't. You have a basketball game tomorrow. 不，你们不可以。明天你有一场篮球赛。
Could you please take the dog for a walk? 请问你能遛一下狗吗？	OK, but I want to watch one show first. 好，但是我想先看一个节目。
Could you please take out the rubbish? 你可以把这些垃圾倒了吗？	Yes, sure. 是的，当然可以。

4a Write *R* for requests and *P* for permission. Then match each one with the correct response.
在下列句子前写 R 或 P，R 代表请求，P 代表许可。然后与正确的回答配对。

1. _____ Could I hang out① with my friends after the movie? 看完电影之后我可以和朋友们一起出去闲逛吗？
2. _____ Could you please pass/pɑːs/, /pæs/② me the salt? 请你把盐递给我好吗？
3. _____ Could I borrow/ˈbɒrəʊ/, /ˈbɑːrəʊ/③ that book? 我可以借那本书吗？
4. _____ Could you help me do the dishes? 你可以帮助我洗餐具吗？
5. _____ Could you lend/lend/ me some money? 你可以借给我一些钱吗？

a. Yes, here you are. 可以，给你。

b. Hmm. How much do you need? 嗯。你需要多少？

c. Yes, sure. No problem. I finished reading it last night. 是的，当然可以。没问题。我昨晚读完了。

d. Yes, but don't come back too late. 可以，但不要回来得太晚。

e. No, I can't. I cut my finger/ˈfɪŋgə(r)/ and I'm trying not to get it wet.
不，我不能。我割伤了手指，我正努力不弄湿它。

4b Fill in the blanks in the conversation. 补全对话。

A: I hate/heɪt/④ to _____ chores/tʃɔː(r)z/. 我讨厌_____家务。

B: Well, I hate some chores too, but I like other chores. 嗯，我也讨厌一些家务，但我喜欢其他的家务。

A: Really? Great! _____ I ask you to _____ me with some chores then?
真的吗？太棒了！那么我_____要求你_____我做一些家务吗？

B: What do you need help with? 你需要帮忙做什么？

A: _____ you please _____ my clothes for me? 你_____为我_____我的衣服吗？

B: I don't want to do that! It's boring! 我不想做那个！太无聊了！

A: OK. Then _____ you _____ do the dishes for me? 好的。那你_____为我洗餐具吗？

B: Sure, no problem. But _____ we go to the movies after that?
当然可以，没问题。但是洗完之后我们_____去看电影吗？

A: Sure. I'll finish my homework while/waɪl/⑤ you help me with the dishes. Then we can go to the movies. 当然可以。当你帮我洗餐具的时候我会完成我的作业。然后我们就可以去看电影了。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

4c Make a list of things your group needs to do for a camping trip. Then discuss who will do them and complete the chart. 列出你们组野营旅行所需要做的事情的清单。然后讨论谁将做这些事并完成表格。

To-do list 需做事情的清单	Name 姓名
bring a tent 带一顶帐篷来	Liu Chang 刘畅

A: Could you please bring a tent, Liu Chang? 你可以带来一顶帐篷吗，刘畅?

B: Sure. And could you please...? 当然可以。那你可以……吗?

C: Sorry, I can't. I have to... 对不起，我不能。我不得不……

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用 •考点批注

★Could I hang out with my friends after the movie?

① **hang out** 闲逛 常用于美语口语中，还可以表示"常去某处；泡在某处"。

e.g. Where do you hang out these days?
这些日子你们都在哪闲逛?

Hang your suit in the wardrobe.
把你的衣服挂在衣柜中。

The curtains hang well.
窗帘挂得很好。 敲黑板 无被动语态用法 不及物动词

The students hung a map of China on the wall.
同学们把一幅中国地图挂在墙上。 及物动词

The criminal was hanged. 罪犯被处以绞刑。


hang 悬挂


hang out 闲逛

hang-hung-hung 悬挂；hang-hanged-hanged 绞死；施以绞刑

★Could you please pass me the salt?

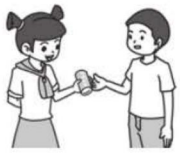
② **pass**/pɑːs/, /pæs/ *v.* 给；递；走过；通过

e.g. Pass me the cola, please. = Pass the cola to me, please.
请把可乐递给我。 pass sb. sth. =pass sth. to sb. 把某物递给某人

A red car passed just now. 刚刚一辆红色小汽车经过了。 通过；走过

I was happy that I passed the exam.
我很高兴我通过了考试。 及格；合格

The days passed slowly. 日子慢慢过去。 (时间)过去；流逝


Pass it to Jenny.
把它递给珍妮。

小贴士：当直接宾语是代词时，只能使用 pass sth. to sb.

★Could I borrow that book?

③ **borrow**/'bɒrəʊ/, /'bɑːrəʊ/ *v.*(to take and use sth. that belongs to sb. else, and return it to them at a later time) 借；借用

辨析: borrow, lend 与 keep

borrow	表示"借入"，即说话人向别人借东西供自己使用，常用于 borrow sth. from sb. or somewhere 结构中，是终止性动词。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

速记小筏：主语借出用lend，主语借入用borrow，想要保存用keep。

lend	表示“借出”，即说话人把自己的东西借给别人使用，常用于lend sth. to sb. 或 lend sb. sth. 结构中，也是终止性动词。
keep	本意为“保存；保留”，引申为“借用”，用于表示借用的时间长度，可以和表示时间段的时间状语或 how long 等连用。

e.g. John lent his book to Mary last week. 上个星期约翰把他的书借给了玛丽。

Mary borrowed the book from John last week.

上个星期玛丽从约翰那儿借了这本书。

Mary may keep the book for two weeks. 这本书玛丽可以借用两个星期。

考题在线 1 —Could you _____ me your bike, Tom?

—OK. And you can _____ it for a week.

A. lend; keep　　B. borrow; lend

C. lend; borrow　　D. borrow; keep

点拨：lend 表示“借出”，非延续性动词；borrow 表示“借入”，非延续性动词；keep “保留”，延续性动词，与“for + 时间段”连用。第一空为借出，应用动词 lend；而答语中有时间段 for a week，所以第二空为延续性动词 keep。

常用搭配
hate sb./sth.
hate doing sth.
hate to do sth.

★ **I hate to _____ chores.** hate 的反义词为 like/love。

④ **hate** /heɪt/ *v.*(dislike sth. very much) 厌恶；讨厌

e.g. I hate to do the housework. 我讨厌做家务。

I hate playing soccer. 我厌恶踢足球。

素养 行动 要以积极乐观的态度参与到家务劳动中，尽自己的能力帮父母分担家务。

素养 行动结果 养成热爱劳动的好习惯，培养独立自主的生活能力。

核心素养之文化意识

帮助家人做家务的重要性

家是我们每个人温馨的港湾。帮助家人做家务，从 *mess* 到 *order*，家因为你的收拾而变得干净整洁，不仅看着舒服，家庭关系也更加和谐美好。

经常做家务，可以锻炼身体，增强体质，同时家务劳动能增强我们的动作技能 *(motor skill)*、认知能力 *(cognitive ability)* 和责任感 *(a sense of responsibility)*。

★ **I'll finish my homework while you help me with the dishes.**

⑤ **while**/waɪl/ *conj.* 当……的时候；与……同时；而；然而

辨析： while 与 when

二者均可作连词，引导时间状语从句，意为“当……的时候”。

while	从句谓语动词必须是延续性动词	从句通常要用进行时，如果主句和从句中的动作是同时进行的动作或发生的事情，那么主句也要用进行时
when	从句谓语动词可以是延续性动词，也可以是非延续性动词	从句的时态多用一般现在时或一般过去时

Men learn while they teach.
教学相长。

e.g. The telephone rang while my father was reading the newspaper.

当我爸爸在读报纸时，电话铃响了。

When I arrived in Beijing, it was raining. 当我到达北京时，天正在下雨。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考题在线 2 Love your parents _____ they are alive. Don't wait until it is too late. [苏州]

A. while B. though C. because D. unless

点拨: 考查连词辨析。while 当……的时候; though 虽然; because 因为; unless 除非。

考题在线答案 1. A 2. A

Ⅲ. 单元语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

委婉的情态动词 could

考点 1 委婉地表达请求别人做某事

常用句型	Could you (please) do sth.?
肯定答语	Yes, sure./Yes, I can. /Of course, I can. /No problem. /With pleasure ...
否定答语	可先拒绝，再说明理由: Sorry, I can't. I have to .../Sorry, I'm going to .../ I'm afraid I can't. I have to ...

e.g. —Could you please close the window?
请你关上窗户好吗?
—Sure. 当然可以。/I'm afraid not. 恐怕不行。

小贴士: 其否定结构为: Could you (please) not do ...?

考题在线 1 —Could you please help me wash the car, Tony?
—_____. I'm studying for my coming English test now. [眉山]

A. That's right B. I'm sorry
C. It doesn't matter D. Not at all

点拨: 本题用情景交际法。句意: ——你可以帮我洗车吗，托尼? ——对不起。现在我要为即将到来的英语考试学习。

方法真题练

考点 2 委婉地请求别人允许自己做某事

- 常用句型: Could I do sth.?
- 肯定答语: Yes, you can./Yes, please.等
- 否定答语: Sorry, you can't./I'm afraid you can't.（然后说明理由）等

e.g. —Could I use your bicycle?
我可以用你的自行车吗?
—Yes, you can. 是的，可以。
—Could I use your pen?
我可以用你的钢笔吗?
—Sorry, you can't. I'm going to use it for homework. 抱歉，你不能。我要用它写作业。

考题在线 2 —Could I invite my friends to the party on Saturday, Mom?
—Of course you _____. That sounds like fun. [滨州]

A. may B. could C. must D. can

点拨: 本题用固定句式法。Could I...? 用于向对方发出请求，意为"我可以……吗?"。对方若接受请求，常回答: "Yes/Sure/Of course，you can."。

考点 3 could 的其他用法

1. could 为 can 的过去式，表示能力。

e.g. He said that he couldn't come.
他说他来不了。

2. 表示惊异、怀疑或不相信等态度，主要用于否定句和疑问句，此时 could 与 can 无时间上的区别，但语气比 can 弱。

e.g. He couldn't/can't be over fifty.
他不可能超过 50 岁。

3. 表示可能性，指对将来、现在或过去某种可能性的推测。

e.g. The windows are open. He could have come back. 窗户是开着的。他可能回来了。

4. 表示建议或用于虚拟语气。

e.g. How I wish I could go with you!
我多么希望能和你一起去呀!

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

速记小筏：情态动词 could 的用法
表示请求与准许，could 委婉又客气；
表示能力会不会，could 只用在过去；
表示怀疑不相信，could 缓和语气弱；
推测可能与建议，虚拟语气也常用。

考题在线答案 1. B 2. D

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

（答案见280页）

一、根据句意及首字母提示写出单词

1. Mike often helps his mother with the c_____ at home.
2. My pen was broken in the exam, so the teacher l_____ hers to me.
3. I like fish w_____ my brother likes beef.
4. The boy h_____ playing the piano. Look, he is crying again.
5. —What happened to you, Lucy?
   —I cut my f_____ when I cut up the carrots.

二、单项选择

6. On the first day of the Spring Festival, people _____, wearing new clothes. [宜宾]
   A. hang up B. hang back
   C. hang out
7. Now studying in high school, I can borrow books _____ the library. [陕西]
   A. to B. for
   C. with D. from
8. The mayor walked in _____ there was still a lot of smoke in the room.
   A. if B. so C. while D. unless
9. —Jason, I can't get Sue on the phone.
   —I'm going to see her this afternoon. Do you want me to _____ any message?
   A. pass on B. find out
   C. look up D. work on
10. Nancy hates _____ chores on Sundays.
    A. to make B. making
    C. doing D. does

三、语法专练

11. —David, _____ you please sweep the floor and take out the trash?
    —OK, Mum. [济南]
    A. could B. may
    C. should D. must
12. —Could you go to the new movie with me now?
    —Sorry, I _____. Look, it's time for me to watch *The Reader* on CCTV. [襄阳]
    A. can't B. can
    C. needn't D. must
13. —Some people don't show their talents at the very beginning.
    —I agree. Even Einstein _____ read until he was seven. [苏州]
    A. can't B. mustn't
    C. couldn't D. needn't
14. —Could you please help me do the dishes?
    —_____. I cut my finger and I'm trying not to get it wet. [岳阳]
    A. Yes, sure B. Sorry, I can't
    C. Yes, here you are
15. —It's too hot. _____ I swim in the lake?
    —No, you _____. That's too dangerous! [黄石]
    A. Should; can't
    B. Need; mustn't
    C. Must; needn't
    D. Could; can't

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 4 Section B（1a–1e）

Ⅰ. 课文原文、译文

1a **What do teenagers ask their parents' permission for? What do parents ask their teenagers to do? Write *parents* or *teenagers* next to each phrase.** 青少年因什么事情请求父母的许可呢？父母要求青少年们做什么呢？在下列每个短语旁边写“父母”或“青少年”。

√ 1. buy some drinks and snacks/snæks/ teenagers 买一些饮料和快餐青少年

_____ 2. borrow some money _____ 借一些钱_____

_____ 3. clean your room _____ 打扫你的房间_____

_____ 4. invite my friends to a party _____ 邀请我的朋友参加聚会_____

_____ 5. go to the store _____ 去商店_____

_____ 6. use your CD player _____ 用你的激光唱机_____

_____ 7. take out the rubbish _____ 倒垃圾_____

_____ 8. make your bed _____ 整理你的床铺_____

1b **Use the phrases in 1a to make conversations.** 用 1a 中的短语编对话。

Parent: Could you clean your room? 你可以打扫你的房间吗？

Child: Yes, I can. 是的，我可以。

Child: Could I invite my friends to a party? 我可以邀请我的朋友参加聚会吗？

Parent: No, you can't have a party. You have a test on Monday. 不，你不能举办聚会。周一你有一个测试。

1c **Listen to a conversation between Sandy and her mom. Check (√) the things in 1a that you hear.** 听桑迪和她妈妈之间的对话。在 1a 中你听到的信息前打钩（√）。

课文听力 1c

1d **Listen again. Fill in the chart.** 再听一遍。补全表格。

	What are they going to do? 他们打算做什么？
Sandy's /'sændiz/ mom 桑迪的妈妈	
Sandy 桑迪	invite her friends, 邀请她的朋友，
Sandy and Dave 桑迪和戴夫	

1e **You are having a party. Ask your partner for help with these things:**
你要举办一次聚会。请求你的搭档帮忙做这些事情：

go to the store 去商店　buy drinks and snacks 买饮料和快餐　do the dishes 清洗餐具 clean the living room 打扫客厅　take out the rubbish 倒垃圾

A: Could you please take out the rubbish? 你可以把这些垃圾倒了吗？

B: Yes, sure. 是的，当然可以。

Ⅱ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

（答案见 281 页）

听力过程

听 1c，选择正确答案

课文听力 1c

1. When will Sandy hold a party?

A. On Friday.　B. On Saturday.　C. On Sunday.

2. Who will buy some drinks and snacks?

A. Sandy.　B. Sandy's father.

C. Sandy's mother.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

3. When did Sandy clean her room?

A. Last month. B. Last week.

C. Yesterday.

4. What does Sandy want to borrow from her mom?

A. A beautiful dress.

B. A computer.

C. A CD player.

5. Who will come early for the party?

A. Dave. B. Jill. C. Jack.

Period 5 Section B（2a–2e）

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

2a Discuss the questions with your partner. 和你的搭档讨论下列问题。

1. What do you often do to help your parents at home? 你经常在家帮你父母做什么?

2. Do you think kids should help out with chores at home? 你认为孩子们应该在家帮忙做家务吗?

2b The *Sunday Mail* magazine invited parents to write about whether they think young people should do chores at home. Read the following letters. Which one agrees and which one disagrees?《星期日邮报》杂志邀请了一些父母写关于他们是否认为年轻人在家应该做家务。读下列信件。哪一封同意，哪一封不同意呢?

课文朗读 2b

Skimming 略读

This means looking quickly through a piece of writing to find the main idea without reading every word. It is still a good idea to read the first sentence in each paragraph a little more carefully. 这意味着快速浏览文章以找到中心思想而不是逐词去读。更仔细地阅读每一段的第一句话仍然是个好主意。

Dear Sir, 先生您好:

I do not understand why some parents make their kids help with housework and chores at home. Kids these days already have enough stress/stres/ from school. They do not have time to study and do housework, too. Housework is a waste/weɪst/ ① of their time. Could we just let them do their job as students? They should spend ② their time on schoolwork in order to ③ get good grades and get into a good university. Also, when they get older, they will have to do housework so there is no need for them to do it now ④. It is the parents' job to provide/prə'vaɪd/ ⑤ a clean and comfortable environment at home for their children. And anyway/'eniweɪ/ ⑥, I think doing chores is not so difficult. I do not mind doing them.

形式主语 真正的主语

我不理解为什么一些父母让他们的孩子在家帮忙做家务和杂事。目前孩子们已经有来自学校的足够的压力。他们也没有时间去学习和做家务。家务劳动是浪费他们的时间。我们可以只让他们做学生该做的工作吗? 为了取得好成绩并进入一所好大学，他们应该把时间花在学业上。而且，当他们长大一些，他们将必须做家务，所以没有必要让他们现在做。在家中给他们的孩子提供一个干净、舒适的环境是家长们的事情。反正，我觉得做家务不是那么困难。我不介意做它们。

Ms. Miller 米勒女士

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Dear Sir, 先生您好:

I think it is important for children to learn how to do chores and help their parents with housework. It is not enough to just get good grades at school. Children these days depend/dɪ'pend/⑦ on their parents too much. They are always asking, "Could you get this for me? " or "Could you help me with that? " Doing chores helps to develop/dɪ'veləp/⑧ children's independence/ˌɪndɪ'pendəns/⑨ and teaches them how to look after themselves. It also helps them to understand the idea of fairness/'feənəs/ , /'fernəs/. Since/sɪns/⑩ they live in one house with their parents, they should know that everyone should do their part in keeping it clean and tidy. Our neighbors/'neɪbə (r) z/ ' son got into a good college but during his first year, he had no idea how to take care of⑪ himself. As a result⑫, he often fell ill/ɪl/⑬ and his grades dropped/drɒpt/ , /drɑ:pt/. The earlier kids learn to be independent/ˌɪndɪ'pendənt/, the better it is for their future.⑭

我认为对孩子们来说，学习如何做家务以及帮助父母做家务是很重要的。仅仅在学校取得好成绩是不够的。如今，孩子们太依赖他们的父母了。他们总是在问："你可以帮我拿这个吗？"或"你可以帮我做那个吗？"做家务有助于培养孩子们的独立性而且教会他们如何照顾自己。还有助于他们理解公平的含义。既然他们和父母住在一个房子里，他们应该知道为了保持家里的干净整洁，每个人都应该贡献自己的力量。我们邻居的儿子进入了一所好的大学，但是在他大一时他不知道如何照顾自己。结果，他经常生病，成绩也下降了。孩子们越早学会独立，对他们的将来就越好。

Mr.Smith 史密斯先生

2c According to Ms.Miller and Mr.Smith, what are the pros and cons about kids doing chores?

根据米勒女士和史密斯先生（的信件），关于孩子们做家务的利和弊是什么?

Pros 利	Cons 弊
Doing chores helps to develop children's independence. 做家务有助于培养孩子们的独立性。	Housework is a waste of children's time. 家务劳动是浪费孩子们的时间。

2d Write one sentence with each phrase from the letters. 用信件中出现的每一个短语造句。

1. a waste of time 浪费时间

2. there is no need for ... to 对于……来说没有必要

3. do not mind 不介意

4. spend time on 花费时间在

5. in order to 为了

6. it is not enough to……是不够的

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

7. the earlier ... the better 越早……越好

2e Discuss the questions with a partner. 和搭档讨论下列问题。

1. Which letter do you agree with? Why? 你同意哪一封信的观点？为什么？
2. What would you say to the person who wrote the letter you don't agree with? 你会对跟你观点不一致的写信人说些什么？

课文背诵指南



Should young people do chores at home?

Cons（反对）

- Housework is a waste of children's time.
- 1. have enough stress
- 2. do not have time
- 3. a waste of time
- 4. spend time on schoolwork
- 5. get older, have to do
- 6. the parents' job

→ Ms. Miller

Pros（支持）

- Doing chores helps to develop children's independence.
- 1. not enough to just get good grades
- 2. depend on their parents
- 3. helps them to understand ...
- 4. everyone should do ...

→ Mr. Smith

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读 60分

（答案见281页）

阅读策略

细节核对法（细节理解题是阅读理解中最常见的题型。做这类题时，我们可以先带着问题去阅读文章，扫描和搜寻信息点，对号入座，排除干扰项，快速确定答案。）

拓展阅读

阅读过程

一、速读 2b，选择正确答案

1. What's Ms. Miller's attitude towards children's doing housework? （观点态度题）

A. Neutral（中立的）.

B. Positive（肯定的）.

C. Supportive（支持的）.

D. Critical（批评的）.

二、细读 2b，选择正确答案

2. ⊙ What does Ms. Miller think students should spend their time on? （细节查找题）

A. Schoolwork. B. Housework.

C. The Internet. D. Games.

3. ⊙ What does Ms. Miller think parents should provide for their children? （细节查找题）

A. Enough money and time.

B. A clean and comfortable environment at home.

C. An opportunity to be independent.

D. A good school to learn in.

4. ⊙ What does Mr. Smith think children should

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

do? （细节推理题）

A. They should spend all time studying.

B. They should get good grades at school.

C. They should learn to do chores and help their parents with chores.

D. They should spend all time learning how to be independent.

5. ⊙ Why did the son of Mr. Smith's neighbors' fall ill in college? （细节推理题）

A. He didn't do enough sports.

B. He didn't know how to take care of himself.

C. He ate something bad.

D. He was independent enough.

Ⅲ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用 •考点批注

★Housework is a waste of their time.

① **waste**/weɪst/ *v.*(to use more of sth. than is necessary or useful)

浪费；滥用 *n.* 浪费；垃圾

e.g. What a waste of paper! 多么浪费纸呀！

Don't waste money on these clothes.

别把钱浪费在这些衣服上。

He wastes a lot of time playing computer games.

他浪费很多时间玩电脑游戏。

waste water 废水 → 作形容词，无用的，废弃的

waste (*n.*)：作"浪费"讲时，常构成短语：a waste of…；作"垃圾"讲时，一般用其复数形式。

考题在线 1 Don't _____ any more time, or we will miss the meeting. [天津]

A. save B. trust C. waste D. love

点拨：本题用语境分析法。save 节省，挽救；trust 信任；waste 浪费；love 爱。根据句意"不要再浪费时间了，否则我们会错过这次会议。"可知答案。

waste (*v.*)

waste sth. (on sth.)（在某方面）浪费某物

waste sth. (in) doing sth. 浪费某物做某事

★They should spend their time on schoolwork in order to …

② **spend** *v.* 花费

【重点】辨析：spend, pay, cost 与 take

单词	过去式	主语	常用结构	含义
spend	spent	人	Sb. spend (s) some time/money on sth.; Sb. spend (s) some time/money (in) doing sth.	某人在某事 / 某物上花一段时间 / 金钱；某人花一段时间 / 金钱做某事。
pay	paid	人	Sb. pay (s) some money for sth.	某人付钱买某物。
cost	cost	物	Sth. cost (s)(sb.) some money.	某物花费（某人）多少钱。
take	took	it 作形式主语	It takes/took sb. some time to do sth.	做某事花费某人多少时间。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

e.g. She spent 50 dollars on the skirt.
她花了 50 美元买了那条裙子。

He spent two years (in) writing the book.
他花了两年时间写那本书。

She paid 50, 000 dollars for the car.
她花 50 000 美元买了那辆车。

The house cost (them) a lot of money.
那所房子花了（他们）许多钱。

It took him three weeks to finish the work.
完成这项工作花了他三周的时间。

速记小筏：spend, pay, cost 与 take cost 和 pay 花金钱，take 只把时间费；既花时间又花钱，spend 出场露露面。

考题在线 2 Roy works in London. It _____ him about half an hour to get to work by bus every day. [临沂]

A. costs B. spends C. takes

点拨：考查同义词辨析。A. 物花费；B. 人花费；C. 做某事花费，常用句型为："It takes/took sb. some time to do sth."。

③ **in order to 为了；目的是**

e.g. In order to catch the train, he hurried to finish the work.
=He hurried to finish the work so as to catch the train.
为了赶上火车，他匆匆干完了工作。

表示目的，可放在句首或句中；否定结构为 in order not to ...。相当于 so as to，但 so as to 只能放在句中。

★... so there is no need for them to do it now.

④ **There is no need（for sb.）to do sth.（对某人来说）做某事没有必要。**

e.g. There is no need for us to get up early tomorrow, because it's Sunday.
明天对我们来说没必要早起，因为是星期日。

It's no use crying over spilt milk.
覆水难收（谚）。

类似的句式还有：There is no point in doing sth. 做某事没有意义。It's no use doing sth. 做某事没有用。It's no good doing sth. 做某事没有好处。

★It is the parents' job to provide ...

⑤ **provide**/prə'vaɪd/ *v.*(to give sth. to sb. or make it available for them to use) **提供；供应**



e.g. They can provide enough food for us.
他们能给我们提供足够的食物。

The school provides the students with delicious food every day.
学校每天给学生提供美味的食物。

provide 为及物动词，provide sth. for sb. = provide sb. with sth. 为某人提供某物。

考题在线 3 Many tourists prefer five-star hotels because they think expensive hotels always _____ guests with better service. [泰州]

A. prevent B. protect C. present D. provide

点拨：本题用固定搭配法。句意：许多游客更喜欢五星级酒店，因为他们认为昂

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

贵的酒店总是为客人提供更好的服务。表示“为某人提供某物”，用 provide sb. with sth. 或 provide sth for sb.。

★And anyway, I think doing chores is not so difficult.

⑥ **anyway** /'eniweɪ/ *adv.* 而且；加之

e.g. It's expensive and anyway the size is too small. 这个很贵，而且尺寸太小。

The water was cold but I took a shower anyway. 尽管；即使这样

水很冷，即使这样我还是洗了个淋浴。

Anyway, we should have a try. anyway 位于句首时，后面常加逗号，将其与句子的其他内容隔开。

不管怎样，我们都应该试一试。

★Children these days depend on their parents too much.

⑦ **depend**/dɪ'pend/*v.* 依靠；信赖 depend on/upon 依靠；由……决定，其后可接名词、v.-ing 形式、代词宾格以及宾语从句。

e.g. You are adults now and should not depend on/upon your parents.

你们现在是成年人了，不应该依靠父母。

The value of life does not depend on who you are, but what you do.

人生价值并不取决于你是谁，而是你做什么。

It all depends. 一切要视情况而定。

★Doing chores helps to develop children's independence and teaches them …

develop 既可作及物动词，也可作不及物动词，其名词形式为 development。

⑧ **develop**/dɪ'veləp/*v.* 发展；壮大

e.g. We should develop healthy eating habits.

我们应该养成健康的饮食习惯。

America is a developed country, and China is a developing country.

发达的　发展中的

美国是一个发达国家，而中国是一个发展中国家。

⑨ **independence** /ˌɪndɪ'pendəns/ *n.* 独立 不可数名词

e.g. He was afraid of losing his independence.

他害怕失去自己的独立性。

拓展：depend 的相关词：

depend (*vi.*) — dependent(*adj.*) ↔ independent(*adj.*)

depend (*vi.*) — dependence(*n.*) ↔ independence(*n.*)

考题在线 4 —The research suggests that walking helps people live longer.

—I quite agree, but it _____ on when and how they walk.

A. remains　　B. separates

C. returns　　D. depends

点拨：本题用语境分析法。句意：——研究表明散步有助于人们活得更久。

——我完全赞同，但是这_____何时散步以及如何散步。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★Since they live in one house with their parents, ...

⑩ **since**/sɪns/*conj.* 因为；既然 *prep.*, *conj.*& *adv.* 从……以后；自……以来

since 作"因为；由于"讲时，相当于 because 或 as，引导原因状语从句。比 because 更加正式和书面化。

e.g. Since it is raining, we had better watch TV at home.
因为下雨了，我们最好在家里看电视。

My family has lived here since five years ago.
自五年前我家人就住在这里。

He hasn't called since he went to Beijing.
他自从去了北京还没有打来过电话。

since 从……以后；自……以来，连接时间状语(从句)，连接从句时，从句常用一般过去时，主句用现在完成时。

考题在线 5 Jack has learned more about teamwork(团队合作)_____ he joined the soccer team.

A. until　　B. since

C. when　　D. but

点拨：本题用词义辨析法。句意：自杰克加入足球队以来，他学到了更多关于团队合作(的事情)。A. 直到……为止；B. 自……以来；C. 在……时候；D. 但是。

★..., he had no idea how to take care of himself.

⑪ **take care of** 照顾；处理　=look after

e.g. It is good manners to take care of the old and the disabled.
=It is good manners to look after the old and the disabled.
照顾老年人和残疾人是有礼貌的。

如果表示"照顾好"则用 take good care of... 或 look after... well，其中 good 和 well 不要用混。

My father can take good care of her.
=My father can look after her well.
我父亲可以照顾好她。

of 和 after 都是介词，人称代词作宾语要放在它们后面。

Take care. Don't hurt yourself.
小心。不要伤到你自己。

当心，注意，常用于祈使句中，相当于"look out/be careful"。

考题在线 6 My sister will take care of my cat when I am on holiday.(改为同义句)　[重庆]

My sister will _____ _____ my cat when I am on holiday.

★As a result, he often fell ill and his grades dropped.

⑫ **as a result** 结果

副词性短语，意为"结果"，后面引出表示事情结果的句子。

e.g. He made a big mistake, and as a result, he lost his job.
他犯了一个大错，结果丢了工作。

Bill was late as a result of the heavy snow.
由于大雪，比尔迟到了。

介词性短语，意为"因为；由于"，后常接名词或代词等，相当于 because of。

用作连系动词，其后接形容词作表语。

⑬ **fall ill** 生病

e.g. Millions of people fall ill every year because of eating unsafe food.
每年有数百万人因食用不安全食品而患病。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★**The earlier kids learn to be independent, the better it is for their future.**

⑭ **The earlier..., the better...** 越早……，……越好

the+比较级+…, the+比较级+… 意为"越……，就越……"。

e.g. The more you practice, the better you can understand.

你练习得越多，理解得就越好。比较级+and+比较级意为"越来越……"

The weather becomes colder and colder. 天气变得越来越冷。

考题在线 7 The _____ kids learn to be independent, the _____ it is for their future. [云南]

A. early; good　　B. early; better

C. earlier; better　　D. earlier; good

点拨：本题用固定句式法。句意：孩子们越早学会独立，对他们的将来就越好。本题考查"the +比较级 +...，the +比较级 +..."，表示"越……，就越……"，根据句意可知答案。

考题在线答案　1. C　2. C　3. D　4. D　5. B　6. look after/care for　7. C

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练　稳拿中考基础 20分

☞(答案见281页)

一、单项选择

1. —The government is _____ plenty of money building the countryside.

—We are pleased with the government's efforts. [宜昌]

A. costing　　B. paying

C. taking　　D. spending

2. Some people think it's the parents' job to _____ their children _____ a clean and comfortable environment at home. [玉林]

A. offer; to　　B. offer; with

C. provide; with　　D. provide; to

3. As the story _____, the secret of the castle is discovered little by little. [无锡]

A. ends　　B. begins

C. develops　　D. happens

4. —Shall we go for a picnic tomorrow?

—Well, it all _____ the weather.

A. belongs to　　B. happens to

C. depends on　　D. concentrates on

二、根据汉语意思完成英语句子

5. 孩子们已经有了来自于学校的足够压力了。

Kids already have_____ from school.

6. 为了取得好成绩，我们应该把时间花在功课上。

We should spend our time _____ schoolwork _____ get good grades.

7. 我们没有必要买那么多的衣服。

There is _____ for us _____ so many clothes.

8. 林涛起晚了，结果上学迟到了。

Lin Tao got up late and _____, he was late for school.

9. 谢谢你的邀请，但是很抱歉我不能去。我需要在家照顾我的宝宝。

Thanks for your invitation, but I'm so sorry I can't go. I need to _____ my baby at home.

10. 我堂妹每天花两个小时学习京剧。

My cousin spends two hours every day _____ _____ Beijing Opera.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 6 Section B（3a–Self Check）

I. 课文原文、译文

3a Do you think children should do some chores at home? Why or why not? Discuss this with a partner and take notes. 你认为孩子们在家应该做一些家务吗？为什么或为什么不？和搭档讨论这个并做记录。

Children should do chores because ... 孩子们应该做家务因为……	Children should not do chores because ... 孩子们不应该做家务因为……

3b Write a letter to the *Sunday Mail* and express your opinion. 给《星期日邮报》写一封信表达你的观点。

Dear Sir or Madam, 亲爱的先生 / 女士：

I think/believe that_____.

我认为 / 相信_____。

I agree/disagree that_____.

我同意 / 不同意_____。

I think it is fair/feə/ , /fer/unfair/ˌʌn'feə/ , /ˌʌn'fer/ for children to_____.

我认为对孩子们来说_____是公平的 / 不公平的。

I think children should/should not_____because_____.

我认为孩子们应该 / 不应该_____因为_____。

For example, they should/should not_____because_____.

例如，他们应该 / 不应该_____因为_____。

Yours truly, 你真诚的朋友，

_____

Self Check 自我检测

1 Make a list of chores using these verbs. 用这些动词列出家务清单。

1. do 做_____
2. clean 打扫_____
3. make 做_____
4. fold 折叠_____
5. sweep 打扫_____
6. take out 带走_____

2 Are these polite requests or permission? Write the numbers in the correct places in the chart. 这些是礼貌的请求还是许可？在表格正确的位置将序号写下来。

1. Could you please do your homework? 请你写作业好吗？
2. Could I watch TV? 我可以看电视吗？

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

3. Could you take out the rubbish first? 你可以先把垃圾倒掉吗?

4. Could I use your computer? 我可以使用你的电脑吗?

5. Could I leave now? 我可以现在离开吗?

6. Could you come back before nine? 你可以在九点之前回来吗?

Requests 请求	Permission 许可

3 Use the questions in activity 2 to write a conversation. 用活动 2 中的问题写对话。

A: _____

B: _____

...

Ⅱ. 写作一课一法 夺取中考写作 20分

写作小练笔

Last month, our dog welcomed me when I came home from school. He wanted a walk, but I was so tired. I just wanted to watch TV. At this time, my mother came over. She was angry with me. She thought I should take the dog for a walk. She worked all day and had to do the housework all evening. But I didn't understand her. I thought it was her duty. The next few days my mother didn't do anything. I began to realize my mistake. The one day after school I cleaned the house all by myself. When my mom returned home from work , she was so happy. I apologized (道歉) to my mother and I came to understand our parents work hard to give us a bright future. So we must love them the same way in return.

单元话题

作为青少年的我们在学习之余是否应该帮助家长做一些家务呢? 用英语写一篇作文来表明你的观点。

审题指导 (把握中心，得方向分)

此类写作体裁以议论文为主。议论文有三要素：论点、论据和论证。我们要学会用 should/shouldn't 等表达自己的观点。

写作技法 (学会方法，巧得高分)

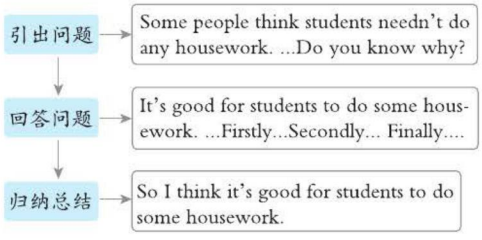
"一引二答三总结法"写观点看法类作文

第一步：发表看法，引出问题

第二步：回答问题，逐条表述

第三步：归纳总结，回扣主题

写作模板 (学会套路，得基本分)



经典词句 (妙用句式，得出彩分)

单词	firstly, secondly, finally, independent, healthy, strong
短语	all the time, depend on, do some housework
句子	It's+*adj.*+for sb. to do sth.

范文赏析 (书写工整，得印象分)

Some people think students needn't do any housework. I disagree. Do you know why?

It's good for students to do some housework.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

There are three reasons. Firstly, doing some housework can make you independent. You can't depend on others all the time. Secondly, doing some housework can keep you healthy and strong. Finally, you can share your parents' work by doing some housework.

So I think it's good for students to do some housework.

名师点评：本文运用了"一引二答三总结法"写观点看法类作文。第一步：引出问题（第一段）；第二步：回答问题（第二段）；第三步：归纳总结（第三段）。

1. 灵活运用句式"It's+adj.+for sb.+to do sth."。
2. firstly, secondly, finally 等的运用增加了文章的条理性和层次感。
3. all the time 一词活学活用，为文章增添了色彩。



Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

（答案见281页）

单元知识浓缩（根据汉语提示，用适当的单词或短语完成短文）

"Do the dishes. _____[1]（打扫）the floor. Take out the rubbish. _____[2]（叠）the clothes." Do your parents say these things to you? Of course they do. Why? Well, someone has to do it. They are _____[3]（杂务）—small everyday duties. You may get money for doing a chore or you may not. Parents and other people don't always give orders. Sometimes they ask.

How do you ask politely in English? Well, the word "_____[4]（能；可以）" is often used for requests. When your mom says "Could you please _____[5]（整理床铺）?", she is "politely" asking you to do a chore.

In fact, doing chores can help to develop children's _____[6]（独立）and teach them how to _____[7]（照顾；处理）themselves. It can also help them to understand the idea of _____[8]（公平）. After all, they can't _____[9]（依靠）their parents too much all the time. When asking for permission, you can also use the word "could". For example, you can say "Could I borrow...?" when you want to _____[10]（借）something from others.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 4 Why don't you talk to your parents?

词汇表听写



记忆大师

Period 1 Section A (1a–2d)

必背单词

1. **allow** *v.* 允许；准许→allow sb. to do sth. 允许某人做某事
2. **wrong** *adj.* 有毛病；错误的
3. **guess** *v.* 猜测；估计 4. **deal** *n.* 协议；交易

必背短语

5. look through 浏览；快速查看
6. big deal 重要的事
7. work out 成功地发展；解决

必背句子

8. **—What's wrong?**
哪儿不舒服？
—I'm really tired because I studied **until** midnight last night.
我真的很累，因为昨晚我学到了半夜。
9. Well, I **found** my sister **looking through** my things yesterday.
唔，昨天我发现我的妹妹在快速翻看我的东西。
10. —What should I do? 我应该怎么办？

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

—Well, I guess you could tell her to say sorry. But, **why don't you** forget about it so that you can be friends again? Although she's wrong, it's not a big deal. 唔，我想你可以让她道歉。但是为了你们还能做朋友为什么不忘了它呢？尽管她做得不对，但也没什么大不了的。

Period 2 Section A (3a–3c)

必背单词

1. **relation** *n.* 关系；联系；交往→ relate *v.* 联系
2. **communication** *n.* 交流；沟通→ communicate *v.* 交流；沟通
3. **argue** *v.* 争论；争吵→ argument *n.* 争论
4. **cloud** *n.* 云；云朵→ cloudy *adj.* 多云的
5. **elder** *adj.* 年纪较长的→ older *adj.* 年纪较长的
6. **instead** *adv.* 代替；反而；却→ instead of 代替
7. **whatever** *pron.* 任何；每一
8. **nervous** *adj.* 焦虑的；担忧的
9. **offer** *v.* 主动提出；自愿给予→ offer to do sth.（主动）提出做某事
10. **proper** *adj.* 正确的；恰当的→ properly *adv.* 正确地；恰当地
11. **secondly** *adv.* 其次；第二→ firstly *adv.* 首先；第一
12. **communicate** *v.* 交流；沟通→ communication *n.* 交流；沟通
13. **explain** *v.* 解释；说明→ explanation *n.* 解释；说明
14. **clear** *adj.* 清楚易懂的；晴朗的→ clearly *adv.* 清楚地；清晰地

必背短语

15. get on with 和睦相处；关系良好

必背句子

16. Instead he watches whatever he wants **until** late at night.
相反，他想看什么就看什么直到深夜。
17. It's not easy being your age, and **it's** normal **to** have these feelings.
处于你这个年龄是不容易的，有这些感受是正常的。

Period 3 Section A (Grammar Focus–4c)

必背单词

1. **copy** *v.* 抄袭；模仿；复印；复制
2. **return** *v.* 归还；回来；返回
3. **anymore** *adv.*（常用于否定句和疑问句末）再也（不）；（不）再

必背句子&语法

4. He should talk to his friend **so that** he can say he's sorry.
他应该和他的朋友谈谈，这样他能说出抱歉。
5. Maybe you **could** go to his house.
或许你可以去他家。

Period 4 Section B (1a–1e)

必背单词

1. **member** *n.* 成员；分子
2. **pressure** *n.* 压力→ press *v.* 按；（被）压
3. **compete** *v.* 竞争；对抗→ competition *n.* 竞争→ competitor *n.* 竞争者；对手

Period 5 Section B (2a–2e)

必背单词

1. **opinion** *n.* 意见；想法；看法
2. **skill** *n.* 技艺；技巧
3. **typical** *adj.* 典型的
4. **football** *n.*（美式）橄榄球；足球
5. **quick** *adj.* 快的；迅速的；时间短暂的→ quickly *adv.* 迅速地；很快地
6. **continue** *v.* 持续；继续存在
7. **compare** *v.* 比较→ compare ... with 对比；比较
8. **crazy** *adj.* 不理智的；疯狂的→ be crazy about... 对……着迷
9. **push** *v.* 鞭策；督促；推动→ push sb. to do sth. 督促某人做某事
10. **development** *n.* 发展；发育；成长→ develop *v.* 发展；（使）成长
11. **cause** *v.* 造成；引起
12. **usual** *adj.* 通常的；寻常的→反义词：unusual 不寻常的

必背短语

13. cut out 删除；删去
14. in one's opinion 依……看

必背句子

15. And they are always **comparing** them **with** other children.
而且她们总是把自己的孩子与其他孩子作比较。

Period 6 Section B (3a–Self Check)

必背单词

1. **perhaps** *adv.* 可能；大概；也许

必背句子

2. **In my opinion**, it is important for children/parents to ... 在我看来，对孩子/父母来说……是重要的。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 1 Section A（1a–2d）

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

Language Goals: Talk about problems; Give advice
语言目标：谈论问题；给出建议

1a Look at these problems. Do you think they are serious or not? Write them in the appropriate box. 看这些问题。你认为它们是否严重？把它们写在适当的表格里。

1. I have to study too much so I don't get enough sleep. 我不得不学很多，因此我得不到充足的睡眠。
2. I have too much homework so I don't have any free time to do things I like.
   我有太多的家庭作业因此我没有空闲时间做我喜欢的事情。
3. My parents don't allow/ə'laʊ/① me to hang out with my friends. 我的父母不允许我和朋友们闲逛。
4. I have too many after-school classes. 我有太多的补习班要去上。
5. I got into a fight with my best friend. 我和我最好的朋友打架了。

Serious 严重的	Not serious 不严重的

1b Listen and circle the problems you hear in 1a. 听录音，圈出你在1a中听到的问题。

课文听力1b

1c Look at the problems in 1a and make conversations. 看1a中的问题，编写对话。

A: What's wrong/rɒŋ/, /rɔːŋ/? ②哪儿不舒服?

B: I'm really tired because I studied until midnight last night. 我真的很累，因为昨晚我学到了半夜。

A: Why don't you go to sleep earlier this evening? 今天晚上你为什么不早点睡呢?

课文听力2a

2a Listen. Peter's friend is giving him advice. Fill in the blanks with *could* or *should*. 听录音。彼得的朋友正在给他建议。在空格处填入“可以”或“应该”。

Advice 建议
1. You _____ write him a letter. (　　) 你_____给他写封信。(　　)
2. You _____ call him up. (　　) 你_____给他打电话。(　　)
3. You _____ talk to him so that you can say you're sorry. (　　) 你_____和他谈谈，这样你可以说出抱歉。(　　)
4. You _____ go to his house. (　　) 你_____去他家。(　　)
5. You _____ take him to the ball game. (　　) 你_____带他去看球赛。(　　)

2b Listen again. Why doesn't Peter like his friend's advice? Write the letters(a-e)next to the advice in 2a. 再听一遍录音。彼得为什么不喜欢他朋友的建议？在2a的建议旁边写字母(a-e)。

Why Peter doesn't like the advice 为什么彼得不喜欢那些建议
a. It's not easy. 那不容易。
b. I don't want to wait that long. 我不想等那么久。 → = so long 那么久
c. I don't want to surprise him. 我不想让他感到惊讶。
d. I'm not good at writing letters. 我不擅长写信。
e. I don't want to talk about it on the phone. 我不想在电话里谈那件事。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

2c Role-play a conversation between Peter and his friend. 分角色表演彼得和他朋友之间的对话。

A: What's the matter, Peter? 怎么了，彼得?

B: I had a fight with my best friend.What should I do? 我和我最好的朋友打架了。我应该怎么办?

A: Well, you should call him so that you can say you're sorry. 唔，你应该给他打电话这样你可以说出抱歉。

2d Role-play the conversation. 分角色表演对话。 目的状语从句



Dave: You look sad, Kim. What's wrong? 你看上去很难过，金。哪儿不舒服?

Kim: Well, I found ③ my sister looking through ④ my things yesterday. She took some of my new magazines and CDs. 唔，昨天我发现我妹妹快速翻看我的东西。她拿走了我一些新杂志和光盘。

Dave: Hmm ... that's not very nice. Did she give them back to you? 嗯……那样不是很好。她把它们还给你了吗?

Kim: Yes, but I'm still angry with her. What should I do? 还了，但我仍然生她的气。我应该怎么办?

Dave: Well, I guess/ges/ ⑤ you could tell her to say sorry. But why don't you forget about it so that you can be friends again? Although she's wrong, it's not a big deal/di:l/ ⑥. 唔，我想你可以让她道歉。但是为了你们还能做朋友为什么不忘了它呢? 尽管她做得不对，但也没什么大不了的。 目的状语从句

Kim: You're right. Thanks for your advice. 你是对的。感谢你的建议。

Dave: No problem. Hope things work out ⑦. 不客气。希望事情会好起来。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注 •考点应用

★My parents don't allow me to hang out with my friends.

① **allow**/ə'laʊ/ *v.* (to let sb./sth. do sth.; to let sth. happen or be done) **允许; 准许**

- (not) allow sb. to do sth.(不)允许某人做某事
- (not) allow doing sth.(不)允许做某事
- be (not) allowed to do sth.(不)被允许做某事，为被动结构。

e.g. That teacher doesn't allow too much noise in the classroom.
那位老师不允许教室里大声吵闹。

The teacher allowed him to go into the classroom. 老师允许他进教室。

Mrs. Black doesn't allow her son to play computer games on school nights. 布莱克夫人不允许她儿子在上学的晚上打电脑游戏。

We do not allow smoking in the hall. 我们不准在大厅内吸烟。

Passengers are not allowed to smoke. 乘客不准吸烟。

考题在线 1 Their parents don't allow them _____ in the river because it's really dangerous. [重庆B卷]

A. swim B. swimming

C. to swim D. swam

点拨: 本题用固定搭配法。句意：他们的父母不允许他们在河里游泳，因为这真的危险。固定搭配：allow sb. to do sth. 允许某人做某事。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

② **What's wrong?** 哪儿不舒服？ 用来询问对方有什么问题或有什么不顺心的事，后面可接with+sb./sth.，用来询问"某人/某物怎么了"。

e.g. —What's wrong, Jim? 吉姆，哪儿不舒服？

—I left my umbrella on the bus. 我把我的雨伞落在公交车上了。

What's wrong with your teeth? 你的牙齿怎么了？

拓展：询问"怎么了？"的句型总结：详见 P4。

★Well, I found my sister looking through my things yesterday.

③ **find sb. doing sth.** 发现某人正在做某事 后常接复合宾语，即宾语+宾补（由名词、形容词、现在分词或过去分词等充当）。find 后的宾补一般不用不定式，但可以用 to be，且常可以省略。

e.g. I find a girl dancing under the tree. 我发现一个女孩正在树下跳舞。

I find her an easy woman to work with. 我发现她是个好共事的女人。

We find the story (to be) very interesting. 我们发现这个故事很有趣。

④ **look through** 快速查看；浏览

e.g. Please look through your note to make sure that you are right.

请快速查看你的笔记确保你是正确的。

look的其他常见搭配：
- look at（仔细）察看
- look around 环顾
- look forward to 期待；盼望
- look out 当心；小心
- look for 寻找
- look up 向上看；查阅
- look up to 尊敬；钦佩
- look like 看起来像

考题在线 2 — What's the meaning of "One Belt and One Road"?

— Let me _____ the new words in the dictionary. [咸宁]

A. look at　　B. look for

C. look up　　D. look after

点拨：本题用短语辨析法。look at（仔细）察看；look for 寻找；look up 向上看，查阅；look after 照顾。

★Well, I guess you could tell her to say sorry.

⑤ **guess**/ges/ *v.*(to try and give an answer or make a judgement about sth. without being sure of all the facts) 猜测；估计

拓展：I guess so/not 意为"我想是吧/我想不是"。有类似用法的动词还有 hope，suppose，think 等。

I guess... 与 I think... 类似，意为"我想……；我认为……"，用于陈述自己的观点、看法及建议。该句式若变为否定句，则要用"否定前移"。

e.g. —You're a lucky guy. 你是个幸运的家伙。

—I guess so. 我想是吧。

You can guess what happened next.

你可以猜猜接下来发生了什么。

I don't guess (that) he is right. 我认为他不对。

★Although she's wrong, it's not a big deal.

⑥ **it's not a big deal** 没什么大不了的

敲黑板 常用于口语中，相当于 it's no big deal

e.g. Change the time of the meeting. It's not a big deal.

改一下会议时间吧。这没什么大不了的。

—Let's meet at half past six. 咱们 6 点半见面吧。

—It's a deal. 一言为定。

It's a deal. 意为"就这么办；一言为定"，常用于口语中。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★**Hope things work out.**

⑦ **work out 改善（状况）；解决（问题）** 后常跟 fine, well, badly 等词，表明产生的结果如何

e.g. Everything is working out well. 一切都进展顺利。

The government has many problems to work out.
政府有许多问题要解决。

The math problem is too difficult for me to work out.
这道数学题对我来说太难算出来了。

work out 还意为“计算出（答案、数量、价格等）；计划；思考”。

考题在线答案 1. C 2. C

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

（答案见281页）

听力技巧

先题后文法（在听录音前，可以先快速地扫视题目的内容，抓住题目中的关键词。再听录音时，就能根据关键词做出相应的标注与信息确认。这样有助于快速确定答案。）

听力过程

课文听力1b

一、听 1b，选择正确答案

1. When does the second girl begin to do her homework?

A. After school. B. After dinner.

C. Before sleeping.

2. What is the second girl's attitude towards after-school classes?

A. She likes them. B. She dislikes them.

C. She doesn't care.

课文听力2a

二、听 2a，选择正确答案

3. What's the matter with Peter?

A. He fought with his best friend.

B. He was very worried.

C. He gave some advice.

4. How many ways of communication are mentioned in the passage?

A. Six. B. Five. C. Four.

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

（答案见281页）

一、根据句意及首字母提示补全单词

1. My mother doesn't a_____ me to watch TV on school nights.

2. There is something w_____ with my computer. It doesn't work.

3. Don't be angry with him. It's not a big d_____ after all.

4. I can't g_____ what he is thinking about.

5. A_____ riding shared bikes（共享单车）is an environmentally friendly way to travel, many of the bikes are thrown everywhere.

[黄石改编]

二、用括号内所给词的适当形式或根据汉语提示填空 【导学号：2039901】

6. Does our teacher allow us _____(play) football outside?

7. Why don't you _____(tell) him the truth?

8. When I came in, I found him _____(play) games on the mobile phone.

9. Eating _____（太多）isn't good for your health.

10. _____（浏览）today's newspaper and find out if there is anything new.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 2 Section A（3a–3c）

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

3a Look at this letter to a magazine and the reply from Robert Hunt, a school counselor. Complete the chart. 看这封寄给杂志社的信和学校顾问罗伯特·亨特的回信。完成表格。

课文朗读 3a

Dear Mr. Hunt, 亲爱的亨特先生：

My problem is that I can't get on with ① my family. Relations/rɪ'leɪʃnz/ between my parents have become difficult. They fight a lot, and I really don't like it. It's the only communication/kəˌmjuːnɪ'keɪʃn/ they have. I don't know if I should say anything to them about this. When they argue/'ɑː(r)gjuː/ ②, it's like a big, black cloud/klaʊd/ hanging over our home. Also, my elder/'eldə(r)/ ③ brother is not very nice to me. He always refuses to let me watch my favorite TV show. Instead/ɪn'sted/ ④ he watches whatever/wɒt'evə/, /wɑːt'evər/ ⑤ he wants until late at night. I don't think this is fair. At home I always feel lonely and nervous/'nɜː(r)vəs/. Is that normal? What can I do?

我的问题是我不能和家人和睦相处。我父母之间的关系变得很麻烦。他们经常争吵，我真的不喜欢这样。这是他们之间唯一的交流。我不知道我是否应该就此事对他们说些什么。当他们争吵时，我们家就好像笼罩着一大块乌云。还有，我的哥哥对我也不太好。他总是拒绝让我看我最喜欢的电视节目。相反，他想看什么就看什么直到深夜。我认为这不公平。在家里，我总是感到孤独和紧张。那正常吗？我能做什么？

Sad and Thirteen 伤心 13

Dear Sad and Thirteen, 亲爱的伤心 13：

It's not easy being your age, and it's normal to have these feelings. Why don't you talk about these feelings with your family? If your parents are having problems, you should offer/'ɒfə/, /'ɑːfər/ ⑥ to help. Maybe you could do more jobs around the house so that they have more time for proper/'prɒpə/, /'prɑːpər/ ⑦ communication. Secondly/'sekəndli/ ⑧, why don't you sit down and communicate /kə'mjuːnɪkeɪt/ ⑨ with your brother? You should explain/ɪk'spleɪn/ ⑩ that you don't mind him watching TV all the time. However, he should let you watch your favorite show. I hope things will be better for you soon.

处于你这个年龄是不容易的，有这些感受是正常的。为什么不和你的家人谈论一下你的这些感受呢？如果你的父母正遭遇问题，你应该提供帮助。为了使他们有更多的时间恰当地沟通，也许你可以多做一些家里的工作。其次，为什么你不坐下来和你的哥哥交流呢？你应该解释你不介意他一直看电视。但是，他应该让你看你最喜欢的节目。我希望你很快就会好起来。

Robert Hunt 罗伯特·亨特

Problems 问题	Advice 建议

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

3b **Do you agree or disagree with Mr. Hunt's advice? Why?** 你是否同意亨特先生的建议？为什么？

I agree/disagree with his advice because ... 我同意 / 不同意他的建议，因为……

3c **Which words or phrases in the letters have the same or similar meanings as the following? Write a sentence using each word or phrase.**

信件中哪些单词或短语和下列的词语意思相同或相似？用每个单词或短语写一个句子。

make sth. clear/klɪə/, /klɪr/— explain Can you explain to me how to do this math problem?

弄清楚某事—— 解释 你能给我解释一下这道数学题怎么做吗？

talk 谈话 —_____ _____

not allow 不允许 —_____ _____

worried 担心的 —_____ _____

get along with 和睦相处 —_____ _____

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读 60分

☞(答案见281页)

阅读过程

一、速读 3a，选择正确答案

1. In the last paragraph, Robert mainly suggests that Sad and Thirteen should _____.

（主旨大意题）

A. study very hard

B. communicate with his family

C. explain to his brother

D. do more jobs around the house

二、细读 3a，选择正确答案

2. What is Sad and Thirteen's problem?

（细节考查题）

A. He can't get on with his family.

B. He can't sleep well.

C. He has much pressure on study.

D. He doesn't like study.

3. How does Sad and Thirteen always feel at home? （细节考查题）

A. Happy and excited.

B. Excited and safe.

C. Lonely and nervous.

D. Afraid but excited.

4. What does the word "instead" in the passage mean _____ in Chinese? （词义猜测题）

A. 相反 B. 独自

C. 对着 D. 关系

5. What does Robert Hunt advise Sad and Thirteen to do? （细节考查题）

A. To do some housework for his mother.

B. To have a fight with his brother.

C. To have a talk with his family.

D. To ask his parents for help.

Ⅲ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注 •考点应用

★My problem is that I can't get on with my family.

get on/along with sth.（谈及或问及工作情况）进展；进步

① **get on with** 和睦相处；关系良好

e.g. How are you getting on with your essay?

你的论文写得怎么样了？

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

The new teacher is getting on/along well with the students.
新老师和学生们相处得很好。get on with sb.=get along with sb. 表示“和某人相处得好/不好”，则用短语 get on/along well/badly with sb.。

考题在线 1 Don't worry! I'm sure you'll _____ your classmates if you are kind and friendly to them. [呼和浩特]

A. catch up with　　B. be pleased with
C. get on well with　　D. agree with

点拨:catch up with 赶上；be pleased with 对……感到满足；get on well with 和……相处得好；agree with 同意。根据句意“不要担心！我确信如果你宽容友好地对他们，你们将会相处得好。”可知答案。

★When they argue, it's like a big, black cloud hanging over our home.

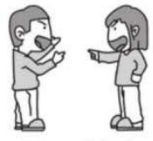
② **argue**/'ɑ:(r)gju:/ *v.* 争吵；争论　argue with sb. about sth. 为某事与某人争吵

e.g. They're always arguing with each other about their kid's education.
他们彼此总是为小孩的教育争吵。

You shouldn't have an argument with your teacher about the homework. 你不应该为了家庭作业的事和你的老师争吵。

★argue → argument (*v.*) → (*n.*)　have an argument with sb. 与某人争吵

辨析: quarrel, fight, argue 与 debate


quarrel 争吵


fight 打架


argue 争论


debate 辩论

★Also, my elder brother is not very nice to me.

③ **elder**/'eldə(r)/ *adj.* 年纪较长的

e.g. The elder woman is my grandmother.
年长的这位妇人是我的奶奶。

★elder 是 old 的比较级，常用在名词前作定语，意为“年纪较长的”，其反义词为 younger。

辨析: elder 与 older

elder	表示兄弟姐妹及子女之间的长幼 在句中只作定语
older	指较老的、较旧的或年龄较大的 在句中可作定语和表语

一语辨异：My elder brother is one year older than me.
我哥哥比我大一岁。

★Instead he watches whatever he wants until late at night.

④ **instead**/ɪn'sted/ *adv.* 代替；反而；却　可单独位于句首或句尾。

e.g. You are tired. Let me do it instead. 你累了。让我（替你）做吧。

Will you go instead of me? 介词短语，意为“代替”。后面可接名词、代词或 v.-ing 形式。
你愿意替我去吗?

⑤ **whatever** /wɒt'evə/, /wɑ:t'evər/ *pron.* 任何；每一

e.g. Do whatever you like. 引导宾语从句。
做你喜欢做的每件事。



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

意为“无论什么；不管什么”，引导让步状语从句，相当于 no matter what。

Whatever(=No matter what) difficulties he may meet, he will overcome them. 无论他可能遇到什么困难，他都会克服它们。

★If your parents are having problems, you should offer to help.

⑥ **offer**/'ɒfə/, /'ɑːfər/ *v.* **主动提出；自愿给予**

e.g. She offers to give him a piece of advice. 她主动给他提了一条建议。

offer 后可接双宾语，常用结构：
①offer sb. sth./offer sth. to sb. 向某人提供某物；
②offer to do sth. （主动）提出做某事。

【重点】辨析： offer 与 provide

offer	侧重表示“自愿给予”，常用于 offer sb. sth.(=offer sth. to sb.) 或 offer to do sth. 结构。
provide	指有远见，为应付意外或紧急情况等做好充分准备而“供给；提供”，常用于 provide sb. with sth. 或 provide sth. for sb. 结构。

e.g. I offered him a glass of wine. =I offered a glass of wine to him.
我提供给他一杯葡萄酒。

Policemen provide people with help.=Policemen provide help for people.
警察给人们提供帮助。

考题在线 2 —How is George now?
—I hear the manager _____ him a good job, but he refused it. [泰安]
A. showed B. offered C. passed D. paid

点拨：本题用语境分析法。根据 “但是他拒绝了”，可推知经理“提供”了一份好工作给他。



★Maybe you could do more jobs around the house so that they have more time for proper communication.

⑦ **proper**/'prɒpə/, /prɑːpər/ *adj.* **正确的；恰当的**

e.g. When are you going to get a proper job?
你打算什么时候去找一份合适的工作？ 作定语

I don't think her dress is proper for that party.
我认为她的连衣裙不适合那个聚会。 作表语

考题在线 3 The speaker showed some _____ examples to make the science report easy to understand. [安徽]
A. awful B. stupid C. proper D. thick

点拨：本题用语境分析法。句意：这个发言者举了一些恰当的例子使这篇科学报告易于理解。awful 可怕的；stupid 愚蠢的；proper 恰当的；thick 厚的。

★Secondly, why don't you sit down and communicate with your brother?

常与 firstly, thirdly 或 lastly 等表示顺序的副词连用，表示列举某些事实。

⑧ **secondly**/'sekəndli/ *adv.* **第二；其次**

e.g. Firstly, they are inefficient; and secondly, they are expensive to make.
首先，它们效率不高；其次，它们制作成本高。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

⑨ **communicate** /kə'mju:nɪkeɪt/ *v.* 交流；沟通

e.g. I often write letters to communicate with my friends.
我经常与朋友们写信交流。communicate with … 与……交流

Chatting online is a new way of communication for young people.
对年轻人来说网上聊天是一种新的沟通方式。

communicate 的名词形式是 communication 意为“交流；沟通”。

考题在线 4 Today, WeChat（微信）becomes very popular, and more and more people like to use it to _____ each other. [菏泽]

A. depend on　　B. communicate with　　C. believe in

点拨：本题用短语辨析法。depend on 依赖，依靠；communicate with 与……交流；believe in 信赖，信任。由句意可知此处是越来越多的人喜欢用微信互相交流。

★**You should explain that you don't mind him watching TV all the time.**

⑩ **explain**/ɪk'spleɪn/ *v.* 解释；说明

e.g. We explained our plan to the committee.
我们向委员会说明了我们的计划。

explain 后可接从句或“特殊疑问词+动词不定式”结构，常见搭配：explain sth. to sb. 向某人解释某事。

小贴士：explain 不能接双宾语，不能说 explain sb. sth.，而要说 explain sth. to sb.。

考题在线答案 1. C　2. B　3. C　4. B

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

（答案见 281 页）

一、用括号内所给词的适当形式填空

1. My _____ (old) brother helps me to play basketball every day.
2. Firstly, you should listen to your teacher carefully. _____ (second), you need to take notes in class.
3. I think you should sit down and have good _____(communicate) with your friend.
4. Betty often offers _____(do) the housework at home.
5. They _____(argue) him into withdrawing his complaint.

二、用方框内所给词或短语的适当形式填空

get on well with, explain, whatever, instead, be nervous about

6. Could you _____it again? I don't understand it.
7. Don't _____ the exam and you will make it!
8. Paul didn't drive to the museum. _____ , he rode his bike. [贺州]
9. _____ problems you meet, you should make an effort to deal with them.
10. Mary is _____ her cousin. They are friends, too.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 3 Section A（Grammar Focus–4c）

I. 课文原文、译文

Grammar Focus 语法聚焦

You look tired. What's the matter? 你看上去很累。怎么了？	I studied until midnight last night so I didn't get enough sleep. 我昨晚学到了半夜，所以我没有充足的睡眠。
What should I do? 我应该怎么办？	Why don't you forget about it? Although she's wrong, it's not a big deal. 为什么不忘了它呢？尽管她做的不对，但是也没什么大不了的。
What should he do? 他应该怎么办？	He should talk to his friend so that he can say he's sorry. 他应该和他的朋友谈谈，这样他能说出抱歉。
Maybe you could go to his house. 也许你可以去他家。	I guess I could, but I don't want to surprise him. 我想我可以，但我不想让他感到惊讶。

4a Fill in the blanks with *although*, *so that* or *until*. 用“尽管”、“以便”或“直到……才”填空。

1. **A:** What's wrong? 哪儿不舒服？

   B: My sister borrows my clothes without asking. What should I do?
   我妹妹未经我同意就借走了我的衣服。我应该怎么办？

   A: Well, you could tell her that this makes you angry _____ she'll ask you next time.
   唔，你可以告诉她这让你很生气_____她下次会征得你同意。

2. **A:** I don't have any friends at my new school. What should I do?
   在新学校里我没有任何朋友。我应该怎么办？

   B: _____ you don't have any now, you will soon make some.
   _____你现在没有，但很快就会交上一些（朋友）。

3. **A:** I'm worried about my school grades. What's your advice? 我担心我的学习成绩。你的建议是什么？

   B: You shouldn't wait _____ the last minute to study for a test.
   你不应该等_____最后一分钟才为考试而学习。

4. **A:** Mike is my best friend, but he always copies /'kɒpiz/, /'kɑ:piz/① my homework. What should I do? 迈克是我最好的朋友，但他总是抄我的家庭作业。我应该怎么办？

   B: _____ he's your best friend, you should still tell him that copying others' homework is wrong._____他是你最好的朋友，但是你仍然应该告诉他抄袭别人的家庭作业是不对的。

4b Write one piece of advice for each problem. Then compare your advice with your partner's and decide whether the advice is good or bad. 针对每一个问题写出一条建议。然后对比你的建议和你搭档的建议，并决定这些建议是好还是不好。

1. I'm very shy. 我很害羞。

   Advice 建议：_____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

2. My sister and I fight all the time. 我和妹妹总是打架。

Advice 建议：_____

3. My sister spends all evening on the phone. 我妹妹把整晚的时间都花在电话上。

Advice 建议：_____

4. My cousin borrows my things without returning/rɪ'tɜ:(r)nɪŋ/② them. 我表哥借了我的东西没有归还它们。

Advice 建议：_____

5. My parents won't let me have a pet. 我父母不让我养宠物。

Advice 建议：_____

4c Choose one of the problems and ask your classmates for advice. Decide which classmate has the best advice. 选择这些问题中的一个并向你的同班同学征求建议。决定哪个同班同学有最好的建议。

Problems 问题
You left your homework at home. 你把家庭作业落在家里了。
Your best friend is more popular than you. 你最好的朋友比你受欢迎。
You are afraid of speaking in front of people. 你害怕在人们面前发言。
Your best friend does not trust you anymore/ˌeni'mɔ:(r)/③. 你最好的朋友不再信任你了。
Your parents always argue. 你的父母总是吵架。

A: My best friend is more popular than me. I want to be like him. What should I do?
我最好的朋友比我受欢迎。我想像他一样。我应该怎么办?

B: You could try to be friendlier. 你可以努力做到更友好一些。

C: You should just be yourself. 你应该就做你自己。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用 •考点批注

★Mike is my best friend, but he always copies my homework.

① **copy**/'kɒpi/, /'kɑ:pi/ *v.* 复制；抄袭；模仿；复印

作动词，意为"抄袭；抄写；复制；临摹；模仿"。

e.g. He's busy copying the letters. 他忙于抄写信件。

We have no copies of the book in our bookshop.
这种书我们书店一本也没有。

作名词，意为"（书、报纸等的）一份，一本，一册"。

★My cousin borrows my things without returning them.

② **return**/rɪ'tɜ:(r)n/ *v.* (to bring, give, put or send sth. back to sb./sth.)
返回；归还

相当于 give ... back。

e.g. I returned the book to him.= I returned him the book.=
I gave the book back to him.
我把书还给了他。

短语 return sth. to sb.= return sb. sth.= give sth. back to sb. 把某物还给某人

He returned to school at 6 p.m. =He got back to school at 6 p.m.
下午 6 点他返回了学校。

return 作不及物动词，意为"回来；返回"，相当于 come/get back。常用短语为"return to+地点名词"。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

小贴士：return 和 home，here，there 连用时，return 后不用加 to。

考题在线 —Excuse me, may I use your dictionary? Mine is at home.
—Certainly. But remember to _____ it on time. [随州改编]
A. collect B. call C. give D. return
点拨：本题用词义辨析法。collect 收集；call 打电话；give 给；return 归还。

★Your best friend does not trust you anymore.

③ **anymore** /ˌeniˈmɔː(r)/ *adv.* 再也（不）；（不）再

anymore 常用于否定句和疑问句末，anymore 可以写作 any more。not ... any more 相当于 no more。

e.g. She doesn't live here any more. 她不再住在这里了。

拓展：no more/not ... any more = no longer/not ... any longer，其中 no longer/not ... any longer 一般修饰延续性动词，表示动作、状态或时间不再延续；而 no more/not ... any more 一般修饰非延续性动词，表示动作发生的次数、频率不再延续。另外，not ... any longer/not ... any more，其中 not 用在系动词、助动词或情态动词之后，而 any longer/any more 位于句末。

e.g. He doesn't like playing computer games any longer.
他不再喜欢玩电脑游戏了。

考题在线答案 D

Ⅲ. 单元语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

Why don't you ...?"建议"方式多样化

考点1 在英语中，提建议的常用表达方式

句型	意义	例句
Why don't you ...?/Why not ...?	你为什么不……呢?	Why don't you talk to your parents?= Why not talk to your parents? 你为什么不和你父母谈谈呢?
How about ...?/What about ...?	……怎么样/好吗?	What/How about having dinner with me? 和我一起吃晚饭好吗?
You'd better (not) do sth.	你最好（不）做某事。	You'd better (not) go out. 你最好（不要）出去。
Let's do sth.	咱们做某事吧。	Let's make a birthday card for her. 咱们给她制作一张生日贺卡吧。
Would you like sth./to do sth.?	你想要某物/做某事吗?	Would you like to have a try? 你想试一试吗?

考点2 回答建议的表达方式

肯定回答	Good idea. /That's a good idea. OK. /All right. /Yes, please. /Yes, I'd love to. No problem. /I agree with you. Sure. /Of course./Certainly./Yes, I think so.
否定回答	I don't think so./Sorry, I can't. /Sorry, but ... I'd love /like to, but ... /I'm afraid ...

考题在线1 —Shall we go camping to celebrate our graduation?
— _____. Let's make a plan first. [南京]
A. No way B. Good idea
C. It's nothing D. I don't think so
点拨：本题用情景交际法。句意：——我们去露营来

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

庆祝我们的毕业，好吗？——好主意。让我们首先做一个计划。

连词“三巨头”until, so that, although

考点1 until 引导时间状语从句

主句是肯定句时，其谓语动词用延续性动词，强调主句的动作或状态一直持续到从句的动作发生为止，意为“直到……为止”；主句是否定句时，其谓语动词用非延续性动词，侧重主句的动作在从句的动作发生之后才开始，意为“直到……才……”。

e.g. I'll stay here until you come back.
我会待在这里，直到你回来为止。

I will wait for him until he comes.
我要一直等到他来为止。

I didn't go to bed until Mom came back.
直到妈妈回来后我才上床睡觉。

We didn't start our discussion until he came.
直到他来了，我们才开始讨论。

考题在线2 —A little monkey might feel sad because of having a new baby sister or brother!
—Yeah. I didn't know that _____ I saw the film *Born in China*. [东营]

A. if　　B. until
C. since　　D. although

点拨：本题考查连词辨析。句意：——一只小猴子因为有新的妹妹或弟弟可能感到伤心！——是的。我直到看了电影《我们诞生在中国》才知道。if 如果；until 直到……才……；since 自……以来；although 尽管。

考点2 so that 引导目的状语从句和结果状语从句

1. so that 引导目的状语从句，意为“以便”，在口语中，that 可以省略；相当于 in order that，意为“为了”，此时从句中多含有 can, could 等情态动词。

e.g. I took a taxi so that I could get there earlier.
我乘了一辆出租车，为了能早点儿到那儿。

2. so that 意为“因此；所以”，引导结果状语从句，陈述的是客观事实，常常不带情态动词。

e.g. He studied hard so that he passed the exam.
他努力学习，因此他通过了考试。

考题在线3 We should take care of the earth _____ we can make a better world to live in.

A. so that　　B. until
C. even if　　D. while

点拨：考查连词辨析。so that 为了，以便；until 直到……才；even if 即使；while 当……时候。

考点3 although 引导让步状语从句

although 引导让步状语从句，意为“虽然，尽管；即使；不过；然而”，可以用 though 替换，从句位于句首、句末都可以；although 或 though 不能与 but，however 连用，但可与 yet, still 连用。

e.g. Although she was in poor health, she continued to carry out her duties.
尽管她身体不好，她继续履行她的职责。

He went to school although he was very ill.
即使他病得很重，他还是去上学了。

考题在线4 _____ Aron has lost his right arm, he never gives up his dream to climb mountains. [内江]

A. Since　　B. Although
C. Unless　　D. If

点拨：本题用逻辑推理法。句意：尽管阿伦失去了他的右臂，但他从未放弃爬山的梦想。根据句意及语境得知是由 although 引导的让步状语从句。

考题在线答案 1. B　2. B　3. A　4. B

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 单元语法专练 夺取中考语法满分

(答案见281页)

单项选择

1. — How was your skating lesson last week?
— Not bad. _____ I fell over many times, I managed to skate at last.
A. Because B. Although C. So

2. — I'm afraid I can't do well in the game.
—_____ It's just for fun. [凉山]
A. Take it easy. B. Sounds great.
C. Thank you. D. What a pity.

3. Many people like reading newspapers _____ they can learn what's happening in the world.
A. so that B. ever since
C. as soon as D. even though

4. —Excuse me, can you tell me the way to the nearest underground station?
—Walk straight on _____ you see a white building. It's right there. [苏州]
A. though B. since
C. until D. if

5. "A white elephant" means something that is useless, _____ it may cost a lot of money.
A. unless B. until
C. since D. although

Period 4 Section B (1a-1e)

Ⅰ. 课文原文、译文

1a What activities do you like to do to help lower your stress? Order them [1-8] with 1 being the most favorite thing you do to lower stress.
你喜欢做什么活动来帮助减少你的压力？用[1-8]排序，1代表为了减压你最喜欢做的事。

_____ play sports 做运动
_____ hang out with friends 和朋友们闲逛
_____ talk to parents or other family members/'membə(r)z/ 跟父母或其他家庭成员谈话
_____ spend time alone 单独度过时光
_____ play computer games 玩电脑游戏
_____ read books 读书
_____ watch movies 看电影
_____ other 其他：_____

1b Tell your partner about your answers in 1a. 告诉你的搭档关于1a中你的答案。

1c Listen and check(√)the problems Wei Ming talks about. 听录音，在魏明所谈论的问题前打勾(√)。

_____ My parents give me a lot of pressure/'preʃə(r)/ about school. 我父母在学业方面给我很大的压力。
_____ I don't get enough sleep. 我得不到充足的睡眠。
_____ I don't have enough free time. 我没有充足的空闲时间。
_____ I had a fight with my parents. 我和父母打架了。
_____ I have to compete/kəm'pi:t/① with my classmates at school.
在学校里我不得不和我的同班同学们竞争。



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

1d Listen again. What advice does Alice give to Wei Ming? Fill in the blanks.

再听一遍录音。爱丽丝给了魏明什么建议？填空。

1. Although you may be _____with your parents, you should talk to them. Ask them why they give you so much _____.

   尽管你可能对你的父母感到_____，但是你应该和他们谈谈。询问他们为什么给你如此多的_____。

2. Life shouldn't just be about _____. Free time activities like _____and hanging out with friends are important, too.

   生活不应该仅仅是关于_____。像_____和与朋友们闲逛这样的空闲时间活动也是重要的。

3. You shouldn't _____with your classmates to get better grades. You should all be _____each other to improve.

   你不应该为了取得更好的成绩而和你的同班同学_____。你们为了进步都应该相互_____。

1e What is your advice for Wei Ming? Tell your partner and say why.

你对魏明的建议是什么？告诉你的搭档并说明为什么。

A: I think Wei Ming should ... 我认为魏明应该……

B: Why? 为什么？

A: Because ... 因为……

Ⅱ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

(答案见281页)

听力过程

听 1c，选择正确答案

1. Who is having too much pressure about school?

A. Wei Ming. B. Alice.

C. Alice's parents.

2. What's Alice's advice?

A. To be angry with his parents.

B. To talk with his parents.

C. To ask his teacher for help.

课文听力 1c

3. What's Alice's opinion about life?

A. Life is just about grades.

B. Sports and hanging out aren't important.

C. Free time activities are important.

4. What does Wei Ming keep worrying about?

A. His health. B. His homework.

C. His grades.

5. What does Wei Ming think of Alice's advice?

A. Good. B. Bad.

C. Terrible.

Ⅲ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用

•考点批注

★I have to compete with my classmates at school.

① **compete**/kəm'pi:t/ *v.* (to try to be more successful or better than sb. else who is trying to do the same as you) 竞争；对抗

e.g. They decide to compete with us for the honor.

他们决定为了荣誉与我们竞争。

The competitors come from all over the country.

compete with /against sb. for sth.
为了得到某物与某人竞争

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

compete 词形变换
competition n. 竞争；比赛
competitor n. 竞争者；对手

They compete with each other in the competition.
竞争者来自全国各地。他们在比赛中互相竞争。

考题在线1 More than 1,000 _____ (compete) took part in the competition.

考题在线2 It's difficult for a small shop to _____ with the supermarket.
A. share B. shop C. compete D. provide

点拨 :compete with ... 与……竞争；share 分享；shop 购物；provide 提供。由句意及语境可知是“小商店很难与超市竞争”。

素养 行动 让我们做一个有竞争力但善于合作的全面发展的学生。

素养 行动结果 学会与他人合作，并且独立自强，具有较强的竞争力。

核心素养之文化意识

竞争与合作

作为初中生，在我们的学习过程中既存在着竞争也存在着合作，如果我们自己没有信心（*confidence*），不和其他同学竞争，那么我们就是学习上的懦夫（*coward*）。但是为了自己的成功，不肯互相合作，那更是一种做人的失败（*failure*）。因为这个社会是合作的社会，任何一个人都不可能掌握所有的知识。

考题在线答案 1.competitors 2.C

Period 5 Section B（2a–2e）

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文及导读

导读批注 | 原文译文·导读

Pre-reading（读前）

2a Check(√)the after-school activities you and your classmates usually do. 在你和你的同班同学们通常做的课外活动前打钩（√）。

_____do homework 做家庭作业
_____use the Internet 使用互联网
_____have after-school lessons 上补习班
_____hang out with friends 和朋友们闲逛
_____watch movies 看电影
_____play sports or exercise 做运动或锻炼

The first step is always the hardest.
万事开头难。

While-reading（读中）

课文朗读2b

2b Read the article and answer the questions.
阅读文章并回答问题。

1. What is the common problem for Chinese and American families?
对于中国家庭和美国家庭共同的问题是什么？

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

2. Who gives their opinions/ə'pɪnjənz/ about the problem?
谁就此问题发表了他们的意见?

> Guessing the Meaning 猜测词义
> When reading something for the first time, do not worry about words you do not know. Use the context to help you guess the meaning.
> 当第一遍阅读东西时不要担心你不认识的单词。通过联系上下文帮助你猜测其含义。

批 体裁：议论文

Maybe You Should Learn to Relax! 也许你应该学会放松!

These days, Chinese children are sometimes busier on weekends than weekdays because they have to take so many after-school classes. Many of them are learning exam skills/skɪlz/ so that they can get into a good high school and later a good university. Others are practicing sports so that they can compete and win. However, this doesn't only happen in China.

批 写作手法：主要运用举例子的论证方法来论证文章观点。

批 词语：运用转折词，承接上文，引出文章中心句。

近来，中国的孩子们有时在周末比在上学时还要忙，因为他们不得不去上许多的补习班。他们中的许多人正在学习应试技巧，为的是能够进入一所好的高中从而进入一所好的大学。另一些人为了他们能在竞争中取得成功正在进行体育训练。然而，这种情况并不仅仅发生在中国。

批 句子：该句为本段中心句，总起下文。

The Taylors① are a typical/'tɪpɪkl/ American family. Life for Cathy /'kæθi/ Taylor's/'teɪlə(r)z/ three children is very busy. "On most days after school," Cathy says, "I take one of my two boys to basketball practice and my daughter to football/'fʊtbɔ:l/ training. Then I have to take my other son to piano lessons. Maybe I could cut out② a few of their activities, but I believe these activities are important for my children's future. I really want them to be successful." However, the tired children don't get home until after 7: 00 p.m. They have a quick/kwɪk/ dinner, and then it's time for homework.

泰勒一家是典型的美国家庭。对于凯茜·泰勒的三个孩子来说，生活非常繁忙。凯茜说："大多数日子里，放学之后，我带着我两个儿子中的一个去练篮球，带着女儿去练足球。然后我不得不带着另外一个儿子去上钢琴课。或许我可以减掉他们几个活动，但是我坚信这些活动对我孩子们的未来是重要的。我真的想让他们取得成功。"然而，疲惫的孩子们直到晚上 7 点之后才回家。他们匆匆吃过晚饭，然后又到了做家庭作业的时间了。

Linda Miller, a mother of three, knows all about such stress."In some families, competition starts very young and continues/kən'tɪnju:z/③ until the kids get older," she says. "Mothers send their small kids to all kinds of classes. And they are always④ comparing/kəm'perɪŋ/, /kəm'peərɪŋ/⑤ them with other children. It's crazy/'kreɪzi/⑥. I don't think that's fair. Why don't they just let their kids be kids? People shouldn't push/pʊʃ/⑦ their kids so hard."

琳达·米勒，一位三个孩子的母亲，深知这种压力。她说："在一些家庭中，竞

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

争从孩子很小的时候就开始了，而且一直延续到孩子们长大一些。母亲们送她们年幼的孩子们去参加各种各样的学习班。而且她们总是把自己的孩子与其他孩子作比较。这太疯狂了。我认为那不公平。为什么她们不把孩子们仅仅当孩子呢？人们不应该把孩子们逼得太紧。”

批 结构：递进式结构
引出话题（Para. 1）
↓
描述问题（Para. 2-3）
↓
解决问题（Para. 4）

Doctors say too much pressure is not good for a child's development /dɪ'veləpmənt/. Dr. Alice Green says all these activities can cause/kɔ:z/ ③ a lot of stress for children. "Kids should have time to relax and think for themselves, too. Although it's normal to want successful children, it's even more important to have happy children."

医生说太多的压力对孩子的发展是不利的。爱丽丝·格林医生说所有这些活动会带给孩子们很多的压力。“孩子们也应该有时间来放松和独立思考。尽管想要孩子成功是正常的，但是让孩子快乐是更重要的。”

Post-reading（读后）

写作小练笔 ☞（答案见117页）

2c Look at the words in bold in the article. Can you guess their meanings? Try to match them with the meanings below.

看文章中黑体的单词。你能猜出它们的意思吗？试着将它们与下面的意义搭配起来。

1. Keeps on happening 继续发生_____
2. Physical exercise and practice of skills 体育锻炼和技能练习 _____
3. Worries about things at home, school or work 担心家里的、学校的或工作上的事情 _____
4. Usual/'ju:ʒuəl/ or common 寻常的或普通的_____
5. Try to be the best or the first to finish something 努力成为最好的或第一个完成某事的_____
6. Getting better or bigger 变好或变大_____
7. Looking for differences and similarities between things 寻找事物之间的不同点和相似点_____

2d Read the article again and answer the questions. 再读一遍文章并回答下列问题。

1. Does Cathy Taylor think it's important for kids to join after-school activities?
凯茜·泰勒认为孩子们参加课外活动重要吗？
2. Does Linda Miller agree with Cathy? What's her opinion?
琳达·米勒同意凯茜的观点吗？她持什么观点？
3. Does Dr. Green agree with Cathy or Linda? What does she say?
格林医生同意凯茜还是琳达的观点？她说了什么？

2e Discuss the questions with your partner. 和你的搭档讨论下列问题。

1. What do you think of after-school activities? 你对课外活动怎么看？
2. What should you do to relax? 为了放松，你应该做些什么？

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课文背诵指南



Maybe you should learn to relax!

- Para.1
  - Chinese children:
  - ① are learning exam skills→get into a good high school→a good university
  - ② are practicing sports→compete and win
- Para.2
  - The Taylors:
  - ① one of my two boys: basketball practice
  - ② my daughter: football training
  - ③ my other son: piano lessons
- Para.3
  - Linda Miller:
  - ① competition starts very young, continues until ...get older
  - ② send ...to ..., are always comparing ...with ...
- Para.4
  - Dr. Alice Green:
  - ① have time to relax, think for themselves
  - ② Although ..., it's even more important to ...

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读 60分

(答案见281页)

阅读策略

排除法(在做阅读理解题时，遇到短文中没有明确涉及的题目，或者遇到不认识的单词或短语时，可以用排除法。用排除法时，要结合短文大意，落实到具体的语境，进行排除。)

阅读过程

拓展阅读

一、速读 2b，选择正确答案

1. ⊙What's the doctors' opinion about children's taking too many courses? (推理判断题)

A. They can make children feel happy.

B. They are good for children's development.

C. Too much pressure is not good for children's development.

D. They are more important than children's happiness.

二、细读 2b，选择正确答案

2. Where are the Taylors from? (细节查找题)

A. America. B. Australia.

C. Canada. D. Britain.

3. What lesson does Cathy Taylor's daughter take? (细节查找题)

A. Basketball practice.

B. Football training.

C. Piano lessons.

D. Violin lessons.

4. What time do Cathy Taylor's children get home? (细节查找题)

A. After 6: 00 p. m. B. After 7: 00 p. m.

C. After 8: 00 p. m. D. After 9: 00 p. m.

5. ⊙ The phrase "cut out" means _____ in this passage. (词义猜测题)

A. 切下 B. 省略 C. 切碎 D. 删除

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

•考点批注 •考点应用

★**The Taylors are a typical American family.**

① **the Taylors 泰勒一家**

e.g. The Browns live in Los Angeles. 布朗一家住在洛杉矶。

"the+姓氏的复数形式"，表示"一家人"，作主语时谓语动词用复数形式。

★**Maybe I could cut out a few of their activities, ...**

② **cut out 删除；删去**

e.g. You'd better cut out the first two sentences. 你最好删除最前面的两个句子。

I cut an article out of the newspaper. 我从这份报纸上剪下了一篇文章。

cut out 为"动词+副词"型短语，代词作其宾语时须放在两个词之间；名词作宾语时，既可放在两个词中间，也可放在 out 之后。

考题在线 1 —What do you think of my composition? → 裁剪

—You should _____ the last two sentences.

A. cut up B. cut out C. turn down D. turn up

点拨：本题用语境分析法。由问句"你认为我的作文如何？"可知，答语应为"你应该删除最后两个句子。"。cut up 切碎；cut out 删除；turn down 拒绝；turn up 出现。

★**"In some families, competition starts very young and continues until the kids get older," she says.**

③ **continue**/kən'tɪnjuː/ *v.*(to keep existing or happening without stopping) **继续存在；持续** 相当于"go on"

常构成短语

continue to do sth.,
continue doing sth.,
continue with sth.
继续做某事。

e.g. The rain continued falling/to fall all afternoon.

这场雨整整一下午都下个不停。

考题在线 2 Are you going to _____ the research?

A. continue to B. continue about

C. continue with D. continue at

点拨：本题用固定搭配法。continue with sth. 意为"继续做某事"，由句意"你要继续做调查吗？"可知答案。

★**And they are always comparing them with other children.**

④ **be always doing sth. 一直做某事**

含有抱怨或厌恶等感情色彩，不表示正在发生的动作。

e.g. She was always moving things around. 她老是将东西搬来搬去。

⑤ **compare**/kəm'peə/, /kəm'per/ *v.* **比较**

【易错】辨析：compare ...with 与 compare ...to

compare ... with（意为"将……和……比较"）	强调同类相比，从而发现两个事物之间的不同之处。
compare ... to（意为"把……比作"）	强调异类相比，用来说明两个事物之间的相同之处。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

e.g. He compared his camera with mine.
他拿自己的照相机和我的作比较。

Books can be compared to friends.
书籍好比朋友。


compare... with...


be compared to

考题在线 3 —If you always _____ yourself with others, you may have tons of pressure.
—I agree. We should believe in ourselves. [泰安]

A. compare B. complain
C. connect D. consider

点拨: 本题用固定搭配法。句意: ——如果你总是将自己和别人比较的话，你可能会有巨大的压力。——我同意。我们应该相信我们自己。compare 比较; complain 抱怨; connect 连接; consider 考虑，认为。compare ...with 把……与……比较。

★It's crazy.

⑥ **crazy**/'kreɪzi/ *adj.* 疯狂的；不理智的

e.g. You must be crazy to do that. 你那么做一定是疯了。

They are all crazy about Chinese food. 他们都热衷于中餐。 → be crazy about 热衷于；迷恋

考题在线 4 Jean used to be crazy _____ computer games, but now she is interested _____ pop music and modern dance.

A. about; in B. about; on C. of; in D. of; on

点拨:be crazy about sth. "迷恋 / 热衷于某事"。be interested in sth. "对某事感兴趣"。由句意"珍过去迷恋电脑游戏，但现在她对流行音乐和现代舞感兴趣。"可知答案。

★People shouldn't push their kids so hard.

⑦ **push**/pʊʃ/ *v.* 鞭策；督促；推动 → 作及物动词，常用于 push sb. to do sth. 结构，意为"督促某人做某事"。

e.g. The teacher pushes her pupils to study hard.
这位老师督促她的学生努力学习。

He pushed the cup towards me. → push 还意为"推动；移动"，可作及物动词，也可作不及物动词。反义词是 pull，意为"拉，拽"。
他把杯子推向了我这边。

Pull the door open, please. Don't push it.
请拉开门。不要推它。



★Dr. Alice Green says all these activities can cause a lot of stress for children.

⑧ **cause** /kɔːz/ *v.*(to make sth. happen, especially sth. bad or unpleasant) 引起；造成

e.g. His carelessness caused the accident.
他的粗心大意引起了这起事故。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

辨析：cause，excuse 与 reason

- cause 指引起某种结果的“起因，原因”。
- excuse 指为免受指责或推卸责任而找的“理由，借口”。
- reason 指从逻辑推理中得出的结论性的“原因”。

Drunk driving is the cause of the accident.
这起事故的原因是酒后驾车。→ n. 起因；原因

That is an excuse for your absence. 那是你没来的一个借口。

The reason for my absence was that I was ill.
我没来的原因是我生病了。

考题在线 5 —I'm sorry I went out for a smoke. I was very tired.
—There's no _____ for this while you are at work.
A. cause B. excuse C. choice D. reason

点拨：考查名词词义辨析。cause 起因；excuse 借口，理由；choice 选择；reason 原因。由语境可知答案。

考题在线答案 1. B 2. C 3. A 4. A 5. B

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

（答案见 281 页）

一、根据句意及汉语提示写出相应的单词

1. The Taylors are a _____（典型的）American family.
2. Competition starts very young and _____（持续）until the kids get older.
3. It's _____（疯狂的）. People shouldn't _____（鞭策）their kids so hard.
4. Doctors say too much pressure is not good for a child's _____（发展）.
5. All these activities can _____（造成）a lot of stress for children.

二、单项选择

6. _____ Greens were watching the famous American TV program *Sesame Street*（《芝麻街》）when the telephone rang.
A. A B. An C. The D. /

7. The workers continued _____ even though it was too late.
A. work B. worked
C. working D. works

8. —Sun Yang is _____ a talented swimming player.
—That's right. He did best in the game in August, 2013.
A. such B. so C. pretty D. quiet

9. Our country is taking action to _____ air pollution.
A. cut down B. cup up
C. cut out D. cut off

10. —Why do you make your parents _____?
—Because they give me _____ pressure.
A. angry; too much B. angry; much too
C. angrily; too much D. angrily; too many

三、根据汉语意思完成英语句子，每空一词

11. 现在大多数学生都有很大的压力。
Now most students are under a _____ _____ _____.

12. 小商店很难和超市进行竞争。
It's difficult for a small store to _____ _____ a supermarket.

13. 所有家庭成员都为聚会穿上了盛装。
All the _____ _____ dressed up for the party.

14. 他们总是把他们与其他孩子做比较。
They are always _____ them _____ other children.

15. 我的朋友们都力劝我学习绘画。
My friends are all _____ _____ _____ study painting.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 6 Section B（3a–Self Check）

I. 课文原文、译文

3a A magazine interviewed some parents about after-school classes for children. Read the opinions below and make notes on your own opinions.

一家杂志社就孩子们的补习班采访了一些家长。读下面的观点并记录下自己的观点。

Why should children take after-school classes? 为什么孩子们应该上补习班?	Your opinions 你的观点
1. "After-school classes can help kids get into a good university." "补习班能够帮助孩子进入一所好的大学。" 2. "I want my child to be a successful person." "我想要我的孩子成为一个成功人士。" 3. "It's good for children to start learning from a young age." "从小开始学习对孩子们有益。"	Agree 同意： Disagree 反对：

3b Write a letter to the magazine to express your opinions on after-school classes for children. Use the following expressions to help you.

给杂志社写一封信来表述你对孩子们的补习班的观点。用下列表述来帮助你。

Try to write two paragraphs. 尽量写两段。	
First, say if you agree or disagree. 首先，表明你是否同意。 Dear ..., 亲爱的……： I don't really agree with ... because ... 我不是很同意……因为…… Although some parents are right about ..., I think children should ... 尽管一些家长关于……是对的，但是我认为孩子们应该……	Then, explain why. 然后，解释为什么。 In my opinion①, it is important for children/parents to ... 我认为，对孩子们 / 家长们而言……是重要的。 I believe it is better if children/parents ... so that ... 我相信为了……如果孩子们 / 家长……是更好的。 Perhaps/pə(r)'hæps/② children/parents should/could ... 也许孩子们 / 家长应该 / 可以…… If children ..., they will ... 如果孩子们……，他们会……

Self Check 自我检测

1 Fill in the blanks using *until*, *so that* or *although*. 用"直到……才"、"以便"或"尽管"填空。

1. You should eat more now _____ you won't be hungry later.
   现在你应该多吃点，_____你一会儿不会饿。
2. _____ you may not like to do chores, you should help your parents around the house.
   _____你可能不喜欢做家务，你应该在家里帮助你的父母。
3. You could save more money _____ you can buy a gift for your friend's birthday.
   _____你可以给你的朋友买生日礼物，你可以攒更多的钱。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

4. Kids shouldn't play computer games _____ late at night. They should rest early.
孩子们不应该玩电脑游戏_____晚上很晚。他们应该早点儿休息。

5. _____ many people like to eat junk food, they should really eat more fruit and vegetables _____ they can be healthy.
_____许多人喜欢吃垃圾食品，他们真应该多吃水果和蔬菜_____他们能保持健康。

2 For each problem, choose the advice you agree with more. Then write your own advice.
针对每一个问题，选择你更赞同的建议。然后写出你自己的建议。

1. My best friend and I had a fight, and now she won't speak to me.
我和我最好的朋友吵架了，现在她不跟我说话了。

A. You should keep trying to talk to her until she talks to you.
你应该继续努力去跟她说话直到她和你说话为止。

B. Why don't you wait a few more days before talking to her?
在跟她说话之前为什么不多等几天呢?

My advice 我的建议：_____

2. My friend wants me to go to a party on the weekend, but I want to study for my exams next week. 我的朋友想要我这周末去参加聚会，但我想为下周的考试学习。

A. Why don't you just go to the party? It'll help you to relax.
为什么不只去参加聚会呢？那有助于你放松。

B. You should study for the exams because they're more important than a party.
你应该为考试而学习，因为它们比聚会更重要。

My advice 我的建议：_____

3. My brother watches television while I'm trying to study. 当我正在努力学习的时候，我哥哥在看电视。

A. Why don't you tell him to do something quiet when you're studying?
为什么不告诉他当你正在学习的时候做些安静的事情呢?

B. You could tell him to turn down the TV. 你可以告诉他将电视音量调小。

My advice 我的建议：_____

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注　　•考点应用

★In my opinion, it is important for children/parents to ...

① **in one's opinion** 依……看　opinion 为名词，意为"意见；想法；看法"。

e.g. In their opinion, the meeting should be put off.
在他们看来，这个会议应该推迟。

★Perhaps children/parents should/could ...

② **perhaps**/pə(r)'hæps/ *adv.* 可能；大概；也许

e.g. He will perhaps come to my party tomorrow evening.
明天晚上他可能会来参加我的聚会。

perhaps 常放在句首，也可放在句中，位于实义动词之前，助动词、系动词或情态动词之后。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

【难点】辨析：probably, perhaps 与 possibly

probably	表示的可能性最大，通常表示有根据的推测	可位于句首、句中或句尾
perhaps	相当于 maybe，表示的可能性介于 probably 和 possibly 之间，较口语化	常位于句首
possibly	表示的可能性最小，常与 can，may 等情态动词连用	常位于句中

e.g. It will probably rain. 天很可能要下雨。

Perhaps the letter will come today. 或许这封信今天能到。

She can possibly be at home. 她或许在家里。

速记小筏：巧记可能性大小：probably > perhaps > possibly

Ⅲ. 写作一课一法 夺取中考写作 20分

写作小练笔

It seems that many students go to take after-school classes, but I think it is just a waste of time and money. I used to go to different kinds of these classes, too. But I realized I couldn't do that any more later. I began to spend more time reading, doing sports and taking some social activities. At the same time, I didn't fall behind others in study.

I like to enjoy nature in my free time, like watching plants, rocks and animals around my city. Learning by using is a real practice. I have got a lot from it. Now I'm becoming more creative and confident.

单元话题

我们在成长过程中经常会碰到一些烦恼，假设你是李华，请根据下表提示，用英语写一篇发言稿，在班会上谈谈你遇到的烦恼以及你自己的做法。

你的烦恼	你的做法
个头不高	不必在意，相信自己
父母不理解，朋友少	学会沟通，友善待人
学习压力大，课外活动少	……（自由发挥，至少两点）

要求：1. 词数 100 左右。

2. 所写内容必须包括表格中所有的信息，并进行适当的发挥。

3. 不得出现真实的人名、校名或地名等相关信息。

审题指导（把握中心，得方向分）

写这类短文时，首先应该掌握常用的提建议的句型，根据一定的情景，明确提建议的方法，再根据所提供的信息进行合理的发挥，使句子通顺流畅、意思完整。

写作技法（学会方法，巧得高分）

“‘现象、原因、措施’法”写针对烦恼或压力提建议类作文

第一步：表述现象，引出烦恼

第二步：分析原因

第三步：提出可行措施，具体建议 / 具体做法

写作模板（学会套路，得基本分）

开篇点题，说明自己的烦恼 → I'd like to talk about my problems and how I deal with them.

描述具体烦恼及原因等 → I am not tall.
My parents don't understand me and I have few friends.
I often feel stressed ...

解决烦恼的具体措施 → I don't care and I believe in myself.
I encourage myself to be kind to others ...
I will plan ..., trying to join in many activities ...

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

经典词句（妙用句式，得出彩分）

单词	problem, shy, communicate, nervous, stress, balance
短语	deal with, believe in oneself, worry about, try to, get on with, because of
句子	① You'd better ... ② If ...

范文赏析（书写工整，得印象分）

Hello, everyone,

I am Li Hua. I' d like to talk about my problems and how I deal with them.

I am not tall. But I don' t care and I believe in myself.

My parents don' t understand me and I have few friends. I encourage myself to be kind to others and learn to communicate with others very well.

I often feel stressed because of my study and I don' t have many chances to join in the after-class activities. I will plan my time very carefully and improve my study in a very good way, trying to join in many activities and achieve a balance between study and hobbies.

That's all. Thank you!

名师点评：本文运用了"'现象、原因、措施'法"写针对烦恼或压力提建议类作文。

1. 表述现象，引出烦恼：I am not tall；My parents don't ...；I often feel stressed ...。
2. 分析原因：I often feel stressed because of ... the after-class activities.。
3. 提出可行措施，具体做法：... I don't care and I believe in myself.；I encourage myself ...；I will plan my time ...

短语 deal with, be kind to, communicate with, because of, in a good way 及状语 trying to join in ... 的使用，使文章连贯流畅，富有文采。



Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

（答案见 282 页）

单元知识浓缩（根据汉语提示，用适当的单词或短语完成短文）

There's something _____[1]（错误的；有毛病）with Tina. She _____[2]（和……争吵）her parents. She thinks her clothes are out of style. She has no _____[3]（钱）to buy new clothes. No one wears the same clothes as she does.

She must join _____[4]（各种各样的）clubs, including the English club. She has to take part in the basketball _____[5]（训练）every weekend. Tina hopes her parents will _____[6]（删除；删去）some of her activities. She can't _____[7]（返回）home _____[8]（直到……为止）10 o'clock every night except Friday. Her parents always_____[9]（比较）her with other children. She feels very tired and she hopes she will be a happy and_____[10]（成功的）girl.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 5 What were you doing when the rainstorm came?

词汇表听写



记忆大师

Period 1 Section A(1a–2d)

必背单词

1. **alarm** *n.* 闹钟
2. **begin** *v.* 开始→began（过去式）→begun（过去分词）→beginning（现在分词）
3. **heavily** *adv.* 在很大程度上；大量地→heavy *adj.* 沉重的
4. **suddenly** *adv.* 突然；忽然
5. **strange** *adj.* 奇特的；奇怪的→strangely *adv.* 奇特地→stranger *n.* 陌生人

必背短语

6. go off（闹钟）发出响声
7. pick up（=pick up the phone）接电话

必背句子

8. —What were you doing at eight last night?
昨晚 8 点你在做什么？
—I was taking a shower. 我正在洗澡。

Period 2 Section A(3a–3c)

必背单词

1. **storm** *n.* 暴风雨

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

2. wind *n.* 风→windy *adj.* 有风的
3. light *n.* 光；光线；光亮
4. report *v.* & *n.* 报道；公布→reporter *n.* 记者
5. area *n.* 地域；地区
6. wood *n.* 木；木头→wooden *adj.* 木制的
7. window *n.* 窗；窗户
8. match *n.* 火柴→match *n.* 比赛
9. beat *v.* 敲打；打败→beat（过去式）→beaten（过去分词）
10. against *prep.* 倚；碰；撞
11. asleep *adj.* 睡着→fall asleep 进入梦乡；睡着
12. rise *v.* 升起；增加；提高→rose（过去式）→risen（过去分词）
13. fallen *adj.* 倒下的；落下的→fall *v.* 落下

‖必背短语

14. feel like 感觉好像
15. wake up 睡醒；醒来
16. die down 逐渐变弱；逐渐消失

‖必背句子

17. When it began to rain, Ben was helping his mom make dinner.
开始下雨的时候，本正在帮他妈妈做晚饭。
18. While Linda was sleeping, Jenny was helping Mary with her homework.
当琳达在睡觉时，珍妮在帮助玛丽做家庭作业。

Period 3 Section A(Grammar Focus–4c)

‖必背单词

1. icy *adj.* 覆盖着冰的；冰冷的→ice *n.* 冰
2. kid *v.* 开玩笑；欺骗→kidded（过去式）→kidded（过去分词）→kidding（现在分词）

‖必背短语

3. have a look 看一看

‖必背句子&语法

4. —What were you doing at eight last night?
昨晚 8 点你在做什么？
—I was taking a shower.
我正在洗澡。
5. —What was she doing at the time of the rainstorm?
当暴风雨来临时她正在做什么？
—She was doing her homework.
她正在做她的家庭作业。
6. —What was Ben doing when it began to rain heavily?
开始下大雨的时候，本正在做什么？
—When it began to rain, Ben was helping his mom make dinner.
开始下雨的时候，本正在帮他妈妈做晚饭。

Period 4 Section B(1a–1d)

‖必背单词

1. realize *v.* 理解；领会；认识到

‖必背短语

2. make one's way 前往；费力地前进

Period 5 Section B(2a–2e)

‖必背单词

1. passage *n.* 章节；段落
2. pupil *n.* 学生
3. completely *adv.* 彻底地；完全地→complete *adj.* 完全的
4. shocked *adj.* 惊愕的；受震惊的→shock *n.* 震惊
5. silence *n.* 沉默；缄默；无声→silent *adj.* 寂静的；无声的
6. recently *adv.* 不久前；最近→recent *adj.* 最近的
7. terrorist *n.* 恐怖主义者；恐怖分子
8. date *n.* 日期；日子
9. tower *n.* 塔；塔楼
10. truth *n.* 实情；事实→true *adj.* 真实的→(to) tell the truth 说实话

‖必背短语

11. in silence 沉默；无声
12. take down 拆除；往下拽；记录
13. have meaning to 对……有意义
14. at first 起初；起先

‖必背句子

15. People often remember what they were doing when they heard the news of important events in history.
人们经常记得当他们听到历史上重大事件的消息时自己在做什么。
16. I was so scared that I could hardly think clearly after that.
我惊恐万分，以至于在那之后我几乎无法清晰地思考。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 1 Section A（1a–2d）

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

Language Goals: Talk about past events; Tell a story
语言目标：谈论过去的事情；讲故事

What were people doing yesterday at the time of the rainstorm/'reɪnstɔ:(r)m/?
昨天暴风雨来临时人们在做什么？
a b c d

1a Where were the people at the time of the rainstorm? Match the statements with the people in the picture. 暴风雨来临时人们在哪里？把这些陈述与图中人物配对。

1. _____ I was in the library. 我在图书馆。
2. _____ I was in my house. 我在我的房子里。
3. _____ I was on the street. 我在街上。
4. _____ I was at the bus stop. 我在公交车站。

1b Listen to the TV report and circle the correct responses. 听电视台报道并圈出正确的应答语。

课文听力 1b

a. doing my homework/studying 做作业 / 学习
b. playing basketball/reading 打篮球 / 读书
c. going to work/waiting for the bus 去上班 / 等公交车
d. walking home/shopping 走回家 / 购物

1c Talk about what the people in 1a were doing at the time of the rainstorm.
谈论 1a 中人们在暴风雨来临时正在做什么。

A: What was the girl doing at the time of the rainstorm? 暴风雨来临时那个女孩正在做什么？
B: She was... 她正在……

2a Listen and number the pictures [1-5]. 听录音并给图片标上序号［1–5］。

课文听力 2a

I _____ so busy _____ for the umbrella that I didn't see a car coming.
我_____如此忙_____雨伞以至于我没有看到一辆汽车过来。
My alarm/ə'lɑ:(r)m/ didn't go off① so I _____ up late.
我的闹钟没有响，所以我_____晚了。
I took a hot shower and _____ some warm food.
我洗了个热水澡并且_____一些热的食物。
I _____ for the bus when it began/bɪ'gæn/② to rain heavily/'hevɪli/③.
当开始下大雨时我_____公交车。
I _____ to the bus stop but I still missed the bus.
我_____公交车站但我仍然错过了公交车。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

2b Listen again. Fill in the blanks in the sentences in 2a. 再听一遍。补全 2a 中句子的空白处。

2c Use the information in 2a to retell the story in a conversation between the boy and a TV reporter. 使用 2a 中的信息，以男孩与电视台记者对话的形式复述故事。

TV reporter: Tell us what happened yesterday morning. 告诉我们昨天早上发生了什么。

Boy: …

TV reporter: So, when the rainstorm suddenly/'sʌdənli/ came, what were you doing?
那么，当暴风雨突然来临时，你正在做什么？

Boy: …

2d Role-play the conversation. 分角色表演对话。

课文朗读 2d

Mary: What were you doing last night, Linda? I called at seven and you didn't pick up④. 琳达，你昨晚在做什么？我七点给你打电话，你没接。

Linda: Oh, I was in the kitchen helping my mom. 噢，我在厨房帮我妈妈。

Mary: I see. I called again at eight and you didn't answer then either.
我知道了。我八点又打了一次，你那时候也没接。

Linda: What was I doing at eight? Oh, I know. When you called, I was taking a shower.
我八点正在做什么呢？噢，我知道了。当你打电话的时候，我正在洗澡。

Mary: But then I called again at nine. 但是接着我九点又打了一次。

Linda: Oh, I was sleeping at that time. 噢，我那时正在睡觉。

Mary: So early? That's strange /streɪndʒ/⑤. 这么早？真奇怪。

Linda: Yeah, I was tired. Why did you call so many times? 是的，我累了。你为什么打这么多次电话？

Mary: I needed help with my homework. So while you were sleeping, I called Jenny and she helped me. 我在家庭作业方面需要帮助。所以当你睡觉的时候，我给珍妮打了电话，她帮助了我。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注　　•考点应用

★My alarm didn't go off so I woke up late.

① go off（闹钟）发出响声

e.g. A car alarm went off in the middle of the night.
半夜里一辆汽车的警报器响了。

不及物动词短语，"发出响声"，可指闹钟或警报器等突然发出声响。

Listen! The bell is going off. 听！铃响了。

All the lights went off suddenly.
所有的灯突然都熄灭了。→（电灯）熄灭

The bottle of milk has gone off.
这瓶牛奶已经变质了。（食物、饮料）变质

A bomb went off at 8:00 p.m. yesterday.
一个炸弹昨晚八点爆炸了。→爆炸

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

考题在线 1 The boss was late for the meeting because his alarm clock didn't _____. [株洲]

A. go off B. go out C. go on

点拨: 句意: 因为闹钟没响，老板开会迟到了。go off“（闹钟）发出响声”；go out“外出；熄灭”；go on“继续，进行”。

★I _____ waiting for the bus when it began to rain heavily.

② **begin**/bɪ'gɪn/ *v.* **开始** 作及物动词，后接名词、动名词或动词不定式。

e.g. After doing the dishes, he began sweeping/to sweep the floor.

洗完餐具后，他开始扫地。

They are starting/beginning to learn English.

他们开始学习英语。

She started/began to understand her parents.

她开始理解她的父母了。

begin 和 start 含义相同，用法也相近。start 与 begin 后只能接动词不定式的情况：

① 当 start 与 begin 用于进行时态时。

② 当 start 与 begin 后面所接的宾语为表示心理活动的动词（如 feel, know, understand 等）时。

考题在线 2 I was beginning _____ angry.

A. to getting B. got

C. to get D. get

点拨: 考查非谓语动词。begin to do sth. 开始做某事。

③ **【高频】heavily**/'hevɪli/*adv.* **在很大程度上；大量地** 形容雨、雪下得大，相当于 hard。

e.g. Though it was raining heavily/hard, they were still working hard. 虽然雨下得很大，他们还在努力地工作。

考题在线 3 It rained _____ yesterday. I had to stay at home.

A. heavily B. quietly

C. hardly D. quickly

小贴士: 形容风刮得大时常用 strongly。

点拨: 本题用语境分析法。heavily“在很大程度上；大量地”；quietly“安静地”；hardly“几乎不”；quickly“快速地”。由后句句意“我不得不待在家里”可推知“昨天雨下得很大”。

方法真题练

★I called at seven and you didn't pick up. 敲黑板 动副结构短语

④ **pick up(=pick up the phone) 接电话**

e.g. Why didn't you pick up/answer the phone?

你为什么不接电话？

Please help me pick up the book.

= Please help me pick the book up.

请帮我把书捡起来。

Please help me pick it up.

请帮我把它捡起来。 代词放中间



pick up the bottle 捡起瓶子



pick up his son 接他的儿子



pick up a heavy cold 染上重感冒



pick up the phone 接电话

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考题在线 4 —Look! What's on the ground?

—Oh, it's my sweater. Please _____ for me. [龙东]

A. pick up it B. pick it up C. pick it out

点拨：本题用语法判定法。pick up 捡起，pick out 挑选，都属于“动词＋副词”结构，代词放在短语中间。问句“看！什么在地上？”提示用 pick up，表示“捡起来”。

That's strange.

速记小筏：

strangeness *n.*[U]
|
strange *adj.*—strangely *adv.*
|
stranger（陌生人）*n.*[C]

⑤ **strange**/streɪndʒ/*adj.*(unusual or surprising, especially in a way that is difficult to understand) 奇特的；奇怪的

e.g. What a strange idea! 多么奇特的想法！

He stands in a strange street.

他站在一条陌生的街道上。

考题在线 5 用所给词的适当形式填空：

My mom often tells me not to talk to _____ (strange).

考题在线答案 1. A 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. strangers

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

（答案见 282 页）

听力技巧

首句判定法（听录音时，抓住材料中段首的关键语句，能使我们更好地理解事件发生的情况，抓住材料中人物的感情基调。）

听力过程

课文听力 1b

一、听 1b 选择正确答案

1. From the passage, which of the following sentences is TRUE?

A. The boy went to play basketball yesterday.

B. The woman had an umbrella.

C. The man got wet!

二、听 2a 选择正确答案

课文听力 2a

2. What time did he wake up yesterday?

A. At seven thirty.

B. At eight.

C. At eight thirty.

3. What was he doing at the time of rain?

A. He was at school.

B. He was at home.

C. He was waiting for the bus.

4. What did the speaker think of yesterday?

A. Terrible. B. Good. C. Happy.

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

（答案见 282 页）

一、根据句意及所给提示写出单词或短语，补全句子

1. There is an _____（闹钟）on her table.
2. When I got off the bus, it _____（开始）to rain.
3. While the lights were changing to red, a car _____（突然）appeared round the corner. [天津改编]
4. My hands are wet. Could you please help me _____（接电话）the phone?
5. It is _____（奇怪的）to wear such a scarf in summer.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

二、单项选择

6. How _____ it rained yesterday! We had to cancel our football match.

A. heavily　　B. light

C. heavy　　D. lightly

7. Sally was late for school because her clock didn't ring loudly. [凉山]

A. get off　　B. go off

C. put off　　D. turn off

8. The train stopped to _____ the passengers.

A. look up　　B. catch up

C. pick up　　D. clean up

9. I heard a(n) _____ noise just now. It made me scared.

A. beautiful　　B. typical

C. strange　　D. interesting

10. The Monkey King can make 72 changes to his shape and size, _____ himself into different animals and objects. [攀枝花]

A. turned　　B. to turn

C. turning　　D. turn

Period 2 Section A (3a–3c)

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

3a Read the passage and answer the questions. 阅读这篇文章并回答问题。

1. What was the weather like before the heavy rain started? 在开始下大雨之前天气如何?
2. What was the neighborhood like after the storm? 暴风雨之后附近情况如何?

课文朗读 3a

The Storm/stɔ:(r)m/ Brought People Closer Together 暴风雨使人们的关系更近了

Ben could hear strong winds/wɪndz/ outside his home in Alabama/ˌælə'bæmə/. Black clouds were making the sky very dark. With no light/laɪt/ ① outside ②, it felt like ③ midnight. The news on TV reported/rɪ'pɔ:(r)tɪd/ ④ that a heavy rainstorm was in the area/'eəriə/, /'eriə/.

在亚拉巴马州本可以听到他家外面的狂风。乌云使天空非常暗。外面没有光亮，感觉就像半夜一样。电视上的新闻报道说这个地区有一场大的暴风雨。

Everyone in the neighborhood was busy. Ben's dad was putting pieces of wood/wʊd/ over the windows/'wɪndəʊz/ while his mom was making sure the flashlights/'flæʃlaɪts/ and radio were working. She also put some candles and matches/'mætʃɪz/ on the table.

附近的每个人都在忙。本的爸爸正在把一块块木头放在窗户上面，同时他妈妈在确认手电筒和收音机都能正常使用。她还把一些蜡烛和火柴放在桌子上。

Ben was helping his mom make dinner when the rain began to beat/bi:t/ ⑤ heavily against /ə'genst/ ⑥ the windows. After dinner, they tried to play a card game, but it was hard to have fun with a serious storm happening outside.

本正在帮他妈妈做晚饭，这时雨水开始重重地敲打窗户。晚饭后，他们想要玩牌类游戏，但是外面正下着这么大的暴风雨，很难玩得开心。

Ben could not sleep at first. He finally fell asleep/ə'sli:p/ ⑦ when the wind was dying down ⑧

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

at around 3:00 a.m. When he woke up ⑨, the sun was rising/'raɪzɪŋ/ ⑩. He went outside with his family and found the neighborhood in a mess. Fallen/'fɔ:lən/ trees, broken windows and rubbish were everywhere. They joined the neighbors to help clean up the neighborhood together. Although the storm broke many things apart/ə'pɑ:(r)t/, it brought families and neighbors closer together.

本起初睡不着觉。当风在大约凌晨三点逐渐变弱时，他终于睡着了。当他醒来时，太阳正在升起。他和家人一起出去，发现附近一片狼藉。倒下的树，破碎的窗户和垃圾到处都是。他们加入到邻居中一起帮忙清扫街区。尽管暴风雨毁坏了许多东西，它却使家庭和邻里之间的关系更近了。

3b Complete the sentences using information from the passage. 使用文章中的信息完成句子。

1. When the news on TV was reported, strong winds _____ outside.
   当电视上的新闻报道的时候，强风在外面_____。
2. While Ben's mom was making sure the radio was working, his dad _____.
   当本的妈妈正在确认收音机能正常使用时，他爸爸_____。
3. Ben _____ when the heavy rain finally started.
   当大雨最终开始下时，本_____。
4. When Ben _____ at 3:00 a.m., the wind _____.
   当在凌晨三点本_____时，风_____。

3c Discuss the questions with a partner. 和搭档讨论这些问题。

"Although the storm broke many things apart, it brought families and neighbors closer together." What other things can bring people closer together? How can we help each other in times of difficulty?

"尽管暴风雨毁坏了许多东西，它却使家庭和邻里之间的关系更近了。"还有什么其他的事情能使人们的关系更近呢？在有困难时我们如何帮助彼此？

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读 60分

(答案见282页)

阅读过程

读 3a，选择正确答案

1. Where did the storm happen?
A. In New York.
B. In Los Angeles.
C. In Alabama.
D. In Washington.

2. What was Ben's mother doing?
A. She was putting pieces of wood over the windows.
B. She was making sure the flashlights and radio were working.
C. She was making dinner.
D. She was watching TV.

3. What did they try to do after dinner?
A. They tried to play a card game.
B. They tried to watch TV.
C. They tried to listen to the radio.
D. They tried to go to sleep.

4. What time did Ben fall asleep?
A. At about 10:00 p.m.
B. At about 12:00 p.m.
C. At about 1:00 a.m.
D. At about 3:00 a.m.

5. What did they do the next day?
A. They helped clean the neighborhood.
B. They took a rest at home.
C. They listened to the radio at home.
D. They cleaned their own yard.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

•考点应用 •考点批注

★With no light outside, it felt like midnight.

① **light**/laɪt/ *n.* 光；光线；光亮

e.g. It's difficult to see it in the dim light.
在昏暗的光线下很难看见它。

A red traffic light means you should stop. 红色交通灯表示你应该停下。

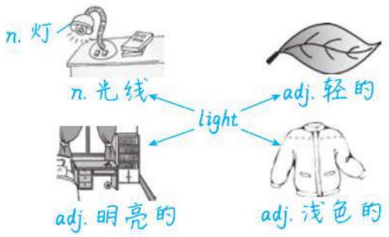
light {[U] 光；光线；光亮 [C] 发光体；（电）灯

作不可数名词

可数名词

拓展：light 还可作形容词，具有不同的含义：

light	词义	反义词
	少量的	heavy 大量的
	轻的	heavy 重的
	轻松的	heavy 繁重的
	明亮的；浅色的	dark 黑暗的；深色的



② **"with + 宾语 + 宾语补足语"结构**

e.g. She said hello to us with a smile on her face.
她面带微笑跟我们打招呼。

With all that noise going on, I can't work.
由于那噪音响着，我无法工作。

作宾补的可以是形容词、副词、介词短语、现在分词等。介词 with 此处表示一种伴随状况，它还包含着某种因果关系，可译为"由于；因为"。

③ **feel like** 感觉好像；感觉像

想要，后接 v.-ing 形式。

e.g. He didn't feel like going swimming. 他不想去游泳。

★The news on TV reported that a heavy rainstorm was in the area.

④ **report**/rɪ'pɔ:(r)t/ *v.*&*n.* 报道；公布

report
- *v.* 报道；公布 → report the discovery of a newplanet 报道新行星的发现
- *n.* 报告；汇报；报道 → make/give a report 作报告

e.g. The news reported that a tiger escaped from a zoo.
新闻报道说一只老虎从动物园跑了出来。

It is reported that the movie star is going to our city.
据报道这位电影明星要来我们城市。

常用句式，意为"据报道……"，that 在此句中引导主语从句。

★Ben was helping his mom make dinner when the rain began to beat heavily against the windows.

beat-beat-beaten

⑤ **beat**/bi:t/ *v.*(to hit someone or something many times, usually very hard)
敲打；打败

e.g. The rain was beating against the window.
雨敲打在窗户上。

动词，"敲打，打"，常和 against/on 连用。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料



win the match 赢了比赛

beat sb. (in the match) (比赛中)打败/赢了某人

She beat her brother for lying.
她因为她的兄弟说谎而打他。

Mike beat me in the 100-meter race yesterday.
迈克昨天在百米赛跑中赢了我。→动词,“打败,赢”。

【重点】辨析: beat 与 win



知识微课

一语辨异: Our school beat their school at the football match and won first prize. 我们学校在足球赛上打败了他们学校并且赢得了一等奖。

考题在线 1 Their football team was _____ in that important game. [威海]

A. won B. beaten C. failed

点拨: 本题用词义辨析法。fail 失败,由自己造成; beat 打败,被别人打败; win 赢,赢得。本句强调“被击败”。

⑥ **against** /ə'genst/ *prep.* 倚;碰;撞

e.g. Jim stood against the table.
吉姆靠着桌子站着。

意为“反对”,其反义词是 for,两者均可接名词或动名词。若表示“强烈反对”,一般用副词 strongly 修饰 against。

Are you for or against the plan?
你赞成还是反对这个计划?

I am strongly against his visit to the country.
我强烈反对他访问这个国家。

考题在线 2 Although he was _____ my opinion, the old professor didn't come up with his own. [无锡]

A. against B. on C. for D. in

★**He finally fell asleep when the wind was dying down at around 3:00 a.m.**

asleep 是表语形容词,不能位于名词前作定语,也不能用 very 等程度副词修饰,无比较级和最高级。类似用法的词还有: afraid, awake。

⑦ **asleep** /ə'sli:p/ *adj.* 睡着

e.g. Don't wake her up! She is asleep.
别吵醒她!她睡着了。

The baby is asleep. 婴儿睡着了。→强调睡着的状态

My father was so tired that he fell asleep quickly.
我爸爸如此累以至于他很快就入睡了。=get/go to sleep 强调入睡的动作

小贴士: go to bed 指“上床睡觉,就寝”这一动作,不表示是否睡着。

考题在线 3 Jimmy could not sleep at first. He finally fell _____ when the rainstorm stopped at midnight. (sleep) [临沂]

⑧ **die down** 逐渐变弱;逐渐消失

e.g. After a while, the wind began to die down.
过了一会儿,风开始逐渐变弱。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

He died of lung cancer. 他死于肺癌。

The man died from a car accident.
这个男人死于一场车祸。

This kind of bird has died out in the world.
这种鸟已经在世界上灭绝了。

与 die 相关的其他搭配
①die of（患病）死亡（原因多来自内部）
②die from（因伤）死亡（原因多来自外部）
③die out 灭绝；消失

When he woke up, the sun was rising.

⑨ **wake up** 醒；醒来；唤醒；弄醒

当宾语是代词时，须放在 wake 和 up 中间。

e.g. The children woke me up.
孩子们把我吵醒了。wake sb. up 唤醒某人

⑩ **rise**/raɪz/*v.*(rose/rəʊz/)& *n.* 升起；增加；提高

e.g. The sun rises in the east. 太阳从东方升起。

辨析：rise 与 raise

- rise(rose, risen)：（不及物动词）升起；增加；提高　主语自身移向较高位置
- raise(raised, raised)：（及物动词）举起；提高　主语发出的动作作用于其他事物



rise 升起



raise 举起

一语辨异：We raise the national flag at the time when the sun rises. 我们在太阳升起的时候升国旗。

考题在线 4 He told me the river _____ two inches this morning.

A. rose　　B. raised　　C. is rising　　D. is raising

点拨：本题用语法判定法。表示事物自身上升应用 rise，由主句的时态可知宾语从句也应用一般过去时。

考题在线答案　1. B　2. A　3. asleep　4. A

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练　稳拿中考基础 20分

（答案见282页）

一、用括号内所给单词的适当形式填空

1. Jack, please go to buy a box of _____(match).
2. Almost everyone knows that the sun _____ (rise) in the east.
3. You mustn't walk on the wet hill path because you might _____(fall) and hurt yourself.
4. It was _____(wind) and Jake felt cold.
5. The strong wind _____(die) down at midnight.

二、根据汉语完成句子，每空一词

6. 有很多工作要做，我不能去看医生。
_____ _____ _____ to do, I couldn't go to see the doctor.
7. 好像马上就要下雨了。
It _____ _____ rain soon.
8. 海浪冲击着海岸，拍打着岩石。
The waves _____ _____ the shore and the rocks.
9. 杰克想要醒来，但睡意使他又沉入梦乡。
Jake wanted to _____ _____, but sleep held him back.
10. 当风在大约凌晨三点逐渐变弱时，他终于睡着了。
He finally _____ _____ when the wind was _____ _____ at around 3:00 a.m.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 3 Section A（Grammar Focus-4c）

I. 课文原文、译文

Grammar Focus 语法聚焦

What were you doing at eight last night? 昨晚 8 点你在做什么？	I was taking a shower. 我正在洗澡。
What was she doing at the time of the rainstorm? 当暴风雨来临时她正在做什么？	She was doing her homework. 她正在做她的家庭作业。
What was he doing when the rainstorm came? 当暴风雨来临时他正在做什么？	He was reading in the library when the rainstorm came. 当暴风雨来临时他正在图书馆读书。
What was Ben doing when it began to rain heavily? 开始下大雨的时候，本正在做什么？	When it began to rain, Ben was helping his mom make dinner. 开始下雨的时候，本正在帮他妈妈做晚饭。
What was Jenny doing while Linda was sleeping? 当琳达正在睡觉时，珍妮正在做什么？	While Linda was sleeping, Jenny was helping Mary with her homework. 当琳达正在睡觉时，珍妮正在帮助玛丽做家庭作业。

4a Look at the table and write sentences with both *while* and *when*.

看这张表格，并用 while 和 when 写句子。

John 约翰	Mary 玛丽
take photos 拍照	buy a drink 买饮料
play the piano 弹钢琴	leave the house 离开房子
clean his room 打扫他的房间	turn on the radio 打开收音机
shop 购物	take the car to the car wash 把车送去洗车场

While John was taking photos, Mary bought a drink. 当约翰正在拍照时，玛丽买了饮料。

John was taking photos when Mary bought a drink. 约翰正在拍照，这时玛丽买了饮料。

4b Fill in the blanks with *was*, *were*, *when* or *while*. 用 was, were, when 或 while 填空。

At 7:00 a.m., I woke up. _____ I _____ making my breakfast, my brother _____ listening to the radio. _____ I was eating, the radio news talked about a car accident near our home. My brother and I went out right away to have a look. _____ we got to the place of the accident, the car _____ in bad shape from hitting a tree. But luckily, the driver _____ fine. The roads _____ icy/'aɪsi/ because of the heavy snow from the night before.

在上午 7:00，我醒来了。_____我_____做早饭，我弟弟_____听收音机。_____我正在吃饭时，广播新闻谈论一起在我们家附近的汽车事故。我和我弟弟立刻出去看。_____我们到达事故现场，那辆汽车因为撞到一棵树_____变形了。但幸运的是，司机_____没事。道路_____结了冰，因为前一个晚上下了大雪。

4c What were you doing at these times last Sunday? Fill in the chart.Then ask your partner.

上周日这些时间你正在做什么？填写表格。然后问一问你的搭档。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

A: What were you doing at nine o'clock last Sunday morning? 上周日早上 9:00 你正在做什么?

B: I was sleeping. How about you? 我正在睡觉。你呢?

A: I was doing my homework. 我正在做作业。

B: You're kidding/'kɪdɪŋ/! ①你在开玩笑吧!

	You 你	Your partner 你的搭档
9:00 a.m. 上午 9:00		
11:30 a.m. 上午 11:30		
4:00 p.m. 下午 4:00		
9:00 p.m. 晚上 9:00		

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用 •考点批注

① **You're kidding!** 常用于口语中,表示说话人对所听到的话表示惊讶或不相信。也可以说"Are you kidding?"

e.g. —Simon didn't pass the English test.
西蒙没通过英语测试。
—You're kidding! He is really good at English.
你在开玩笑吧!他很擅长英语。

作动词,意为"开玩笑;欺骗"。

They've got three kids. 他们有 3 个孩子。

可数名词,意为"小孩;年轻人"。

Ⅲ. 单元语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

过去进行时

过去进行时表示在过去某一时刻或某一时间段内正在进行或发生的动作。

考点 1 过去进行时的构成及其肯定式、否定式和疑问式及简略答语。过去进行时由"was/were + *v.*-ing"构成。

e.g. Peter was reading a book in the library when the rainstorm came.
当暴风雨来临时,彼得正在图书馆读书。

过去进行时的各种句式。

句式	构成
肯定句	主语 + was/were +*v.*-ing...
否定句	主语 + was/were+not +*v.*-ing...
一般疑问句	Was/Were + 主语 +*v.*-ing...?
特殊疑问句	特殊疑问词 +was/were (+ 主语) +*v.*-ing...?

e.g. The students were drawing pictures at five yesterday afternoon.
昨天下午 5 点学生们正在画画。
We were not watching TV at that time.
那个时候我们没在看电视。
Was he playing football this time yesterday?
昨天这个时候他正在踢足球吗?
What was he doing at seven last night?
昨天晚上 7 点他正在做什么?

考题在线 1 —I went to see you yesterday evening. But you weren't in. Where were you then?
—I _____ a walk by the lake with my father.
[乐山]

A. was having B. am having
C. have had

点拨: 本题用关键词法。"昨天晚上我来看你,但是

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

你不在家。那个时候你在哪里？”“我和我爸爸在湖边散步。”then“那时”是本题的关键词，表示过去的时间点正在做某事，要用过去进行时。

考点2 过去进行时的常用时间状语：过去进行时常用then（那时），at nine last night（昨晚9点），at that time（当时），at five yesterday（昨天5点），the whole morning（整个上午），at this time yesterday（昨天这个时候）等作时间状语。

e.g. What were you doing at 8:30 yesterday evening? 昨天晚上8: 30你在做什么?

It was snowing heavily at this time yesterday. 昨天的这个时候雪正下得很大。

考题在线2 Sorry, I didn't see you, because I _____ a picture. [河北]

A. draw　　B. drew

C. was drawing　　D. have drawn

点拨：本题用语境分析法。句意为“抱歉，我（刚才）没有看见你，因为我在画画”。由didn't see可知，该动作发生在过去，所以是过去的某个时刻正在画画。

考点3 过去进行时与一般过去时的区别：

一般过去时	过去某个时间发生过的动作或存在的状态
过去进行时	过去某一时刻或某一时间段内正在进行或发生的动作

e.g. David wrote a letter to his friend last night.

戴维昨晚给他的朋友写了封信。（信写完了）

David was writing a letter to his friend last night.

戴维昨晚正给他的朋友写信。（信不一定写完）

速记小筏：过去进行时速记口诀：
过去进行最好记，was/were加doing；
特定时间有暗示，过去某刻某时段；
肯定主语位句首，一般问句be提前；
否定句式更简单，be后仅把not添。

考题在线3 —Did you hear the strange noise next door at around 10 o'clock last night?

—No. I _____ my favorite music in my bedroom.

A. listen

B. listened to

C. was listening to

D. am listening to

点拨：句意：“昨晚你10点钟左右听到隔壁奇怪的声音了吗？”“没有，那时我正在我的卧室听我最喜欢的音乐。”由at around 10 o'clock last night可判断该空应用过去进行时。

考题在线答案 1. A　2. C　3. C

Ⅳ. 单元语法专练 夺取中考语法满分

（答案见282页）

单项选择

1. —Why are you so late today?

—Three buses went by without stopping while I _____ at the bus stop. [苏州]

A. am waiting　　B. waited

C. have waited　　D. was waiting

2. —Did you watch the basketball match on TV last night?

—I wanted to, but my father _____ his favorite TV program. [乐山]

A. watched　　B. was watching

C. watches

3. I _____ some washing when you called me last night. [益阳]

A.was doing　　B. am doing

C.were doing

4. Tony was drawing a picture _____ I was doing my homework. [天津]

A. if　　B. because

C. while　　D. until

5. They _____ about a comedy this time yesterday. [临沂]

A. were talking　　B. are talking

C. have talked　　D. will talk

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 4 Section B（1a–1d）

Ⅰ. 课文原文、译文

1a **Think of a time when you were late for or couldn't go to an event. What was the event? What was the reason why you were late or couldn't go? Tell your partner the story.** 想想你迟到或是不能去的比赛。是什么比赛？你迟到或是不能去的原因是什么？告诉你的搭档这个故事。

1b **Listen and write short answers to the questions.** 听并简要回答这些问题。

1. What event happened at the school yesterday? 昨天学校进行了什么比赛？

_____

2. Who missed the event? 谁错过了这个比赛？

_____

3. Which team won at the event? 在比赛中哪个队赢了？

_____

课文听力1b

1c **Listen again. Number the events [1-6] in the order they happened.** 再听一遍。给事件按照它们发生的顺序标上序号 [1–6]。

_____ Kate saw a dog by the side of the road. 凯特在路边看到一只狗。

_____ Kate got to the bus stop. 凯特到达公交车站。

_____ Kate called the Animal Helpline/'helplaɪn/. 凯特给动物保护热线打电话。

__1__ Kate left the house. 凯特离开房子。

_____ Kate waited for someone to walk by. 凯特等着有人经过。

_____ Kate realized/'rɪəlaɪzd/, /'riːəlaɪzd/ ① her bag was still at home. 凯特意识到她的包还在家。

1d **Talk about why Kate missed the school basketball competition. Student A begins a sentence with *while* or *when*. Student B completes the sentence.** 谈论为什么凯特错过了学校篮球比赛。学生 A 用 while 或 when 给出句子的开头，学生 B 完成句子。

A: When the school basketball competition started... 当学校篮球比赛开始时……

B: When the school basketball competition started, Kate was still making her way ② to school. 当学校篮球比赛开始时，凯特仍然在赶往学校的路上。

Ⅱ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

（答案见 282 页）

听力过程

听 1b 选择正确答案

1. What competition did they have yesterday?

A. The basketball competition.

B. The football competition.

C. The volleyball competition.

2. Who wasn't at the competition?

A. John. B. Kate. C. John and Kate.

课文听力1b

3. What did Kate leave at home?

A. Her bag. B. Her key. C. Her dog.

4. How did Kate go to school probably?

A. By bike. B. By bus. C. On foot.

5. What did Kate do to help the dog?

A. She took it home.

B. She took it to the hospital.

C. She called the Animal Helpline.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注 •考点应用

realize 后可接名词作宾语，也可接宾语从句。

★**Kate realized her bag was still at home.**

① **realize**/'rɪəlaɪz/, /'riːəlaɪz/ *v.* 理解；领会；认识到

e.g. She didn't realize her mistake. 她没有认识到她的错误。

I didn't realize that you were so unhappy. 我没有察觉到你那么不开心。

辨析：realize 与 come true 宾语从句

realize 还可意为"（梦想、愿望等）实现"，等同 come true，但二者用法不同。

realize	用作及物动词 实现的梦想、愿望等，应跟在realize后作宾语。
come true	用作不及物动词短语 实现的梦想、愿望等，应在come true之前作主语。

e.g. I want to realize my dream by studying hard.

我想通过努力学习来实现我的梦想。

His hope of living to be 100 did not come true.

他想活到一百岁的愿望没有实现。

由 way 构成的短语还有：

① by the way 顺便问一下

② in the /one's way 挡路；妨碍

③ on the /one's way to 在（某人）去……的路上

④ lose one's way 迷路

★**When the school basketball competition started, Kate was still making her way to school.**

② **make one's way** 前往；费力地前进

e.g. Will you be able to make your own way to the bus stop?

你能自己去公共汽车站吗？

"make one's way to/towards+地点"意为"前往某地，到某地方去"。

He was still making his way though it was raining heavily.

尽管雨下得很大，他仍然在费力前进。

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

☞（答案见282页）

单项选择

1. I am making my way _____ home now.

A. to B. / C. at D. on

2. When the class began, I was still making _____ way to school. 【导学号：2039901】

A. me B. my

C. mine D. myself

3. Today, more and more people begin to _____ the importance of saving water.

A. realize B. waste

C. control D. cause

4. Amon _____ his ship in a big storm when a giant fish came out of the sea. [苏州]

A. will sail B. is sailing

C. was sailing D. has sailed

5. —What's the matter, Jack?

—I _____ down while I _____ on the ice. I got hurt badly. [达州]

A. was falling; skated

B. fell; was skating

C. fell; skated

D. was falling; skating

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 5 Section B（2a–2e）

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文及导读

原文译文 · 导读　　导读批注

Pre-reading（读前）

2a Look at the pictures and title in the passage/'pæsɪdʒ/. What do you think the passage is about?

看图片及文章的标题。你认为这篇文章是关于什么的?

While-reading（读中）

课文朗读 2b

2b Read the passage and answer the questions.

读文章并回答问题。

1. What are the two events in the passage? 文章中的两个事件是什么?
2. When did they happen? 它们是什么时候发生的?

Reading the Title and First Sentences 读标题和第一句

The title can be helpful for you to understand a text. It is also a good idea to read the first sentence of each paragraph before you read the whole text. 标题对你理解一篇文章很有帮助。在你阅读整篇文章之前，读每个段落的第一句也是一个好主意。

批 体裁：记叙文

Do You Remember What You Were Doing?

你记得你（当时）在做什么吗?

People often remember what they were doing when they heard the news of important events in history.① In America, for example, many people remember what they were doing on April 4, 1968. This was an important event in American history. On this day, Dr. Martin/'mɑ:(r)tɪn/ Luther/'lu:θə(r)/ King/kɪŋ/ was killed②. Although some people may not remember who killed him, they remember what they were doing when they heard the news.

批 句子：总起全文，是文章主旨句。

批 词语：用来举例说明，是第一句的例证。同时引出实例，起着承上启下的作用。

人们经常记得当他们听到历史上重大事件的消息时自己在做什么。在美国，举例来说，很多人记得在 1968 年 4 月 4 日那天他们正在做什么。在美国历史上这是一个非常重要的事件。这一天，马丁·路德·金博士遇害了。尽管一些人可能不记得是谁杀害了他，但是他们记得当他们听到这个消息时他们在做什么。

批 背景：
when: April 4, 1968
who: Dr. King
what: Be killed

Robert Allen/'ælən/ is now over 50, but he was a school pupil/'pju:pl/ at that time. "I was at home with my parents," Robert remembers. "We were eating dinner in the kitchen when we heard the news on the radio. The news

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

reporter said, 'Dr. King died just 10 minutes ago'. My parents were completely/kəm'pli:tli/ shocked/ʃɒkt/, /ʃɑ:kt/! My parents did not talk after that, and we finished the rest of③ our dinner in silence/'saɪləns/④."

罗伯特·艾伦现在50多岁了，但在那时，他还是个小学生。"我和父母待在家里。"罗伯特记得。"从收音机上听到这个消息的时候，我们正在厨房吃晚饭。新闻记者说：'金博士在10分钟前去世了'。我的父母完全震惊了！我的父母在那之后没有说话，我们沉默地吃完了我们剩下的晚餐。"

批背景：
when: September 11, 2001
what: the World Trade Center was taken down
where: New York

More recently/'ri:sntli/⑤, most Americans remember what they were doing when the World Trade/treɪd/ Center in New York was taken down⑥ by terrorists/'terərɪsts/. Even the date/deɪt/⑦ — September 11, 2001—has meaning to⑧ most Americans.

近来，绝大多数美国人都记得纽约世贸大楼被恐怖分子摧毁时他们在做什么。甚至2001年9月11日这个日子，对大多数美国人都有意义。

批结构：总分结构
总：People often remember what...
分：The first event: para 1-2
分：The second event: para 3-4

This was a day Kate Smith will never forget. She remembers working in her office near the two towers/'taʊə(r)z/. "My friend shouted that a plane just hit the World Trade Center! I didn't believe him at first⑨, but then I looked out of the window and realized that it was true. I was so scared that I could hardly⑩ think clearly after that."

批句子：本句用一个句型"so...that..."和两个副词"hardly, clearly"形象地描述了当时Kate的惊悚心境，给读者带来身临其境的感受。

这一天凯特·史密斯永远不会忘记。她记得当时（自己）正在距两座塔楼不远的办公室工作。"我的朋友大喊，一架飞机刚刚撞了世贸大楼！起初我不相信他，但之后我向窗外望去，并且意识到这是真的。我惊恐万分，以至于在那之后我几乎无法清晰地思考。"

Post-reading（读后）

写作小练笔 ☞（答案见143页）

2c Read the passage again. Are the following statements true (T) or false (F), or is the information not given(NG)? 再读一遍文章。下列陈述正确(T)还是错误(F)，或是信息未给出(NG)?

_____1. Everyone in America remembers who killed Dr. King. 在美国的每个人都记得谁杀害了金博士。

_____2. Robert Allen was eating lunch when Dr. King was killed. 当金博士被杀害时，罗伯特·艾伦正在吃午饭。

_____3. Robert's parents were shocked to hear the news. 罗伯特的父母听到这个消息很震惊。

_____4. Kate Smith was watching a movie when a plane hit the World Trade Center. 当飞机撞击世贸大楼时，凯特·史密斯正在看电影。

_____5. Kate didn't think her friend was telling the truth/tru:θ/⑪ about the event. 凯特认为她朋友没有告诉她这个事件的实情。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

2d Underline sentences from the passage with similar meanings to the ones below.

在文中与下列句子意思相近的句子下面画线。

1. Not everyone will remember who killed him, but they can remember what they were doing when they heard that he got killed. 并非人人会记得是谁杀害了他，但他们会记得当他们听说他被杀害时，他们正在做什么。

宾语从句　宾语从句

2. No one said anything for the rest of dinner. 接下来的晚餐时间没有人说话。
3. September 11, 2001—the date alone means something to most people in the US.
   2001 年 9 月 11 日——单这个日期对大多数美国人来说都有意义。
4. I had trouble thinking clearly after that because I was very afraid.
   在那之后我无法清晰地思考，因为我太害怕了。

2e How much do you remember about the events in the passage? Test your partner.

对于文章中的事件你记住多少？测试你的搭档。

A: When did Dr. Martin Luther King die? 马丁·路德·金博士什么时候去世的?

B: He died on... 他在……去世。

课文背诵指南

Do You Remember What You Were Doing?

Para. 1~2

Dr. Martin Luther King was killed.
When: on April 4, 1968
Where: in America
Robert Allen: eating dinner with his parents
Feeling: completely shocked



Para. 3~4

The World Trade Center was taken down.
When: on September 11, 2001
Where: in New York
Kate Smith: working in her office near the two towers
Feeling: so scared that...hardly think clearly



Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练　专攻中考阅读 60分

(答案见283页)

阅读策略

同义词/句转化法（在做阅读理解时，有时候问题的设置就是考查对某些同义词转化的理解，注意某些同义词或同义句的不同表达，能快速解答这类试题。）

阅读过程

一、速读 2b，选择正确答案

1. How did Kate Smith feel when she first heard the news?

A. Unbelievable.　　B. Scared.
C. Excited.　　D. Happy.

二、细读 2b，选择正确答案

2. When was Dr. King killed?

A. On April 3, 1968.
B. On April 4, 1968.
C. On April 3, 1986.
D. On April 4, 1986.

拓展阅读

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

3. What was Robert Allen when Dr. King was killed?
A. He was a worker.
B. He was a clerk.
C. He was a teacher.
D. He was a student.

4. How did Robert Allen know the news about Dr. King?
A. By watching TV.
B. By reading a newspaper.
C. By listening to the radio.
D. By surfing the Internet.

5. Where was Kate Smith when the World Trade Center was taken down?
A. She was shopping with her friend in the mall.
B. She was working in her office.
C. She was having coffee at her home.
D. She was studying at school.

Ⅲ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

·考点批注　·考点应用

★**People often remember what they were doing when they heard the news of important events in history.**

① 【句法分析】本句中 **what they...in history** 是 **what** 引导的宾语从句，作 **remember** 的宾语。在 **what** 引导的宾语从句中，又包含一个 **when** 引导的时间状语从句。

Genius only means hard-working all one's life.
天才只意味着终身不懈地努力。

e.g. I just wonder what it is that makes him so excited.
我只是想知道究竟是什么使他如此兴奋。
She asked me when the meeting would begin.
她问我会议什么时候开始。

★**On this day, Dr. Martin Luther King was killed.**

一般过去时的被动语态，其结构为"was/were+动词的过去分词"。

② **be killed** 被杀害

e.g. Some graduates were sent to mountain villages to teach children there.
一些毕业生被派往山村教那里的孩子们了。

考题在线 1 The China International Search and Rescue Team has brought help and hope to people in disasters around the world since it _____ 18 years ago. [南京]
A. set up　B.is set up　C. was set up　D. will be set up

点拨：本题用语法判定法。由 18 years ago 可知发生在过去，主语 it 和 set up 之间是被动关系，故应用一般过去时的被动语态。

"the rest of+名词"作主语时，谓语动词的数应与 of 后的名词的数保持一致。

★**My parents did not talk after that, and we finished the rest of our dinner in silence.**

③ **the rest of** ……的剩余部分

e.g. The rest of the pizza was eaten by Bill. 剩余的比萨让比尔给吃了。
was 与 the pizza 保持一致

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Tom is from England and the rest of us are from China.
汤姆来自英格兰，我们其余的人来自中国。

I took two apples. The rest were yours.
我拿走两个苹果。剩下的是你的。

the rest 作主语时，若替代可数名词复数，谓语动词用复数形式；若替代可数名词单数或不可数名词，谓语动词用单数形式。

替代 apples，用 were

④ **silence**/'saɪləns/ *n.*(a complete lack of noise or sound) 沉默；缄默；无声

e.g. As night fell, everything was in silence.
当夜幕降临，一切都静悄悄的。

silence 是 silent 的名词形式，常用短语为 in silence（沉默；无声）。

★More recently, … was taken down by terrorists.

⑤ **recently**/'ri:sntli/ *adv.* 不久前；最近

e.g. Mr.Wang has recently returned home from Europe.
王先生最近从欧洲回家了。

recently 其比较级和最高级形式分别为 more recently，most recently。其形容词为 recent，意为“最近的；近来的”。

⑥ **take down** 拆除；往下拽；记录

被动结构为 be taken down

e.g. Could you please help me take down this tent?
你能帮我拆除这顶帐篷吗？

拆掉；拆除

I forgot to take down his telephone number.
我忘了记下他的电话号码了。

写下；记下

考题在线 2 I haven't seen them _____(recent). [武威]

★Even the date—September 11, 2001—has meaning to most Americans.

⑦ **date** /deɪt/ *n.* 日期；日子

指的日期往往是特指的，其前常加 the。

e.g. —What's the date today? 今天是几号?
—It's May 5th. 5月5日。
The date on the letter was September 30th.
信上的日期是9月30日。

date 一词多义



v. 约会



n. 日期；日子

⑧ **have meaning to sb.** 对某人有（特殊的）意义

敲黑板 相当于 mean something to sb.

e.g. The old house has meaning to the famous writer.
这栋老房子对这个著名作家来说有（特殊的）意义。

★I didn't believe him at first, …

⑨ **at first** 起初；起先

多用于句首或句末，暗示与后来的情况或动作不同，其反义短语为 at last“最后；终于”。

e.g. The work was hard at first, but I got used to it later.
起初这工作很难，不过后来我习惯了。

考题在线 3 _____, the Internet was only used by the government, but now it's widely used in every field.

A. As usual B. At first C. After all D. So far

点拨：用关键词法解题。at first 起初；起先，与后面的 but now 进行对比，符合题意。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

辨析：at first 与 first of all

- at first 与 at the beginning 同义，表示“起初（但后来……）”，与后来发生的事相对照。
- first of all 与 first 同义，表示“首先；最重要”，说明顺序，后面常接 next，then 等。

At first, I didn't want to go, but I soon changed my mind.
起初我并不想去，但很快我改变了主意。

First of all, open the window.
首先，打开窗户。

★I was so scared that I could hardly think clearly after that.

⑩ **hardly** *adv.* 几乎不；几乎没有

e.g. She hardly ate anything today.
今天她几乎没吃任何东西。

辨析：hardly 与 hard

hardly	副词，意为“几乎不；几乎没有”，含否定意义，在句中常位于助动词、be 动词和情态动词之后，实义动词之前；用于反意疑问句时，其附加问句要用肯定形式。
hard	①既可作形容词，意为“硬的；困难的；艰苦的”； ②也可作副词，意为“努力地；猛烈地”。

e.g. She hardly ever calls you, does she?
她几乎从不给你打电话，对吗？

The ice is hard enough to skate on.
这冰很硬，可以在上面滑冰。（作形容词）

The boss asked us to work hard.
老板让我们努力工作。（作副词）

考题在线 4 I could _____ control my feelings at the moment. The song brought back so many childhood memories. [滨州]

A. hardly　　B. really
C. clearly　　D. nearly

★Kate didn't think her friend was telling the truth about the event.

truth 是形容词 true 的名词形式，其副词是 truly。

⑪ **truth**/tru:θ/*n.*(the true facts about sth.) 实情；事实

e.g. He told me the truth. And I truly believe it is true.
他把实情告诉了我。我确实相信那是真的。

说实话；老实说，一般放在句首。

To tell the truth, I fell in love with Shanghai when I got there.
老实说，一到上海，我就爱上了那里。

考题在线 5 —Anna, how does the dress look on me?
—To tell you the _____, it doesn't fit you well. [宿迁]

A. trade　　B. trust
C. truth　　D. treat

点拨：本题用固定搭配法。to tell you the truth 说实话，是固定搭配。

小贴士：与 to tell(you) the truth 结构类似的插入语有：to be honest 坦白地说；to be sure 诚然；to start with=to begin with 起初，开始时

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

核心素养之文化意识

诚信乃立身之本

诚信是诚实和信用的合称。即待人处事真诚、老实、讲信誉，一诺千金。我们正处于青少年时期，这是塑造人格(personality)、修养品德的重要时期。我们怎样对待每一位同学，如何上好每一堂课，怎样面对每一次考试，都是对诚信的考验(test)。随意糟蹋自己的诚信，用虚假的(false)学业和虚伪的态度(attitude)是难以在将来的竞争中立足的，我们应提倡尾生抱柱的精神。

素养行动 让我们做诚实守信的，值得信赖的学生。

素养行动结果 学会真诚待人，老实守信，一诺千金。

考题在线答案 1. C 2. recently 3. B 4. A 5. C

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见283页)

一、根据首字母提示或用括号内所给单词的适当形式填空

1. My father gave me a _____ (complete) new computer yesterday.
2. What's happening in Yunnan _____ (recent)?
3. He is reading a p_____ from a magazine.
4. We can see the whole city from the top of the old t_____.
5. Every p_____ in this primary school must be in the classrooms at 8 a.m.

二、单项选择

6. None of them talked. They finished their meal in _____.
   A. silence B. order
   C. place D. public
7. I don't believe the _____ of that story.
   A. reality B. real
   C. truth D. true
8. —Can you catch what I said?
   —Sorry, I can _____ understand it because you speak very quickly. [滨州]
   A. almost B. probably
   C. mostly D. hardly
9. _____, I didn't like English. But now it's my favorite subject.
   A. As usual B. At first
   C. After all D. So far
10. —Could you please tell me _____?
    —Yes.There is one on Center Street.
    【导学号：2039901】
    A. where can I buy some stamps
    B. when you will take your vacation
    C. when was the telephone invented
    D. if there are any good restaurants around here

三、根据汉语意思完成英语句子，每空一词

11. 其余的学生都通过了期末考试。
    _____ _____ _____ the students all passed the final exam.
12. 你帮我把这堵墙拆掉好吗?
    Could you help me _____ _____ the wall?
13. 当我听到你出事故后，我很震惊。
    I _____ _____ when I heard about your accident.
14. 我想做一些对自己有意义的事。
    I want to do something that _____ _____ _____ me.
15. 我们几乎不敢相信自己的眼睛。
    We _____ _____ believe our eyes.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 6 Section B（3a–Self Check）

I. 课文原文、译文

3a Make notes about an event you remember well. 对你记得清楚的一个事件作记录。

What was the event? 这个事件是什么?	
When did it happen? 它什么时候发生的?	
Where did it happen? 它在哪里发生?	
What were you doing? 你正在做什么?	
What were your friends doing? 你的朋友们正在做什么?	
Why was it important? 它为什么重要?	
Why do you remember this event? 你为什么记得这个事件?	

3b Write a short article about the important event in 3a. Try to write three paragraphs.

关于 3a 中的重要事件写一篇短文。尽量写三段。

First, write about the event(when and where it happened).

首先，写这个事件（何时何地发生）。

Next, write about what you and some of your friends were doing when this event happened.

接着，写当这个事件发生时你和你的一些朋友正在做什么。 宾语从句

Then, write about why this event was important.

然后，写这个事件为什么重要。 宾语从句

An important event（that I remember well）was _____. It happened in/on _____ at/in _____.

定语从句

我记得很清楚的一个重要事件是_____。它发生在_____在_____。

When I heard the news of this event/When this event happened, I was _____. My friends were _____.

当我听到这个事件的消息时 / 当这个事件发生时，我正_____。我的朋友们正_____。

This event is very important to me because _____. /I remember this event well because _____.

这个事件对我来说很重要，因为_____。/ 我清楚地记得这个事件是因为_____。

Self Check 自我检测

1 Fill in the blanks with *when* or *while*. 用 when 或 while 填空。

1. _____ I was walking home from school, I saw a strange light in the sky. But _____ I pointed it out to my friend, it went away._____我正从学校往家走时，我看到天空中有一道奇怪的光。但_____我把它指给我朋友，它消失了。

2. _____ I told my older brother about the strange light in the sky, he just laughed and didn't believe me._____我告诉我哥哥关于天空中那道奇怪的光，他只是大笑而并不相信我。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

3. _____ my brother was laughing, the television news reported that other people had seen the light as well. _____我哥哥正在笑，电视新闻报道说其他人也看到了这道光。 宾语从句

2 Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the words in brackets. 用括号内所给词的正确形式填空。

When I _____ (be) in the sixth grade, I _____ (join) a piano competition. I _____ (practice) for four hours every day and my piano teacher _____ (come) three times a week to _____ (help) me. Then the big day finally _____ (arrive). I _____ (be) so nervous when they _____ (call) my name. I _____ (go) up and _____ (start) to play. While I _____ (play), everyone _____ (sit) still and listened. I played the song without any mistakes. Then I _____ (wait) for them to call out the winner. When I _____ (hear) my name, my heart _____ (beat) so quickly I thought I would stop breathing. I couldn't believe it. I _____ (win)! It _____ (be) the happiest day of my life!

当我_____（在）六年级时，我_____（参加）一个钢琴比赛。我_____（练习）每天4个小时，我的钢琴老师一周_____（来）三次_____（帮助）我。然后那个重要的日子终于_____（来了）。当他们_____（叫）我的名字时我_____（是）很紧张。我_____（去）上面并且_____（开始）演奏。当我_____（弹奏）时，每个人_____（坐）一动不动地听着。我准确无误地演奏了这首曲子。然后我_____（等）他们公布冠军。当我_____（听到）我的名字时，我的心_____（跳动）如此快以至于我想我快停止呼吸了。我无法相信。我_____（赢了）！这_____（是）我生命中最开心的一天！

Ⅱ. 写作一课一法 夺取中考写作20分

写作小练笔

Dr. Martin Luther King was killed on April 4, 1968 in America. At that time Robert Allen was eating dinner and he was completely shocked.

The World Trade Center was taken down on September 11, 2001 in New York when Kate Smith was working in her office near the two towers. She was so scared that she could hardly think clearly.

Do you remember what you were doing when some events happened? Can you tell me? Thank you.

单元话题

现在请你描写一下你和你的家人昨晚7:00做的事情。参考下面几条，可适当发挥。

1. 你在做作业，而你哥哥在玩电脑游戏。
2. 你的妈妈在做饭而你的爸爸在看足球比赛。
3. 你的爷爷奶奶在聊天，你的妹妹在和宠物玩。

审题指导（把握中心，得方向分）

写这类短文时，首先要正确运用人称与时态，其次要点明事情发生的时间、地点、经过以及从这件事中明白了什么道理。

写作技法（学会方法，巧得高分）

"4W法"叙述过去发生的事

若写作话题是叙述故事或过去发生的事件，可分人物(who)、事件(what)、时间(when)、地点(where)等四要素详细叙述。

写作模板（学会套路，得基本分）

who	my elder brother, my parents, my grandparents, my little sister and I
what	do homework, play computer games, cook, watch football games, talk, play with her pet
when	at seven o'clock last night
where	at home

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

经典词句（妙用句式，得出彩分）

单词	while, talk, pet, cook, study, kitchen, game, happy, meanwhile
短语	do one's homework, play computer games, watch football games, not at all
句子	主语 + was/were doing...

范文赏析（书写工整，得印象分）

At seven o'clock last night, I was doing my homework at home. I would have an important test the next day. Meanwhile, my elder brother was playing computer games. He didn't like studying at all.

While my mother was cooking in the kitchen, my father was watching football games on TV in the living room. Where were my grandparents? They were in the living room, too. While they were talking happily with each other, my little sister was playing with her lovely pet.

名师点评：本文采用"4W 法"叙述了发生在过去的事情，叙述清晰，时态准确。

1. 开头点明过去的时间点，为下文用过去进行时叙述事件作出提示。
2. while 当……时候，常引导过去进行时的句子，运用恰当。
3. 采用设问方式，自问自答，增添了文章色彩。



Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

（答案见283页）

单元知识浓缩（根据汉语提示，用适当的单词或短语完成短文）

Yesterday, when I was _____[1]（睡觉）in the bedroom, I dreamed a strange dream. I had an unusual experience. When I went into the kitchen, I found there was no water in the fridge. So I wanted to buy some water. _____[2]（当……的时候）I was walking in the street, _____[3]（突然）a UFO landed just in front of me. You can imagine how _____[4]（奇怪的）it was!

An alien got out. I _____[5]（跟从）him to see where he was going. Suddenly, he noticed me. I was so _____[6]（害怕的）that I ran away. Then I saw a car accident. I _____[7]（打电话）the police. Some shop owners _____[8]（听说）the thing. The shops closed. The whole street was not so lively as usual. Everyone was _____[9]（沉默）. I was so frightened that I _____[10]（醒来）suddenly.

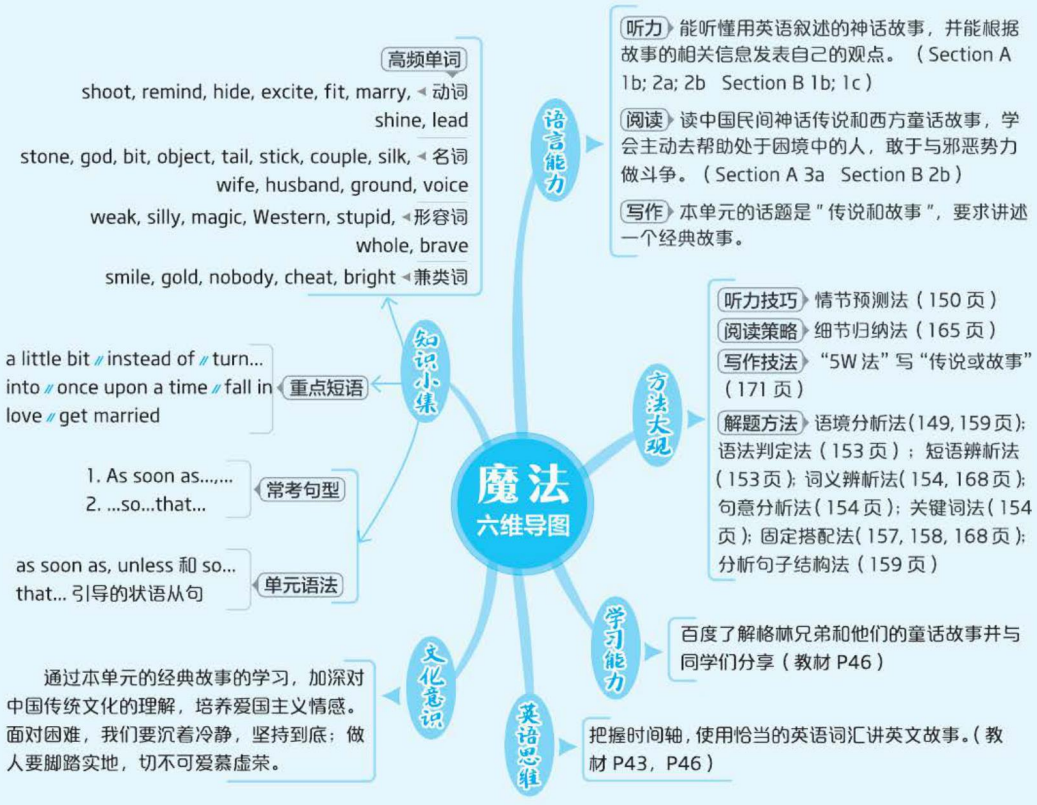
I think success has no rules, but you can learn a lot from failure.
我认为成功没有定律，但你可以从失败中学到很多东西。



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 6 An old man tried to move the mountains.

词汇表听写



记忆大师

Period 1 Section A(1a–2d)

必背单词

1. **shoot** *v.* 射击；发射→shot（过去式）→shot（过去分词）→shooting（现在分词）
2. **weak** *adj.* 虚弱的；无力的→strong（反义词）强壮的；有力的
3. **god** *n.* 神；上帝→goddess 女神
4. **remind** *v.* 提醒；使想起
5. **bit** *n.* 一点；小块→a little bit 有点儿；稍微
6. **silly** *adj.* 愚蠢的；不明事理的
7. **stone** *n.* 石头

必背短语

8. try to do sth. 尽力做某事
9. work on 从事；致力于
10. instead of 代替；反而

必背句子

11. A man told Yu Gong **that** he could never do it. 一个人告诉愚公他永远不可能做到。
12. **As soon as** the man finished talking, Yu Gong said that his family could continue to move the mountains after he died. 这个男人一说完，愚公就说他的家人在他死后可以继续移山。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 2 Section A(3a–3c)

必背单词

1. **object** *n.* 物体；物品
2. **hide** *v.* 隐藏；隐蔽→hid（过去式）→hidden（过去分词）→hiding（现在分词）
3. **tail** *n.* 尾巴
4. **magic** *adj.* 有魔力的；有神奇力量的→magician *n.* 魔术师
5. **stick** *n.* 棍；条→stick *v.* 坚持；粘住→stuck(过去式）→stuck(过去分词）
6. **excite** *v.* 使激动；使兴奋→excited *adj.* 兴奋的；激动的（主语多用人）→exciting *adj.* 使人兴奋的；令人激动的（主语多用物）
7. **Western** *adj.* 西方国家的；（尤指）欧美的；西方的（w可以小写）

必背短语

8. turn... into 变成　9. come out 出版；发行

必背句子

10. **This is because** he can make 72 changes to his shape and size, turning himself into different animals and objects.
这是因为他能使他的形状和大小做72种变化，他能把自己变成不同的动物和物体。
11. **To fight bad people**, the Monkey King uses a magic stick.
为了对付坏人，美猴王使用了一根神奇的棍子。

Period 3 Section A(Grammar Focus–4c)

必背单词

1. **fit** *v.* 适合；合身
2. **couple** *n.*（尤指）夫妻；两人；两件事物→a couple of 一对，一双；一些，几个
3. **smile** *v.* & *n.* 笑；微笑
4. **marry** *v.* 结婚→get married 结婚

必背短语

5. once upon a time 从前
6. fall in love 爱上；喜欢上
7. can't stop doing sth. 忍不住做某事

必背句子&语法

8. **As soon as** the man finished talking, Yu Gong said that his family could continue to move the mountains after he died.
这个男人一说完，愚公就说他的家人在他死后可以继续移山。
9. Because they were **so** big **that** it took a long time to walk to the other side.
因为它们如此大，以至于走到另一边要花很长时间。
10. He cannot turn himself into a man **unless** he can hide his tail. 他不能把自己变成人除非他能藏起自己的尾巴。

Period 4 Section B(1a–1d)

必背单词

1. **gold** *n.* 金子；金币→*adj.* 金色的
2. **emperor** *n.* 皇帝
3. **silk** *n.* 丝绸；丝织物
4. **nobody** *pron.* 没有人→*n.* 小人物
5. **stupid** *adj.* 愚蠢的→silly *adj.* 愚蠢的
6. **cheat** *v.* 欺骗；蒙骗→*n.* 骗子

Period 5 Section B(2a–2e)

必背单词

1. **wife** *n.* 妻子；太太→wives（复数形式）
2. **husband** *n.* 丈夫
3. **whole** *adj.* 全部的；整体的
4. **shine** *v.* 发光；照耀
5. **bright** *adv.* 光亮地；明亮地→*adj.* 明亮的；光线充足的
6. **ground** *n.* 地；地面
7. **lead** *v.* 带路；领路→led（过去式）→led（过去分词）
8. **voice** *n.* 声音→in a low voice 低声地
9. **brave** *adj.* 勇敢的；无畏的

必背短语

10. find out 查明
11. lead to 通向，导致
12. be made of... 由……制作（能看出原材料）

必背句子

13. The wife told her husband that **unless** he left the children to die in the forest, the whole family would die.
妻子告诉丈夫，如果他不能把孩子们扔到森林里让他们自生自灭，全家人都会死。
14. **What a long time** you slept in the forest!
你们在森林里睡了这么长时间！

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 1 Section A（1a–2d）

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

Language Goal: Tell a story
语言目标：讲故事

a b c d

1a Match the story titles with the pictures[a-d]. 将故事标题与图片 a–d 配对。

_____*Journey to the West*《西游记》
_____*Yu Gong Moves a Mountain*《愚公移山》
_____*Hou Yi Shoots/ʃu:ts/*① *the Suns*《后羿射日》
_____*Nu Wa Repairs the Sky*《女娲补天》

1b Listen and check (√) the facts you hear. Which story are Anna and Wang Ming talking about? 听并在你所听到的事实旁打钩（√）。安娜和王明正在谈论哪个故事？

课文听力 1b

_____The two mountains were very high and big. 这两座山非常高和大。
_____A very old man tried to move the mountains. 一个老人试图把山移走。
_____A man told Yu Gong that he could never do it.②一位人告诉愚公他永远不可能做到。

1c Discuss the questions with your partner. 和你的搭档讨论这些问题。

1. How does the story begin? 故事是怎么开始的?
2. What happened next? 接下来发生了什么?
3. Where would they put all the earth and stone/stəʊn/ from the mountains?
   他们要把所有从山上挖下来的土和石头放在哪里?

课文听力 2a

2a Listen and number the pictures [1-4] in order to tell the story.
听然后给图片 [1–4] 排序来讲述故事。

2b Listen again and (circle) the words you hear. 再听一遍并圈出你所听到的单词。

1. A man saw Yu Gong and his (children/family) when they were working on moving the mountains. 当愚公和他的（孩子们 / 家人）正在移动这些山时，一个男人看见了他们。
2. He told Yu Gong he could never do it because he was old and (poor/weak/wi:k/③).
   他告诉愚公他永远不可能做到，因为他又老又（贫穷的 / 虚弱的）。
3. As soon as the man finished (talking/speaking), Yu Gong said that his family could continue to move the mountains after he died.
   这个男人一结束（说话 / 讲话），愚公就说他的家人在他死后会继续移动这些山。
4. Finally, a god was so moved by Yu Gong that he sent (two/three) gods/gɒdz/, /gɑ:dz/ to take the mountains away. 最终，一个神被愚公深深地打动了，以至于他派了（两 / 三）个神把这些山移走了。
5. This story reminds/rɪ'maɪndz/④ us that you can never (know/see) what's possible unless you try to make it happen. 这个故事提醒我们，你永远不可能（知道 / 看到）什么是可能的，除非你努力去让它发生。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

2c Look at the pictures in 2a and tell the story in your own words.

看 2a 的图片并用你自己的话讲述故事。

2d Role-play the conversation. 分角色表演对话。

课文朗读 2d

Teacher: So what do you think about the story of Yu Gong? 那么你们是怎样认为愚公的故事的?

Wang Ming: I think it's really interesting. Yu Gong found a good way to solve his problem. 我认为真的很有意思。愚公找到了一个好方法去解决他的问题。

Claudia/'klɔ:diə/, /'klaʊdiə/**:** Really? I think it's a little bit/bɪt/ ⑤ silly/'sɪli/. It doesn't seem ⑥ very possible to move a mountain. 真的吗? 我认为有点儿愚蠢。移动一座山似乎是非常不可能的。

Wang Ming: But the story is trying to show us that anything is possible if you work hard! Yu Gong kept trying and didn't give up. 但是这个故事在试图告诉我们,如果你努力工作,任何事情都是有可能的! 愚公一直在努力,没有放弃。

Claudia: Well, I still don't agree with you. I think we should try to find other ways to solve a problem. 好吧,我仍然不同意你。我认为我们应该努力去找其他的办法来解决一个问题。

Wang Ming: But what could Yu Gong do instead of moving the mountains? 但是除了把山移开,愚公还能做什么呢?

Claudia: Well, there are many other ways. For example, he could build a road. That's better and faster than moving a mountain! 嗯,有许多其他的方法。比如,他可以修一条路。那比移一座山要更好也更快!

Teacher: You have different opinions about the story, and neither of you are wrong. There are many sides to a story and many ways to understand it. 你们对这个故事有不同的意见,并且你们都没错。一个故事有许多方面并且有多个方法去理解它。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注 •考点应用



shoot 射中;射杀;射伤



shoot at... 朝……开枪

★Hou Yi Shoots the Suns shoot-shot-shot

① **shoot**/ʃu:t/*v.*(to make a bullet or arrow come from a weapon) 射击;发射 → 射中目标(强调结果)

e.g. He shot the thief with his gun. 他用枪打死了盗贼。

He shot at a bird, but he missed it. 他向一只鸟开枪,但是他没有射中。 → 朝……射击(强调动作)

★A man told Yu Gong that he could never do it.

② 【句法分析】此处 **that** 引导宾语从句,主句为一般过去时,从句一般也要使用过去的某种时态。

e.g. The teacher told us that the moon goes around the earth.

老师告诉我们月球围着地球转。

小贴士: 宾语从句如果叙述的是客观事实或者真理,不管主句是什么时态,从句都用一般现在时。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★He told Yu Gong he could never do it because he was old and (poor/weak).

③ **weak**/wi:k/*adj.* 虚弱的；无力的　其反义词为 strong（强壮的；有力的）。

e.g. I am always weak in science subjects. 我总是学不好理科。

be weak in… 意为“在……（方面）弱；不擅长……”，与 be good at…“在……（方面）强；擅长……”相对应。

Will you help the weak? 你会帮助弱者吗？

小贴士：the weak 意为“虚弱的人；弱者”，相当于 the weak people。英语中，“the+形容词”结构，表示一类人或物。

★This story reminds us that …

④【高频】**remind**/rɪ'maɪnd/*v.* 提醒；使想起

e.g. He reminds me that it is necessary to take some money. 他提醒我有必要带些钱。

My parents often remind me to study hard. 我父母常常提醒我要努力学习。

The photo reminds me of my English teacher. 这张照片使我想起了我的英语老师。

remind
- v. 提醒
  - remind sb. about sth. 提醒某人某事
  - remind sb. to do sth. 提醒某人做某事
  - remind sb.+that 从句 提醒某人……
- v. 使想起 → remind sb. of sth./sb. 使某人想起某物或某人

考题在线 —I'm afraid I might forget to buy the bread after work.
—Don't worry. I will _____ you then. [安徽]

A. notice　B. allow
C. remind　D. promise

点拨：本题用语境分析法。notice 意为“注意”；allow 意为“允许”；remind 意为“提醒；使想起”；promise 意为“许诺；承诺”。由第一句句意“我担心下班后我可能会忘记买面包。”及答语中的“别担心。”可知，此处意为“到时我会提醒你。”，选 remind。选 C。

★I think it's a little bit silly.

a little bit 常用于修饰形容词或副词，相当于 a little 或 a bit。

⑤ **a little bit** 有点儿；稍微

e.g. It's a little bit hot today.(=It's a little/bit hot today.) 今天有点儿热。

知识微课

辨析：a bit 与 a little

相同点	不同点
a bit 和 a little 在肯定句中修饰形容词、副词的原级及其比较级时，可以互换。	a little 可直接修饰不可数名词；a bit 后需跟 of 才能修饰不可数名词。

e.g. I feel a bit/little hot. 我感觉有点儿热。

There is a little water in the cup.(=There is a bit of water in the cup.) 杯子里有点儿水。

He is not a bit tired. 他一点儿也不累。

He is not a little tired. 他非常累。

小贴士：a bit 和 a little 在否定句中的意思恰恰相反：not a bit 相当于 not…at all，意为“一点儿也不”；not a little 相当于 very，意为“非常”。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

seem的用法小结：
①seem+形容词
似乎……；好像……
②seem to do sth.
似乎做某事
③It seems+that从句
看起来好像……
④seem like+名词
看上去像……

★It doesn't seem very possible to move a mountain.

⑥ **seem** *vi.* 好像；似乎；看来 敲黑板 seem不能用于进行时态。

e.g. He seems happy. (=He seems to be happy. =It seems that he is happy. =It seems as if he is happy.)
他看起来好像很高兴。

考题在线答案 C

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力20分

(答案见283页)

听力技巧

情节预测法（浏览给的四幅图，根据已有的知识和经验判断图片所表现的故事情节的发生顺序，再根据录音内容判断听前预测是否正确。）

听力过程

一、听1b，选择正确答案

课文听力1b

1. From the conversation, where did Yu Gong come from?
A. China. B. England. C. America.

2. From the conversation, how many mountains were there near his house?
A. One. B. Two. C. Three.

3. How did Yu Gong want to deal with the earth and stone?
A. He wanted to put it in his house.
B. He wanted to put it into the sea.
C. He wanted to sell it for money.

二、听2a，选择正确答案

4. Why did the man say that Yu Gong could never move the mountains?
A. Because Yu Gong was silly.
B. Because Yu Gong was young.
C. Because Yu Gong was old and weak.

课文听力2a

5. Who was moved by Yu Gong?
A. A god. B. A man. C. His wife.

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础20分

(答案见283页)

一、根据句意及首字母提示补全单词

1. The man s_____ at the tiger and killed it.

2. The man over there s_____ to be a new teacher.

3. How s_____ you are! The question is very easy.

4. I feel a bit w_____ after my illness.

5. The boy was angry and threw a s_____ at the dog.

二、单项选择

6. Recently Charles has been _____ a new novel.
A. taking in B. dreaming of
C. working on D. picking up

7. These pictures can _____ me _____ the life living with my grandparents.
A. let; down B. remind; of
C. think; about D. give; up

8. When you are in your school dining hall during lunchtime, you may feel lonely _____ you can find someone to have lunch with. [临沂]
A. if B. unless C. after D. because

9. I was _____ busy this week.
A. a bit of B. a little bit
C. a bit little D. a kind of

10. Mr.Wang is ill. Let me go to the meeting _____ him.
A. instead B. because of
C. according to D. instead of

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 2 Section A（3a–3c）

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

3a Read the passage and answer the questions. 阅读文章并回答问题。

1. Which book is talked about? 谈论的是哪本书?
2. Who is the main character? 谁是主人公?
3. What is he like? 他是个什么样的人?

课文朗读 3a

In November 1979, pupils in England were able to watch a new TV program called *Monkey*. Most of them were hearing this story for the first time. However, this story is not new to Chinese children. The Monkey King/kɪŋ/ or Sun Wukong is the main character in the traditional Chinese book *Journey to the West*. 在 1979 年 11 月，英格兰的小学生们能够看到一档新的电视节目叫《美猴王》。他们大多数人第一次听到这个故事。然而，这个故事对于中国的孩子们来说并不新鲜。美猴王或者说孙悟空是传统的中国著作《西游记》中的主人公。

The Monkey King is not just any normal monkey. In fact, he sometimes does not even look like a monkey! This is because ① he can make 72 changes to his shape and size, turning himself into ② different animals and objects/'ɒbdʒɪkts/, /'ɑːbdʒɪkts/. But unless he can hide/haɪd/ ③ his tail/teɪl/, he cannot turn himself into a person. To fight bad people, the Monkey King uses a magic/'mædʒɪk/ stick /stɪk/. ④ Sometimes he can make the stick so small that he can keep it in his ear. At other times, he is able to make it big and long. 美猴王不仅仅是一只普通的猴子。事实上，他有时甚至不像一只猴子！这是因为他能使他的形状和大小做 72 种变化，他把他自己变成不同的动物和物体。但是如果他不能把尾巴隐藏起来，他就不能把自己变成一个人。为了与坏人做斗争，美猴王用了一根魔棒。有时他能使这根棒子变得很小，以至于他能把它放在耳朵里。其他时候，他能够把棒子变得又大又长。

The Monkey King has excited/ɪk'saɪtɪd/ ⑤⑥ the children of China for many years. And as soon as the TV program came out ⑦ more than ⑧ 30 years ago, Western/'westə(r)n/ ⑨ children became interested in reading this story because the clever Monkey King keeps fighting to help the weak and never gives up. 美猴王让中国的孩子们兴奋了很多年。而且 30 多年前这档电视节目一出来，西方的孩子们就对读这个故事充满了兴趣，因为聪明的美猴王为了帮助弱者一直在战斗，并永不放弃。

3b Read the passage again and complete the chart about the Monkey King.

再读一遍文章并完成关于美猴王的表格。

What he can do 他能做什么	What he cannot do 他不能做什么

3c Complete the sentences below with phrases from the passage.

用文章中的词组或短语完成下面的句子。

1. *Journey to the West* is a _____ Chinese book. It tells one of the most popular stories in China.
《西游记》是一本_____中国著作。它讲述了中国最受欢迎的故事之一。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

2. When the English TV program *Monkey* _____ in 1979, Western children _____ this wonderful story. 当英格兰在1979年时_____电视节目《美猴王》，西方的孩子们_____这个很棒的故事。

3. The Monkey King can _____ to his body. He is able to _____ different animals and objects. 美猴王能_____他的身体，他能_____不同的动物和物体。

4. The Monkey King _____ make his magic stick small or large. 美猴王_____使他的魔棒变小或变大。

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读60分

（答案见283页）

阅读过程

一、速读3a，回答问题

1. What does the passage talk about?

（主旨大意题）

_____

二、细读3a，选择正确答案

2. How many changes could the Monkey King make? （细节查找题）

A. 12. B. 36. C. 72. D. 108.

3. Which is NOT true according to the passage? （细节推理题）

A. The Monkey King didn't look like a monkey sometimes.

B. The Monkey King could keep his stick in his ear.

C. The Monkey King could make his stick big and long.

D. The Monkey King could turn himself into a man without hiding his tail.

4. The word "magic" in Paragraph 2 means _____. （词义猜测题）

A. moved B. scared

C. mystical D. powerful

Ⅲ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础20分

•考点批注 •考点应用

★This is because he can make 72 changes to his shape and size, turning himself into different animals and objects.

小贴士：this is why... 意为"这就是……的原因"，此处why引导的是表语从句，表示结果。

①【句法分析】**This is because...** 意为"这是因为……"。此处**because**引导的是表语从句，表示原因或理由，相当于**the reason is that...**。

e.g. I am not surprised. This is because I have known it since yesterday.
我不惊讶。这是因为我从昨天就已经知道了这个事实。

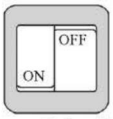
② **turn...into** 变成

e.g. We can turn liquid into gas.
我们能使液体变成气体。及物动词，"使……变成"。

He has turned into a nice boy finally.
他最终变成了一个不错的男孩。不及物动词，"变成"。

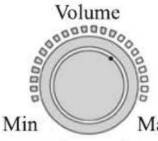
关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

拓展：turn 相关短语



turn on/off the light

开 / 关灯



turn up/down the radio

调大 / 小收音机

turn (...) into... 的同义短语：

- turn (...) into...=change (...) into...（把……）变成……
- turn ... into...=translate ... into... 把……翻译成……

考题在线 1 —Kate, _____ the TV, please. It's time to go to bed.

—OK. Mom. [益阳]

A. turn on　　B. turn off　　C. turn up

点拨：本题用短语辨析法。“turn on”打开；“turn off”关掉；“turn up”调大。选 B。

★But unless he can hide his tail, he cannot turn himself into a man.

③ **hide**/haɪd/*v.*(to put sth. /sb. in a place where it can't be seen or found)

隐藏；隐蔽　hide-hid-hidden

e.g. I hid the broken plate behind the table.

我把打碎的盘子藏在桌子后面了。

John always hides something from me.

约翰总是对我隐瞒一些事情。

hide sth. from sb. 对某人隐瞒某事，把某物藏起来让某人看不见

★To fight bad people, the Monkey King uses a magic stick.

④ 【句法分析】相当于 **in order to/so as to fight bad people**。动词不定式（短语）作目的状语时，一般放在句末。为了表示强调也可以置于句首。

e.g. To improve their service, the workers of the hotel are active in learning English. 为了提高他们的服务水平，这个宾馆的工作人员都在积极学习英语。

小贴士：从结构上讲，不定式作目的状语置于句首时，通常用逗号与句子隔开。

考题在线 2 As a volunteer, the girl wants to visit sick kids in the hospital _____ them up. [青岛]

A. to cheer　　B. cheer

C. cheering　　D. cheered

点拨：本题用语法判定法。考查非谓语动词。句意：作为一名志愿者，这个女孩儿想去看望医院里生病的孩子们来让他们开心。此处为不定式作目的状语，to cheer them up（来让他们开心）。

★The Monkey King has excited the children of China for many years.

⑤ **excite** /ɪk'saɪt/ *v.* 使激动；使兴奋

e.g. Opening their presents excites the children.

打开礼物让孩子们兴奋不已。

- excited *adj.* 兴奋的；激动的
- exciting *adj.* 使人兴奋的；令人激动的
- excitement *n.* 令人激动的事；兴奋；激动
- excitedly *adv.* 兴奋地；激动地

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考题在线 3 —What do you think of the movie?

—It is _____ one I've ever seen.

A. more excited　　B. more exciting

C. the most excited　　D. the most exciting

点拨：本题用词义辨析法和句意分析法。excited 激动的；兴奋的；exciting 令人激动的；使人兴奋的。本句是令人激动的电影，所以排除 A 和 C。又根据答句强调的意思可知，该处用形容词的最高级形式，表示“这是我曾看过的最激动人心的一部电影”。

⑥ **have/has+ 动词的过去分词**

e.g. He has lived here for 10 years. 他在这里住了 10 年了。

“have/has+ 动词的过去分词”是现在完成时的结构，表示从过去开始一直持续到现在的动作或者状态。

考题在线 4 Melting ice（融冰）can cause sea levels to rise. Since 1993, sea levels _____ at a speed of 3.2 cm every 10 years. [临沂]

A. rose　　B. have risen　　C. rise

点拨：本题用关键词法。考查时态。since 1993（自从 1993 年以来）是典型的现在完成时的标志。

★**And as soon as the TV program came out more than 30 years ago, Western children became interested in reading this story …**

⑦ **come out** 出版；发行

e.g. That magazine comes out every Monday. 那本杂志每周一出版。

The stars came out as soon as it was dark yesterday.

昨天天一黑星星就出来了。

Some flowers have begun to come out. 有些花已经开始盛开了。

The truth has come out at last. 真相终于大白。

come out 的其他意义：出现；出来；开花；发芽；盛开；透露；传出；公之于世；真相大白

⑧ **more than** 超过

e.g. More than 500 students are watching the game.

500 多名学生正在观看比赛。

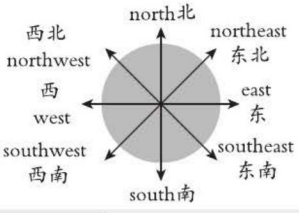
“more than+ 基数词”意为“超过多少”，相当于 over，其反义短语为“less than”意为“少于”。

⑨ **Western** /'westə(r)n/ *adj.* 西方国家的；（尤指）欧美的；西方的（w 也可小写），**western** 的名词形式为 **west**。

e.g. Chinese medicine is popular in many Western countries.

中医在许多西方国家受欢迎。

拓展：方位名词来集会：



小贴士：除 west 外，表示方位的 east，south，north 等名词，在其后加上 -ern，也都可以变成与它们对应的形容词：eastern，southern，northern。

考题在线答案 1. B　2. A　3. D　4. B

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见283页)

一、根据句意和首字母提示完成句子

1. Can a fox h_____ its tail?

2. Many people like his m_____ show.

3. My grandpa is old and he walks with a s_____.

4. A spoon is an everyday o_____.

5. In some W_____ countries, the song is very popular.

二、用方框内所给短语或单词的适当形式填空

turn into, come out, more than, pick up, excite

6. Sara was _____ to see the rock band.

7. I got up early this morning _____ my grandma at the airport. [成都]

8. There are _____ 1, 000 students in our school.

9. The singer's new song will _____ next month.

10. I think I have to stop, or I might _____ a machine.

三、单项选择

11. The flowers start to _____ in spring.

A. come in B. come out

C. come from D. come to

12. —I wonder how she _____ stone _____ gold.

—Come on. It's just a magic show.

A. turned; into B. turned; down

C. compared; with D. compared; to

13. _____ the story better, Mike asked his friend for help.

A. Understand B. To understand

C. Understands D. Understood

14. —What do you think of the TV show?

—I think it's _____, but someone thinks it's much too _____.

A. exciting enough; bored

B. enough exciting; boring

C. exciting enough; boring

D. enough exciting; bored

15. —A great person once said, "If you can follow your heart and never _____, your dream will come true."

—I think so. I believe I will enter a good high school this year if I try hard. [十堰]

A. give away B. give back

C. give out D. give up

Period 3 Section A (Grammar Focus-4c)

Ⅰ. 课文原文、译文

Grammar Focus 语法聚焦

How does the story begin? 故事是怎样开始的?	Once upon/ə'pɒn/, /ə'pɑːn/ a time, there was a very old man... 从前，有一个老人……
What happened next? 接下来发生了什么?	As soon as the man finished talking, Yu Gong said that his family could continue to move the mountains after he died. 这个男人一说完，愚公就说他的家人在他死后可以继续移山。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Why was Yu Gong trying to move the mountains? 为什么愚公尽力把山移走？	Because they were so big that it took a long time to walk to the other side. 因为它们太大了，以至于走到山的另一边要花费很长时间。
Who is the Monkey King? 美猴王是谁？	He is the main character in *Journey to the West*. 他是《西游记》里的主人公。
What can't the Monkey King do? 美猴王不能做什么？	He cannot turn himself into a man unless he can hide his tail. 他不能把他自己变成一个人，除非他能藏起他的尾巴。

4a Fill in the blanks with *unless*, *as soon as* or *so...that*. 用 *unless*，*as soon as* 或 *so...that* 填空。

1. _____ her father died, the stepsisters/'stepsɪstə(r)z/ made her do all the chores.
   她的父亲_____去世，继母的女儿们就让她做所有的杂活。
2. She was _____ busy _____ she had no time to make a dress for the party.
   她是_____忙_____她没有时间为参加聚会去做一条连衣裙。
3. The mice knew that _____ they helped her make a dress, she would not be able to go to the party. 老鼠知道她无法参加聚会，_____它们帮助她做一条连衣裙。
4. _____ the prince/prɪns/ saw her, he fell in love with① her.
   王子_____看见她，他_____爱上了她。
5. The prince knew that _____ the girl's foot could fit/fɪt/② the shoe, it was not the right girl.
   王子知道_____女孩的脚适合这只鞋，否则她就不是那个女孩。 宾语从句
6. The new couple/'kʌpl/③ were _____ happy _____ they couldn't stop smiling/'smaɪlɪŋ/④⑤ when they got married/'mærid/⑥. 这对新婚夫妇是_____高兴_____他们结婚时忍不住笑。

4b Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets. 用括号里动词的适当形式填空。

The Monkey King is the main character from the famous Chinese story *Journey to the West*. He is wonderful because he _____ (help) weak people. The Monkey King _____(have) a magic stick. He _____(use) it to fight bad people. He can _____(make) the stick big or small. He can sometimes make the stick so small that he can put it in his ear. As soon as he _____(see) bad people, he thinks of ways to fight them. He can _____(turn) himself into different animals and objects. But unless he can hide his tail, he cannot make himself a human. Children all over the world _____ (love) the Monkey King!

美猴王是著名的中国故事《西游记》里的主人公。他是令人赞叹的，因为他_____(帮助)弱者。美猴王_____(有)一根魔法棒。他_____(用)它与坏人做斗争。他能_____(使)棒子变大或变小。有时他能使棒子变得很小以至于他能把它放在他的耳朵里。他一_____(看到)坏人，就会想办法与他们作战。他能把他自己_____(变)成不同的动物和物体。但除非他能把他的尾巴隐藏起来，否则他不能把他自己变成一个人。全世界的孩子们_____(爱)美猴王！

4c Tell your partner about your favorite story. 告诉你的搭档关于你最喜欢的故事。

My favorite story is... 我最喜欢的故事是……

It is interesting because... 它很有意思，因为……

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

•考点应用 •考点批注

★ _____ the prince saw her, he fell in love with her.

① **fall in love with** 爱上

e.g. They fell in love with each other. 他们相爱了。

What if his daughter falls in love with a poor man?
如果他女儿爱上了一个穷人会怎样呢？ 表示动作

Tom and Mary have been in love with each other for two years.
汤姆与玛丽相爱已经两年了。表示状态

小贴士："一见钟情"用英语表达为"fall in love at first sight"。

考题在线1 根据汉语意思完成句子。

我朋友第一次来黄冈时，就喜欢上了这个城市。(fall) [黄冈]

My friend _____ Huanggang when he came to the city for the first time.

点拨：本题用固定搭配法。fall in love with sb./sth. 为固定搭配。意为"爱上某人或某物"。

★ **The prince knew that _____ the girl's foot could fit the shoe, it was not the right girl.**

② **fit** /fit/ *v.* 适合；合身

用作及物动词，其主语一般是表示"物"的名词，宾语则通常是表示"人"的名词。

e.g. The skirt doesn't fit me.
这条裙子不适合我。

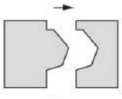
小贴士：衣服穿在身上不大不小用fit，衣服穿在身上漂亮用suit。

辨析：fit 与 suit

- fit：多指大小、形状的合适，引申为吻合、协调。
- suit：多指合乎需要、口味、性格、条件、地位等。



suit



fit

e.g. The dress fits, but it doesn't suit me. 这裙子大小正好，但不适合我穿。

I eat three apples a day to keep fit.
为了保持健康我一天吃三个苹果。

Your shoes are not fit for travelling.
你的鞋子不适合旅行。

fit (adj.) ① 健康的→keep fit=keep healthy 保持健康 ② 适合的；能胜任的→be fit for 胜任/适合

★ **The new couple were _____ happy _____ they couldn't stop smiling when they got married.**

③ **couple** /'kʌpl/ *n.*（尤指）夫妻；两人；两件事物



a couple of 几个

e.g. The young couple decided to take a holiday for their honeymoon.
这对年轻的夫妇决定休假去度蜜月。作可数名词时，指两人，尤其是夫妇。

I saw a couple of students getting out from the school gate.
我看到几个学生正从学校门口出来。一对，一双；一些，几个



the couple 一对夫妇

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

辨析：smile 与 laugh

smile 微笑

laugh 大笑



smile 微笑



laugh 大笑

④ **can't stop doing sth.** 忍不住，情不自禁做某事

相当于 can't help doing sth.

e.g. The children couldn't stop opening the gifts.

孩子们忍不住打开了礼物。

⑤ **smile**/smaɪl/*v.* & *n.* 笑；微笑

e.g. She smiled at him and he smiled back.

她冲他笑笑，他也冲她笑笑。作动词，常与 at 连用。

He had a big smile on his face. 他满脸笑容。

He said nothing but smiled.

作名词时，为可数名词。

他什么也没说，只是笑了笑。

Don't laugh loudly in the library.

不要在图书馆大声笑。

素养 行动 如果你是个不苟言笑的人，当和他人交流时，试着笑一笑。一个充满真诚的微笑就能够立即拉近你们之间的距离。

素养 行动结果 做一个喜欢微笑的人，培养与人交际的能力。

核心素养之文化意识

学会微笑，学会解压

用微笑去面对生活，用微笑去对待周围的人，生活便会像一面镜子一样将微笑回报于你。不要小瞧微笑的力量，让我们用真诚的微笑打开人与人之间的交流屏障。

小贴士：

① get married 是非延续性动词短语，不能与表示时间段的状语连用。

② 表示"与某人结婚"，常用 marry sb. 或 get married to sb.，而不能用 marry with sb.。

③ 表示已婚的状态，用 be married，可以与表示一段时间的状语连用。

⑥ **get married** 结婚

e.g. Have you got married? 你结婚了吗？

考题在线 2 Catherine got married _____ a policeman twenty years ago.

A. with　　B. for

C. to　　D. at

点拨：本题用固定搭配法。get married to sb. 为固定搭配，意为"与某人结婚"。

考题在线答案 1.fell in love with　2.C

Ⅲ. 单元语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

引导状语从句的连词 unless, as soon as, so...that 的用法

考点 1 unless 拒绝让步

unless 用作连词，引导条件状语从句相当于 if...not，表示否定，意为"除非"。其主从句的时态，遵循"主将从现"原则。

e.g. I won't pass the exam unless I study hard.

我不会通过考试除非我努力学习。

考题在线 1 Your dream will not come true _____ you keep trying your best. [泸州]

A. when　　B. unless

C. whether　　D. because

点拨：句意：除非你一直尽你最大的努力，_____你的梦想不会实现。when"当……时"；unless"除非；如果不"；whether"是否"；because"因为"。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

考点 2 as soon as 机缘巧合

as soon as 引导时间状语从句意为“一……就……”，其主从句的时态，也遵循“主将从现”原则。

e.g. I will tell you as soon as he comes back.
他一回来我就告诉你。

拓展：下面的连词引导的时间状语从句，都遵循“主将从现”原则：when, while, after, as, until。

e.g. They will never let you know until it happens.
直到事情发生了，他们才会让你知道。

When I grow up, I'll be a nurse and look after the patients.
当我长大后，我要当一名护士去照顾病人。

考题在线 2 — Linda has gone to Paris. How can I get in touch with her?
— Don't worry. She will call you _____ she gets there. [眉山改编]

A. as soon as　　B. if
C. before　　D. until

点拨：本题用语境分析法。句意：“琳达去巴黎了。我怎么跟她联系呢？”“别担心。她_____到那儿_____会打给你。”as soon as“一……就……”；if“如果”；before“在……以前”；until“直到……才”。

考点 3 so...that... 种瓜得瓜，种豆得豆

1. so...that/such...that 引导结果状语从句，意为“如此……以至于……”。

so+ 形容词 / 副词 +that
such+a/an+ 形容词 + 可数名词单数 +that
such+ 形容词 + 可数名词复数 / 不可数名词 +that
so+ 形容词 +a/an+ 可数名词单数 +that

so+{many/few+ 可数名词复数 / much/little+ 不可数名词} +that 从句

e.g. She is such a lovely girl that we love her very much.
→ She is so lovely a girl that we love her very much.
她是一个如此可爱的女孩，以至于我们都非常爱她。

We have so much time that we can finish the work very well.
我们有如此多的时间，以至于我们能很好地完成工作。

考题在线 3 They spoke _____ quietly _____ I could hardly hear them. [宿迁]

A. such; that　　B. so; that
C. neither; nor　　D. both; and

点拨：本题用分析句子结构法。分析句子结构知，第二空后为完整的句子，只能用so...that或such...that引导结果状语从句，排除 C、D；而 so...that 中心词是形容词或副词，such...that 中心词则是名词。本句两空中间的 quietly 是副词。

2. 当 that 引导的结果状语从句是肯定句时，so...that 可与 be...enough to do 互换使用；当 that 引导的结果状语从句是否定句时，可与 too...to... 或者 be not...enough to do 进行转换。

e.g. He was so clever that he could understand what I said.
→ He was clever enough to understand what I said.
他很聪明，能理解我说的话。

The girl is so young that she can't dress herself.
→ The girl is too young to dress herself.
→ The girl is not old enough to dress herself.
这个女孩太小了，还不能自己穿衣服。

考题在线 4 She is _____ poor _____ afford the expensive suit. [齐齐哈尔改编]

A. so; that　　B. enough; to
C. too; to

点拨：用分析句子结构法。句意：她是_____穷_____负担得起这套昂贵的西服。so...that... 如此……以至于……，that 后接从句；...enough to do... 足够……去做……；too...to do... 太……而不能做……。分析句子结构，第二个空后为动词原形，可排除 A。再结合句意可知答案。

考题在线答案 1. B　2. A　3. B　4. C

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见283页)

一、根据汉语意思完成英语句子，每空一词

1. 很久以前，有一个王子被变成了青蛙。

_____ _____ _____ _____, a prince was turned into a frog.

2. 这套西装不怎么合身。你有尺码大一点儿的吗?

This suit _____ _____ me well. Do you have a larger size?

3. 我姐姐结婚之前是一名护士。

My sister worked as a nurse before she _____ _____ .

4. 她对他一见钟情。

She_____ _____ _____ _____ him at first sight. 【导学号：2039901】

5. 我讨厌期望过高，但我还是忍不住期待。

I hate expecting too much, but I _____ _____ _____ it.

二、语法专练

6. Lots of people exercise every morning _____ bad weather stops them. [重庆]

A. if B. unless

C. until D. since

7. She was _____ excited at the news that she couldn't say a word. [湖南]

A. so B. very C. such

8. She stopped talking _____ her mother came into the room. [宜宾]

A. as soon as B. unless C. though

9. —Does your mother have a hobby?

—No, _____ you call going shopping a hobby. [达州]

A. unless B. because

C. although D. if

10. The book is _____ interesting _____ I can't put it down. [贺州]

A. so; that B. such; that

C. too; to D. very; that

Period 4 Section B (1a–1d)

Ⅰ. 课文原文、译文

1a Match the words with the letters in the pictures in 1c. 将单词与1c里图片上的字母配对。

_____ gold/gəʊld/ 金子

_____ emperor/'empərə(r)/ 皇帝

_____ silk/sɪlk/ 丝绸

_____ underwear/'ʌndəweə/, /'ʌndərwer/ 内衣

1b Listen and number the pictures [1-5] in 1c. 听录音，给1c中的图片[1–5]标号。



1c Listen again and fill in the blanks. 再听一遍并填空。

When the emperor _____ at himself, he only _____ his underwear.

当皇帝_____自己，他仅仅_____他的内衣。

Nobody/'nəʊbədi/ ① wanted to sound stupid/'stju:pɪd/, /'stu:pɪd/. But suddenly, a young boy _____, "Look! The emperor isn't _____ any clothes!"

没有人想听起来是愚蠢的。但是突然一个小男孩_____："看！皇帝没_____任何衣服！"

The emperor had to _____ them silk and gold, but they _____ everything for themselves.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

They were trying to cheat/tʃiːt/② the emperor.

皇帝不得不_____他们丝绸和金子，但他们_____所有的东西为他们自己。他们尽量地去欺骗皇帝。

This story is about an emperor who loved _____.

这个故事是关于一个爱_____的皇帝的。

Two _____ came to the city to make special clothes for the emperor.

两个_____去城市给皇帝做特殊的衣服。

1d Use the pictures in 1c to tell the story. 用 1c 中的图片讲故事。

Once upon a time, there was an emperor... 从前，有个皇帝……

Ⅱ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

(答案见284页)

听力过程

课文听力 1b

听 1b 选择正确答案

1. What did the emperor love?

A. Books. B. Gold. C. Clothes.

2. Did the two brothers make special clothes for the emperor?

A. Yes, they did. B. No, they didn't.

C. Not mentioned.

3. Why did everyone say the emperor's clothes were wonderful?

A. Because nobody wanted to sound stupid.

B. Because the clothes were really wonderful.

C. Because they wanted to be rewarded.

4. Who said that the emperor was wearing nothing?

A. A man. B. A young boy.

C. A young girl.

Ⅲ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用 •考点批注

★Nobody wanted to sound stupid.

① **nobody**/'nəʊbədi/ *pron.* 没有人 *n.* 小人物

e.g. —Who went to the science museum last week? 上周谁去过科学博物馆?

—Nobody. 没有人。

Nobody is here. 没有人在这儿。→ nobody 作主语时，谓语动词用第三人称单数形式。

【重点 & 易错】辨析: nobody 与 none

nobody	只能指人，表示泛指“没有人”。作主语时，谓语动词只能用单数，等于 no one。不强调数量，可用来回答由 who 提问的问句。
none	既可指人又可指物，意为“没有任何人或物；一个也没有”，后可跟 of。作主语时，谓语动词用单数或复数均可。强调数量，可用来回答由 how many/how much 提问的问句。

Difficult circumstance serves as a textbook of life for people.
困境是人们的生活教科书。

e.g. —Who's in the classroom? 谁在教室里?

—No one. /Nobody. 没有人。

—How many animals can you see in the picture?

在这幅画里你能看见多少只动物?

—None. 一只也看不到。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考题在线 1 A robot show will be held in July, but _____ knows the date for sure.

A. nobody　　B. everybody　　C. anybody　　D. somebody

点拨：句意：七月份将举办一场机器人展，但是没有人知道确切的日期。nobody 没有人；everybody 每个人；anybody 任何人；somebody 某人，有人。根据句意及句中连词 but 可知，空处应用 nobody 表示“没有人”。故选 A。

★They were trying to cheat the emperor.

② **cheat**/tʃi:t/*v.*(to behave in a dishonest way, especially in a competition, game, or exam) 欺骗；蒙骗 *n.* 骗子　作及物动词时，“欺骗”，其宾语常常是人。

e.g. The salesman cheated her into buying a fake. 这个推销员骗她买了假货。

The teacher told his pupils not to cheat in exams.

这个老师告诉他的学生们在考试中不要作弊。　作不及物动词时，“作弊”。

Don't cheat me. 不要骗我。

In the story *The Emperor's New Clothes*, the emperor was fooled by two cheats.　作名词时，“骗子”。

在《皇帝的新装》这个故事中，皇帝被两个骗子愚弄了。

小贴士：“骗某人的钱”不能说 cheat sb.'s money. 而应说 cheat sb.(out) of one's money.

考题在线 2 根据句意及首字母提示，补全单词。

She c_____ in the exam—she copied her friend's paper.

考题在线答案　1. A　2. cheated

Period 5 Section B（2a–2e）



I. 课文原文、译文及导读

导读批注　　原文译文·导读

Pre-reading（读前）

2a A fairy tale is an old, traditional story. Do you know what these fairy tales are about? 童话故事是一种古老且传统的故事。你知道这些童话故事是关于什么的吗？

Sleeping Beauty/'bju:ti/《睡美人》　　*Cinderella*/ˌsɪndə'relə/《灰姑娘》

Little Red Riding Hood/hʊd/《小红帽》

While-reading（读中）

2b Read the first paragraph of *Hansel and Gretel*. Think about how the fairy tale will continue. Then read the



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

rest of the story. 读《韩塞尔与葛雷特》（《糖果屋》）的第一段。想一想这个童话故事将怎样继续，然后读故事的其他部分。

Finding Out the Text Type 找出文章类型

Before you read, decide what kind of text it is. Is it a letter, a play, a short story or something else?

在你读之前，判定文章是什么类型的。是一封信、一部戏剧、一个小故事还是其他类型的?

批 体裁：戏剧。

***Hansel*/'hænsl/ *and Gretel*/'gretl/**《韩塞尔与葛雷特》（《糖果屋》）

批 段落：此段交代故事的背景、时间、地点、人物及事件。

Hansel and Gretel lived near a forest with their father and stepmother /'stepmʌðə(r)/. One year, the weather was so dry that no food would grow. The wife/waɪf/ told her husband/'hʌzbənd/ that unless he left the children to die in the forest, the whole/həʊl/① family would die. Gretel heard this, and Hansel made a plan to save himself and his sister.

韩塞尔与葛雷特和他们的爸爸以及继母居住在森林附近。有一年，天气太干旱了，以至于粮食颗粒不长。妻子告诉她丈夫，如果他不把孩子们扔在森林里让他们自生自灭，全家人都会死。葛雷特听到了这个消息，然后韩塞尔制订了一个计划去拯救他自己和他的妹妹。

SCENE/siːn/ ONE 第一幕：_____

Gretel: Did you hear our stepmother planning to kill us?

你有没有听见我们的继母打算杀我们?

Hansel: Don't worry! I have a plan to save us. 别担心！我有个救我们的计划。

Gretel: How can you save us? 你怎么救我们?

Hansel: Be quiet! I'm going outside to get something in the moonlight /'muːnlaɪt/. Now, go to sleep.

安静！我打算趁着月光去外面弄些东西。现在去睡觉。

批 结构：多幕剧。总起→Scene One—Scene Seven

SCENE TWO 第二幕：_____

Wife: Get up, lazy children! 起床吧，懒孩子们!

Husband: Yes, dears. You must come with me to the forest to get wood.

是的，亲爱的孩子们。你们必须和我去森林里弄点木头回来。

Wife: Here's some bread. Don't eat it until you get to the forest.

这是些面包。直到你们到了森林里才能吃。

批 词语："lazy"一词形象地体现出了继母对待孩子的情感。

SCENE THREE 第三幕：_____

Gretel: Hansel, what are you doing? 韩塞尔，你正在做什么?

Hansel: I'm dropping white stones along the way. Unless I do, we'll be lost. Tonight, when the moon is shining/'ʃaɪnɪŋ/② bright/braɪt/③, we'll be able to see the stones. 我正沿着路丢些白色的石头。如果我不这么做，我们就会迷路。今晚，当月光明亮时，我们将能看到这些石头。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

SCENE FOUR 第四幕：

Wife: You bad children! What a long time you slept in the forest! 你们这些坏孩子！你们在森林里睡了这么长时间！

Husband: We thought you were never coming back. 我们以为你们再也不回来了。

Wife: Now, go to bed. As soon as you wake up, you must go to the forest with your father. 现在去睡觉吧。你们一醒来就必须和你们的父亲去森林里。

Hansel: What, again? I want to go out to look at the moon. 什么，又去？我想去外面看看月亮。

Wife: No. You can't go out now. 不行。你现在不能出去。

批 对白语言：运用常用、简练的词汇和简单利索的短句，使人物刻画形象生动，读来轻松易懂。

SCENE FIVE 第五幕：

Gretel: What can we do? You have no more stones. 我们能做什么呢？你已经没有更多的石头了。

Hansel: I'll drop pieces ④ of bread. As soon as the moon rises, we can follow them instead. 我将丢些面包屑。月亮一升起来，我们就能跟着它们走。

SCENE SIX 第六幕：

Gretel: I can't see any bread on the ground/graʊnd/. Maybe it was the birds. 我在路上看不到任何面包。也许被小鸟吃了。

Hansel: Never mind! Just keep walking. Unless we do, we won't find our way out ⑤. 不要紧！就一直走吧。除非我们一直走，否则我们就找不到路出去。

SCENE SEVEN 第七幕：

Gretel: Hansel, we're really lost! 韩塞尔，我们确实迷路了！

Hansel: Listen! That bird's song is so beautiful that we should follow it. 听！那只鸟的歌声是如此美妙，我们应该跟着它。

Gretel: Look! It's leading/'li:dɪŋ/ ⑥ us to that wonderful house made of ⑦ bread, cake and candy. 看！它正领着我们去那个用面包、蛋糕和糖果做成的美妙房子。

Hansel: Let's eat part of the house! 咱们吃一部分房子吧！

批 句子：戏剧中的旁白，承前启后，引出故事中的新人物，渲染环境。

(*Then they hear an old woman's voice*/vɔɪs/ ⑧ *from inside the house.*)

（然后他们听到从房子里传出一位老妇人的声音。）

Voice: Who is that? Who is brave/breɪv/ ⑨ enough ⑩ to eat my house?

声音：谁在那儿？是谁足够勇敢来吃我的房子？

Post-reading（读后）

写作小练笔 ☞（答案见170页）

2c Match each description below with the correct scene. 将下面每个描述和正确的幕次配对。

A. The children get lost. 孩子们迷路了。

B. The children wake up. 孩子们醒了。

C. The children cannot find the pieces of bread. 孩子们找不到面包屑。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

D. Gretel learns about Hansel's plan. 葛雷特了解了韩塞尔的计划。

E. The children surprise the parents. 孩子们使父母吃惊。

F. Hansel has to change his plan. 韩塞尔不得不改变他的计划。

G. The children learn that something bad is going to happen. 孩子们得知有些不好的事情将要发生了。

2d Read the play again and answer the questions. 再读一遍戏剧并回答问题。

1. Why does the wife tell her husband to leave the children in the forest? 为什么妻子告诉她的丈夫把孩子们留在森林里?
2. What does Hansel go out to get? 韩塞尔出去取什么?
3. Why does he do this in the moonlight? 为什么他在月光下做这个?
4. How do Hansel and Gretel find their way home? 韩塞尔和葛雷特是怎样找到回家的路的?
5. Why do Hansel and Gretel get lost the second time? 韩塞尔和葛雷特为什么第二次迷路了?

2e Act out the play in groups of four. 四人一组，表演这个戏剧。

课文背诵指南



Hansel and Gretel

- Scene 1 ➡ The children learn that something bad is going to happen.
- Scene 2 ➡ The children wake up.
- Scene 3 ➡ Gretel learns about Hansel's plan.
- Scene 4 ➡ The children surprise the parents.
- Scene 5 ➡ Hansel has to change his plan.
- Scene 6 ➡ The children can't find the pieces of bread.
- Scene 7 ➡ The children get lost.

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读 60分

(答案见284页)

阅读策略

细节归纳法（文章中的事实性细节内容不会孤立地出现，它与前后的内容密切相关。一般都可以在文章中直接或间接地找到答案。我们要留意文章或题干中一些细小的地方，如：正确把握文中代词的所指关系，它们是为了避免上下文重复而使用的。此外还有时态、语气等。）

阅读过程

阅读 2b，选择正确答案

1. From the story, we can know the stepmother was _____. （推理判断题）

A. cruel　　B. stupid

C. diligent　　D. clever

拓展阅读

2. Who heard their stepmother's plan? （细节查找题）

A. Gretel.　　B. Hansel.

C. Father.　　D. Nobody.

3. What did their stepmother give them before they got to the forest? （细节查找题）

A. Water.　　B. Bread.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

C. Stones. D. Wood.

4. What does the word "lead" in SCENE SEVEN mean in Chinese? （词义猜测题）

A. 告诉 B. 支持

C. 领着 D. 找到

5. Why couldn't they find the bread they had dropped on the ground? （细节归纳题）

A. They forgot it.

B. Their stepmother took the bread away.

C. The birds had eaten the bread.

D. The moon wasn't shining bright.

Ⅲ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注 •考点应用



★The wife told her husband that unless he left the children to die in the forest, the whole family would die.

① **whole** /həʊl/*adj.* 全部的；整体的

e.g. I told him the whole story. 我把整个故事告诉了他。

We ate the whole cake in about ten minutes.

大约 10 分钟的时间，我们就把整个蛋糕给吃完了。

辨析： whole 与 all

whole	强调完整无缺。修饰可数名词单数，要放在名词前，冠词、代词等限定词后。
all	强调各个部分组成的整体。修饰可数名词复数或不可数名词。有冠词、代词等限定词时，要放在它们前面。

e.g. The whole building was burning. 整座楼都在燃烧。

All the children enjoyed themselves. 所有的孩子都玩得很开心。

★Tonight, when the moon is shining bright, we'll be able to see the stones.

② **shine**/ʃaɪn/ *v.* 发光；照耀 其过去式和过去分词均为 shone。

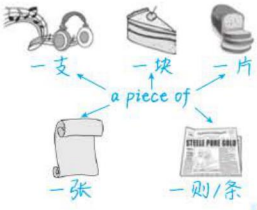
e.g. It is a warm morning and the sun is shining. 这是个温暖的早晨，阳光普照。

③ **bright** /braɪt/ *adv.* 光亮地；明亮地→ *adj.* 明亮的；光线充足的

e.g. The sun is shining bright. 阳光明媚。

Her eyes were pierced by the bright light.

明亮的光线刺痛了她的眼睛。



★I'll drop pieces of bread.

④ **piece** *n.* 片；块；段

e.g. I picked up a piece of wood and started carving.

我拿起一块木头，开始雕刻起来。 表示"一片；一块；一段"，用于不可数名词前，表达数量。

We brought along pieces of old bread and fed the birds.

我们拿了几片陈面包来喂鸟。

小贴士："大于1的基数词+pieces of+不可数名词"作主语时，谓语动词用复数形式。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★Unless we do, we won't find our way out.

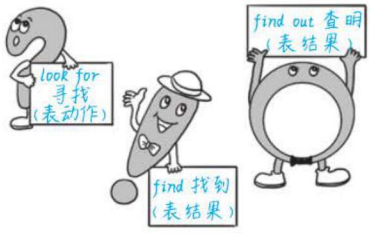
⑤ find out 弄清楚；查明

e.g. You'd better smell the tofu to find out whether it smells bad.

你最好闻一下这块豆腐，弄清楚它闻起来是不是臭的。

辨析：find out, find 与 look for

- find out：通常表示“弄明白，搞清楚，查明”，多用于复杂而不容易直接查出的情况。
- find：强调“找的结果”，是非延续性动词；又可以表示“（偶然地）发现”。
- look for：意为“寻找”，强调“寻找的过程”，是延续性动词词组。



e.g. Please find out the answer to the question. 请查明问题的答案。

He can't find his watch. 他找不到他的手表。

I'm looking for my pen. 我正在寻找我的钢笔。

★It's leading us to that wonderful house made of bread, cake and candy.

⑥ lead/li:d/*v.* **带路；领路** 其过去式和过去分词均为 led。

e.g. She led me to the dining hall. 她带我进入餐厅。

The guide led us to get into that museum.

导游引导我们进入了那个博物馆。

All roads lead to Rome.

（谚语）条条大路通罗马。

常用结构

①lead to“通向；导致”，to 为介词。

②lead sb. to+地点“带领某人去某处”。

③lead sb. to do sth.“引导/使某人做某事”。

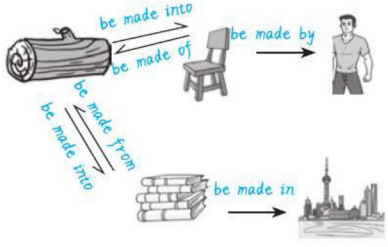
⑦ made of... 由……制成

e.g. There are three rabbits living in that beautiful house made of wood.

有三只兔子住在那所漂亮的木制房子里。 过去分词短语作后置定语，修饰 house。

辨析：be made of 与 be made from

be made of	表示制成成品后，仍可看出原材料是什么，保留原材料的质，制作过程仅发生物理变化。
be made from	表示制成的东西完全失去了原材料的特征，或原材料在制作过程中发生化学变化，在成品中已无法辨认。



e.g. The kite is made of paper. 风筝是用纸做的。

The paper is made from wood. 纸是用木材做的。

考题在线 1 —Is the wine made _____ grapes?

—Yes, it's made _____ France.

A. of; in　　B. from; in

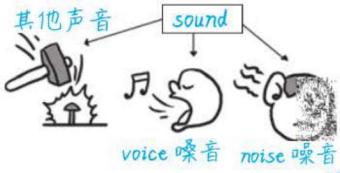
C. from; by　　D. of; as

点拨：制成的酒完全失去了原材料葡萄的外形或特征，用 be made from；be made in 后接产地。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

一语辨异：

There was a loud noise outside the classroom. The physics teacher had to raise his voice. "Light travels much faster than sound." 教室外面一片嘈杂声。物理老师不得不提高了他的声音，"光的传播速度比声音快得多。"。



★**Then they hear an old woman's voice from inside the house.**

⑧ **voice**/vɔɪs/*n.* 声音　in a low voice 低声地

e.g. Could you please raise your voice? I can't hear you.
你能提高一下你的声音吗？我听不见。

辨析：voice, sound 与 noise

voice	指人发出的声音，如说话声、唱歌声等。
sound	泛指人们听到的一切声音。可以指人和动物的声音，也可以指物体碰撞发出的声音等。
noise	指不悦耳的声音，如噪音、杂音、吵闹声等。

考题在线 2 Cathy has such a good _____ that she won many prizes in singing competitions last year. [安徽]

A. sleep　B. idea　C. voice　D. time

点拨：本题用词义辨析法。sleep 睡眠；idea 主意；voice 嗓音；time 时间。既然是在唱歌比赛中赢得奖项，那么她肯定是嗓音好。

★**Who is brave enough to eat my house?**

⑨ **brave**/breɪv/*adj.* 勇敢的；无畏的

e.g. It was brave of you to speak in front of all those people.
你很勇敢，能在所有的那些人面前说话。

the brave 表示一类人，意为"勇敢的人"。

Today we plan to remember the brave who died in the last war.
今天我们打算纪念在上一场战争中牺牲的勇士。

be brave to do sth. 勇敢地去做某事

He is brave enough to face the difficulty. 他足够勇敢地去面对困难。

⑩ **enough** *adj.* 足够的

enough 修饰名词要前置。修饰形容词或副词时要后置。

e.g. They had enough cash for a one-way ticket.
他们有足够的现金买一张单程票。

I'm serious; things are difficult enough as they are.
我是认真的，事情照现在这样已经够困难的了。

考题在线 3 —May I be allowed to choose a summer course?
—It's up to you. You're _____ to make your own decision.

A. too old　B. enough old　C. old enough

点拨：本题用固定搭配法。句意："我可以被允许选择一个暑期课程吗？""由你决定。你足够大了，可以自己做决定。"too...to 指"太……而不能"；...enough to do sth. 指"足够……可以做某事"。由句意及 enough 修饰形容词或副词时要后置可知，选 C。

考题在线答案 1. B　2. C　3. C

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练　稳拿中考基础 20分

（答案见284页）

一、用括号内所给词的适当形式或汉语提示填空

1. The moon tonight shines very _____（明亮）.
2. The sun is _____(shine) in a cloudless sky.
3. I like him, because he is a _____（勇敢的）and clever boy.
4. The two men went fishing while their _____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

(wife) were preparing the dinner.

5. Two pieces of bread _____ (be) eaten.

二、单项选择

6. —How is the movie?

—Terrible! I think almost _____ likes it.

A. anybody　　B. somebody

C. everybody　　D. nobody

7. Do you know that plastic is made _____ oil?

A. from　　B. of　　C. by　　D. in

8. —It is reported that there will be a storm tomorrow.

—I hope not. We're planning _____.

A. to go boating　　B. going boating

C. to go boat　　D. going to boat

9. The speaker showed some _____ examples to make the science report easy to understand. [安徽]

A. awful　　B. stupid

C. proper　　D. thick

10. I had to look after my sick sister _____.

A. the whole morning

B. whole the morning

C. the all morning

D. the morning all

Period 6 Section B（3a–Self Check）

I. 课文原文、译文

3a Write some key words from each scene. Then discuss your answers with your partner. 把每一幕的一些关键词写出来，然后和你的搭档讨论你们的答案。

Scene 1 第一幕：plan, kill, save, ... 计划，杀，救，……

Scene 2 第二幕：_____

Scene 3 第三幕：_____

Scene 4 第四幕：_____

Scene 5 第五幕：_____

Scene 6 第六幕：_____

Scene 7 第七幕：_____

3b Complete the summary of the play. 完成这一戏剧的概括。

Gretel heard that their _____ planned to _____ her and her brother. But Hansel had a plan to _____ himself and his sister. He went to get some white _____ before he went to bed that night. The next day, the wife sent the children to the _____. Hansel _____ the stones as they walked. Later that night, they could see the stones because of the shining _____. The stones showed them the way home. Hansel wanted to get more stones, but his stepmother did not let him go out. The next morning, the wife sent the children to the forest again. Hansel had no stones, so he dropped _____ of _____. But the _____ ate them, so Hansel and Gretel were _____ in the forest. They walked until they saw a _____ made of food. Hansel wanted to _____ the house, but then they heard the voice of an old _____ coming from the house.

葛雷特听到他们的_____计划去_____她和她的哥哥。但是韩塞尔有个计划去_____他自己和他的妹妹。那天晚上他在睡觉之前去找了一些白色的_____。第二天，妻子派孩子们去_____。韩塞尔_____石头

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

当他们走的时候。那天晚上晚些时候，他们能看到石头，因为发光的_____。石头给他们指引了回家的路。韩塞尔想得到更多的石头，但他的继母不让他出去。第二天早上，妻子再次派孩子们去森林。韩塞尔没有石头了，因此他丢下_____ _____。但是_____吃了它们，因此韩塞尔和葛雷特在森林里_____了。他们走着直到他们看到一个食物做的_____。韩塞尔想要_____房子，但紧接着他们听到一个老_____的声音从房间里传出来。

Self Check 自我检测

1 Use your own ideas to complete the sentences. 用你自己的想法去完成句子。

1. We will be late unless... 我们将会迟到除非……
2. You won't be successful unless... 你将不会成功除非……
3. As soon as I got to the bus stop... 我一到公共汽车站就……
4. Bill opened his book as soon as... 一……，比尔就打开他的书。
5. The movie was so touching that... 这个电影是如此打动人心以至于……
6. The boy was so excited that... 这个男孩如此激动以至于……

2 Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the words in brackets. 用括号中所给词的正确形式填空。

Once upon a time, there _____(be) an emperor. He _____(love) buying and looking at clothes. One day, two brothers _____(come) to the city. They _____ (tell) the emperor that they could make beautiful clothes for him, but he must _____ (give) them silk and gold. The brothers _____(be) bad people. They _____ (keep) all the silk and gold for themselves. They told the emperor the clothes they made _____(be) special because only clever people could _____(see) them. When the emperor _____ (put) on the clothes, all he could see was his underwear. But he didn't want people to _____ (think) he was stupid, so he _____(say) the clothes were beautiful. Then he _____ (walk) around the city in his new clothes until one boy _____ (shout), "The emperor isn't wearing any clothes!"

从前，_____(有)一个皇帝，他_____(喜爱)买和看衣服。一天，两兄弟_____(来)到城市，他们_____(告诉)皇帝他们能为他做漂亮衣服，但他必须_____(给)他们丝绸和金子。这两兄弟_____(是)坏人，他们把所有的丝绸和金子_____(保留)给自己。他们告诉皇帝他们做的衣服_____(是)特殊的，因为只有聪明人才能_____(看见)它们。当皇帝_____(穿上)衣服时，他能看到的只是他的内衣。但是他不想让人们_____(认为)他很愚蠢，所以他_____(说)衣服很漂亮。然后他穿着新衣服全城_____(走)，直到一个男孩子_____(大喊)："皇帝没有穿任何衣服！"

Ⅱ. 写作一课一法 夺取中考写作 20分

写作小练笔

Scene Eight

Gretel: Hansel, who is that?

(Suddenly, the door flew open and an old woman came out).

Woman: Welcome to my house, dear. Come in, please.

Hansel: Good evening, madam. You are so kind. Thank you.

(Hansel and Gretel walked into the house)

Gretel: Look! There is so much delicious food.

Woman: Would you like some pancakes?

(The old woman gave them lots of pancakes.)

Hansel: How delicious! Thank you very much.

(Hansel and Gretel ate pancakes happily)

Woman: Now it's time to go to bed. Just sleep in my house, dear.

(Hansel and Gretel slept in the house.)

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

单元话题

试着用本单元所学的单词、短语和句型等讲述一个经典故事。

审题指导（把握中心，得方向分）

在写作过程中，要注意关键词语的正确使用，可用开门见山的方式简单介绍故事的发展过程及结局，最后表述自己的观点或询问对方的感受等。

写作技法（学会方法，巧得高分）

“5W 法”写“传说或故事”

叙述故事或事件，可分人物 (who)、事件 (what)、时间 (when)、地点 (where) 和原因 (why) 等要素详述。

写作模板（学会套路，得基本分）



经典词句（妙用句式，得出彩分）

单词	shout, fall, jump, save, hear, finally, grateful
短语	ask sb. for help, look around, try one's best to do sth., learn from
句子	It was...when...

范文赏析（书写工整，得印象分）

A Brave Young Man

It was a nice day last Sunday. Zhang Ming was fishing by the Qinhuai River when a little boy went to play nearby. Suddenly, Zhang Ming heard somebody crying. He looked around and found the little boy in the water who was shouting for help. It was very dangerous. Zhang Ming jumped into the river immediately. He tried his best to pull the boy out of the river. At that time other people came to offer help. Finally, the boy was saved and he was very grateful. People all said Zhang Ming was very brave and helpful. We should learn from him.

名师点评：本文采用“5W 法”叙述了英勇少年拯救落水儿童的故事。Who (Zhang Ming, a little boy, other people); What (He tried his best to pull the boy out of the river); When (last Sunday); Where (by the Qinhuai River); Why (It was very dangerous) 故事要素齐全，内容完整。

1. It was a nice day last Sunday. 点明事件发生的时间是过去，提示在叙述事件时用相应的过去时。
2. hear, find 等词的运用为“救人”作铺垫。
3. was saved 运用被动语态，强调事件结果良好。



Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见 284 页)

单元知识浓缩（根据汉语提示，用适当的单词或短语完成短文）

Kate is a _____[1]（西方的）girl, but she enjoys reading the traditional Chinese book *Journey to the West*. She _____[2]（开始）to read this book at the age of six. The book says that _____[3]（从前）a _____[4]（有魔力的）rock opened up and a monkey was _____[5]（出生）. He can make his magic _____[6]（棍；棒）big or small and turn himself into different animals or _____[7]（物体）. But unless he can _____[8]（隐藏）his tail, he can't turn himself into a person. He always helps the _____[9]（虚弱的）and never gives up. Kate thinks he is really _____[10]（勇敢的）and likes him very much.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 7 What's the highest mountain in the world?

词汇表听写



记忆大师

Period 1 Section A(1a–2d)

必背单词

1. **square** *n.* 平方；正方形
2. **meter** *n.* 米；公尺
3. **deep** *adj.* 深的；纵深的→ deeply *adv.* 深深地
4. **desert** *n.* 沙漠
5. **population** *n.* 人口；人口数量
6. **Asia** *n.* 亚洲
7. **tour** *n.* & *v.* 旅行；旅游→ tourist *n.* 旅行者；观光者
8. **wall** *n.* 墙
9. **ancient** *adj.* 古代的；古老的
10. **protect** *v.* 保护；防护→ protection *n.* 保护；防卫
11. **wide** *adj.* 宽的；宽阔的→ wider(比较级) → widest (最高级)

必背短语

12. as far as I know 就我所知

必背句子

13. Qomolangma is **higher than any other** mountain in the world.
珠穆朗玛峰比世界上其他任何一座山都高。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

14. China has **the biggest population** in the world.
中国是世界上人口最多的国家。

15. It's much **older than** my country.
它比我的国家要古老得多。

16. **Feel free to** ask me anything on today's Great Wall tour. 在今天的长城游中，大家尽管问我任何问题，不要拘束。

Period 2 Section A(3a–3c)

必背单词

1. **achievement** *n.* 成就；成绩→ achieve *v.* 达到；完成；成功
2. **thick** *adj.* 厚的；浓的→反义词 :thin(薄的；稀的)
3. **include** *v.* 包括；包含
4. **freezing** *adj.* 极冷的；冰冻的
5. **condition** *n.* 条件；状况→ in good/bad/excellent condition 状况好 / 糟糕 / 极佳
6. **succeed** *v.* 实现目标；成功→ success *n.* 成功→ successful *adj.* 成功的
7. **challenge** *v.* & *n.* 挑战；考验
8. **force** *n.* 力；力量
9. **nature** *n.* 自然界；大自然→ natural *adj.* 自然的，天然的

必背短语

10. take in 吸入；吞入（体内）
11. risk one's life 冒生命危险
12. in the face of 面对（问题、困难等）
13. even though（= even if）即使，虽然

必背句子

14. One of the main reasons is **that** people want to challenge themselves in the face of difficulties.
主要原因之一是人们想在面对困难时挑战自己。

15. The spirit of these climbers **shows** us **that** we should never give up trying to achieve our dreams. 这些登山者的精神向我们表明：我们决不应该放弃实现自己梦想的尝试。

Period 3 Section A(Grammar Focus–4c)

必背单词

1. **ocean** *n.* 大海；海洋

必背句子&语法

2. What's **the highest** mountain in the world?
世界上最高的山是什么？

3. How high is Qomolangma? 珠穆朗玛峰多高？
It's 8,844.43 meters high. It's **higher than** any other mountain.
它高 8,844.43 米。它比其他任何山都高。

Period 4 Section B(1a–1d)

必背单词

1. **weigh** *v.* 重量是……；称……的重量→ weight *n.*(某物的) 重量，分量
2. **birth** *n.* 出生；诞生→ at birth 出生时
3. **adult** *adj.* 成年的；成人的→ adult *n.* 成人；成年动物

必背短语

4. up to 到达（某数量、程度等）；至多有；不多于

Period 5 Section B(2a–2e)

必背单词

1. **bamboo** *n.* 竹子
2. **research** *n.* & *v.* 研究；调查（用作名词时，重音可放在第一个音节）→ research into 研究
3. **keeper** *n.* 饲养员；保管人
4. **awake** *adj.* 醒着→ wake sb. up 叫醒某人
5. **excitement** *n.* 激动；兴奋→ excite *v.* 使激动；使兴奋
6. **illness** *n.* 疾病；病→ ill *adj.* 有病的
7. **wild** *adj.* 野生的
8. **government** *n.* 政府；内阁

必背短语

9. walk into 走路时撞着
10. fall over 绊倒
11. take care of 照顾
12. die from 死于

必背句子

13. This elephant weighs **many times more than** this panda.
这头大象比这只大熊猫重好多倍。

14. Another 300 **or so** live in zoos or research centers in China and other countries.
在中国和其他国家的动物园和研究中心里另外还有 300 只左右生活。

Period 6 Section B(3a–Self Check)

必背单词

1. **whale** *n.* 鲸
2. **oil** *n.* 油；食用油；石油
3. **huge** *adj.* 巨大的；极多的

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 1 Section A（1a–2d）

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

Language Goal: Talk about geography and nature
语言目标：谈论地理和自然

Qomolangma/'tʃəʊməʊˌlɑ:ŋmə/ 珠穆朗玛峰	the Nile/naɪl/ 尼罗河
the Caspian/'kæspiən/ Sea 里海	the Sahara/sə'hɑ:rə/ 撒哈拉沙漠

1a Match the facts you know. 将你知道的事实匹配起来。

Qomolangma 珠穆朗玛峰	about 9,600,000 square/skweə/, /skwer/① kilometers in size② 面积大约 9600000 平方公里
The Sahara 撒哈拉沙漠	1,025 meters/'mi:tə(r)z/ deep/di:p/③ 1025 米深
The Caspian Sea 里海	6,671 kilometers long 6671 公里长
The Nile 尼罗河	8,844.43 meters high 8844.43 米高

1b Listen and complete the sentences. 听录音并完成句子。

课文听力 1b

1. Qomolangma is _____ than any other④ mountain in the world.
   珠穆朗玛峰比世界上其他任何一座山_____。
2. The Sahara is _____ desert/'dezə(r)t/ in the world. 撒哈拉沙漠是世界上_____沙漠。
3. The Caspian Sea is _____ of all the salt lakes. 里海是所有咸水湖中_____。
4. The Nile is _____ river in the world. 尼罗河是世界上_____河。

1c Use the information in 1b to make conversations. 用 1b 中的信息编对话。

A: What is the highest mountain in the world? 世界上最高的山是什么?

B: Qomolangma. 珠穆朗玛峰。

2a Listen and number the facts[1-4]in the order you hear them.
听录音并根据你听到的顺序按 [1–4] 给事实排序。

课文听力 2a

6,300	5,000	5,464	300

_____The Yangtze/'jæŋtsi/ River is about _____ kilometers long and the Yellow River is _____ kilometers long. 长江大约_____公里长，黄河_____公里长。

_____China has the biggest population/ˌpɒpju'leɪʃn/, /ˌpɑ:pju'leɪʃn/⑤ in the world. It's a lot bigger than the population of the US. 中国有世界上最多的人口。它比美国人口多得多。

_____China is over _____ years old. It has a much longer history than the US. The US is not even _____ years old. 中国有_____多年的历史。它的历史比美国的历史长得多。美国的历史甚至不到_____年。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

_____China is almost as big as the US, and it is the biggest country in Asia/'eɪʒə/, /'eɪʃə/.
中国跟美国几乎一样大，而且它是亚洲最大的国家。

2b Listen again and fill in the blanks in 2a with the numbers in the box.
再听一遍录音，用方框里的数字填 2a 里的空。

2c Make conversations using the information in 2a. 用 2a 中的信息编对话。

A: Did you know that China is one of the oldest countries in the world?
你知道中国是世界上最古老的国家之一吗？

B: Yes, I did. It's much older than my country. 是的，我知道。它比我的国家要古老得多。

2d Role-play the conversation. 分角色表演对话。



Guide: Feel free ⑥ to ask me anything on today's Great Wall tour/tʊə/, /tʊr/ ⑦.
在今天的长城游中，大家尽管问我任何问题，不要拘束。

Tourist/'tʊərɪst/, /'tʊrɪst/ **1:** How long is the wall/wɔ:l/? 这城墙有多长？

Guide: Ah, the most popular question! If we're only talking about the parts from the Ming Dynasty/'dɪnəsti/, /'daɪnəsti/, it's about 8,850 kilometers long. This makes it the longest wall in the world. 啊，最普遍的问题！如果我们只说从明朝开始的部分，它大约 8850 千米长。这使它成为世界上最长的城墙。

Tourist 2: Wow, that's amazing/ə'meɪzɪŋ/ ⑧! Why did the ancient/'eɪnʃənt/ ⑨ emperors build the wall? 哇，太神奇了！古代皇帝为什么修城墙呢？

Guide: The main reason was to protect/prə'tekt/ ⑩ their part of the country. As you can see, it's quite tall and wide/waɪd/. As far as I know ⑪, there are no other man-made/ˌmæn'meɪd/ objects as big as this. 主要原因是为了保护他们那部分的国土。正如你们所看到的，它十分高且宽。据我所知，再没有其他像它这样大的人造物体了。

Tourist 3: Is Badaling part of the Ming Great Wall? 八达岭（长城）是明长城的一部分吗？

Guide: Yes, it's the most famous part. 是的，它是最有名的部分。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用　　•考点批注

★about 9,600,000 square kilometers in size

① **square** /skweə/*n.* 平方（用于数字后表示面积）；正方形

e.g. Our new house is 95 square meters in size.
我们的新家面积为 95 平方米。

Tian'anmen Square 天安门广场　作名词，广场

② **in size** 在尺寸上；在大小方面

e.g. The pairs of shoes are different in size.
这几双鞋子是不同的尺码。

The island is about 3.15 square kilometers in size.
这个岛屿的面积大约是 3.15 平方千米。　be…in size 相当于 have an area of….

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★1,025 meters deep

deep 的名词形式是 depth 深度，类似的词还有：long(adj.)→length(n.)，high(adj.)→height(n.)，wide(adj.)→width(n.)。

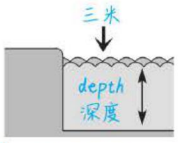
③ **deep**/diːp/*adj.* 深的；纵深的

e.g. The water is only a few inches deep. (=The water is only a few inches in depth.) 水只有几英寸深。

What's the depth of the water here? 这儿的水有多深？

拓展：英语中长、宽、高等的表达法：

长、宽、高等的表达法
- 基数词+单位词+形容词（long,wide,high,deep等）
- 基数词+单位词+in+名词（length,width,height, depth等）



three meters deep (=three meters in depth) 三米深

e.g. The rope is two meters long.(=The rope is two meters in length.)
这条绳子有两米长。

My father was deeply moved by the film.
我父亲被这部电影深深地感动了。

副词，深深地，通常表示情感上的深度。

★Qomolangma is _____ than any other mountain in the world.

④ **any other** 其他任何一个

e.g. Peter runs faster than any other student/the other students/the others in his class. 彼得比班上其他任何一个同学 / 其他所有的同学都跑得快。

any other 后加可数名词单数，常用于比较级句型，表达最高级含义。可与"the other + 名词复数"或"the others"互换。

考题在线 1 —Do you know Shanghai is one of _____ in the world?
—Yes, it's bigger than _____ city in China. [龙东]

A. the biggest city; any B. the biggest cities; any
C. the biggest cities; any other

点拨：用语法判定法解题。"最……的……之一"表达法为："one of+the+形容词最高级 + 名词复数"，"比较级 +than+any other+ 名词单数"是用比较级形式表达最高级概念，意为"比其他任何……更……"。

★China has the biggest population in the world.

population 作"人口，人口数量"讲，作主语时谓语动词常用单数形式。

⑤ **population**/ˌpɒpjuˈleɪʃn/*n.* 人口；人口数量

e.g. The population is increasing by about 6% per year.
人口正以每年约 6% 的速度增加。

What's the population of China?(=How many people are there in China?)
中国的人口是多少？

当主语是"人口的百分之几、几分之几"时，谓语动词单复数形式均可。

Nearly 70 percent of the population still live(s) in the countryside.
主语 谓语
有接近 70% 的人口仍住在乡村。

The old town has a small population.
这座古镇的人口很少。

表示人口"多少"时，"多"用 large，"少"用 small。

小贴士：population 和 people 的区别：前者通常用 what 来提问，后者用 how many 来提问。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★Feel free to ask me anything on today's Great Wall tour.

⑥ **feel free**（可以）随便（做某事）

e.g. Please feel free to ask questions.
请随意提问。

★feel free to do sth. 表无需拘束，按照自己的意愿去做某事。feel free 是英语口语中一个常用表达。

考题在线 2 —Mr.Wilson, can I ask you some questions about your speech?
—Certainly, feel _____ to ask me.
A. good　　B. calm　　C. free　　D. happy

⑦ **tour** /tʊə/ *n.*&*v.* 旅行；旅游

e.g. We're going to tour Lijiang this autumn.
今年秋天我们将去丽江旅游。作动词，旅行，旅游

The hotel is very popular with tourists.
这家旅馆很受游客欢迎。

★tour 的相关词：
- tourist (*n.*) 游客；旅行者；观光者
- tourism (*n.*) 旅游业
- touristy (*adj.*) 吸引很多游客的

考题在线 3 —The mountain in our hometown isn't very _____.
—I agree with you. Few _____ like to go sightseeing there.
A. touristy; tourists　　B. touristy; tour
C. tourists; touristy　　D. tourist; tourists

点拨：第一空所在句缺表语，且 very 修饰形容词，故用 touristy；第二空所在句缺主语，且 few 后跟可数名词复数，故用 tourists。

核心素养之文化意识

培养旅游情怀，学会生活

旅游可以增长知识(knowledge)，锻炼身体，使人明智(wise)。古人云："读万卷书不如行万里路"。去名胜古迹可以看看古人在这块土地上的遗迹；去自然风景区，能够直接面对自然界的奇异景观，陶冶情操，增长见闻；去繁华的大都市可以目睹大城市的时尚繁荣和人间百态。

素养 行动 与家人或朋友在旅游之前，通过网络或书籍了解一下旅游的目的地，这样你会有更多的收获。

素养 行动结果 在旅游中学习，学会热爱大自然。

★Wow, that's amazing!

⑧ **amazing** /əˈmeɪzɪŋ/ *adj.* 令人大为惊奇的；令人惊喜（或惊叹）的

e.g. She makes the most amazing cakes. 她做的蛋糕最令人叫绝。

I was amazed at her knowledge of space.
她丰富的太空知识令我大为惊奇。

amaze 的相关词：
- amaze *v.* 使惊诧；使惊奇
- amazing *adj.* 令人大为惊奇的
- amazed *adj.*（感到）大为惊奇的

考题在线 4 —Are you a fan of the science TV show *Super Brain*?
—Yes, I'm always _____ by these people's great brainpower.
[连云港]
A. tired　　B. amazed　　C. bored　　D. satisfied

点拨：本题用词义辨析法。tired 疲劳的；amazed 大为惊奇的；bored 厌倦的；satisfied 满意的。通过情境和句意可知答案。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

小贴士：ancient的音标以元音音素开头，其前有不定冠词修饰时用an。

★**Why did the ancient emperors build the wall?**

⑨ **ancient**/'eɪnʃənt/ *adj.* (belonging to a period of history that is thousands of years in the past) 古代的；古老的

e.g. This is an ancient oak tree.

这是一棵古橡树。



★**The main reason was to protect their part of the country.**

⑩ **protect**/prə'tekt/*v.* 保护；防护 protect…from/against… 保护……免受/遭……

e.g. They sat together to protect themselves from the wind.

他们坐在一起，免受风吹。

The law provides protection for threatened animals and plants.

这条法规保护了濒危的动植物。不可数名词，意为“防卫；保护”。

★**As far as I know, there are no other man-made objects as big as this.**

⑪ **as far as I know** 就我所知

e.g. As far as I know, he'll be away for three months.

就我所知，他将离开三个月。

相当于so far as I know，是一个固定表达，as far as 远至。

考题在线答案 1.C 2.C 3.A 4.B

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力20分

（答案见284页）

听力技巧

常识预测法（听录音时，根据自己的常识预测录音中的地名和数字将有助于我们有目的地集中注意力，然后根据我们所学过的地理知识解答题目就很容易了。）

听力过程

课文听力1b

一、听1b，选择正确答案

1. According to the conversation, what is the Sahara?

A. A mountain. B. A desert. C. A river.

2. According to the conversation, which is the second longest river in the world?

A. The Nile. B. The Amazon River.

C. The Yangtze River.

课文听力2a

二、听2a，选择正确答案

3. According to the conversation, which country is over 5,000 years old?

A. China. B. England.

C. The United States.

4. Which is NOT true according to the conversation?

A. China is one of the oldest countries in the world.

B. The United States is one of the youngest countries in the world.

C. The Yellow River is the longest river in Asia.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见284页)

一、根据句意及首字母提示补全单词

1. The village is about 2,000 m_____ above the level.
2. Many t_____ come here to visit the big tree every year.
3. The lake is 200 meters d_____.
4. There are many a_____ walls in Xi'an.
5. This is an a_____ story.

二、根据汉语意思完成句子，每空一词

6. 加拿大的人口是多少?
_____ _____ _____ of Canada?
7. 就我所知，莉萨是她家最小的孩子。
_____ _____ _____ _____ _____, Lisa is the youngest child in her family.
8. 她戴着太阳镜以免眼睛受到阳光的伤害。
She is wearing sunglasses to _____ her eyes _____ the sunlight.
9. 汤姆比吉姆学校的任何学生都高。
Tom is _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ in Jim's school.
10. 你随时都可以来这里吃晚餐。
_____ _____ _____ eat dinner here anytime.

Period 2 Section A (3a–3c)

课时导入

Ⅰ. 课文原文、译文

3a Read the article and match each paragraph with the main ideas.

读文章，将各段落与其主旨大意相匹配。

课文朗读 3a

Paragraph 1 Spirit of climbers 第一段 登山者的精神

Paragraph 2 Achievements/ə'tʃi:vmənts/ of climbers 第二段 登山者的成就

Paragraph 3 Facts and dangers 第三段 事实与危险

Qomolangma—the Most Dangerous Mountain in the World?

珠穆朗玛峰——世界上最危险的山峰?

One of the world's most dangerous sports is mountain climbing, and one of the most popular places for this is the Himalayas/ˌhɪmə'leɪəz/. The Himalayas run along the southwestern /ˌsaʊθ'westə(r)n/ part of China. Of all the mountains, Qomolangma rises the highest and is the most famous. It is 8,844.43 meters high and so is very dangerous to climb. Thick/θɪk/① clouds cover the top and snow can fall very hard. Even more serious difficulties include/ɪn'klu:d/② freezing/'fri:zɪŋ/③ weather conditions/kən'dɪʃnz/④ and heavy storms. It is also very hard to take in⑤ air as you get near the top. 世界上最危险的运动之一就是登山，而(登山)最受欢迎的地点之一就是喜马拉雅山脉。喜马拉雅山脉绵延于中国西南部。在所有山脉中，珠穆朗玛峰海拔最高并且最有名。它高达8844.43米，因此攀登起来很危险。厚厚的云层遮盖着山顶，并且雪会下得很大。更加严峻的困难包括极冷的天气状况和巨大的风暴。还有，随着你接近山顶，就很难吸进空气。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

The first people to reach the top were Tenzing/'tenzɪŋ/ Norgay/'nɒrgeɪ/ and Edmund/'edmənd/ Hillary/'hɪlərɪ/ on May 29, 1953. The first Chinese team did so in 1960, while the first woman to succeed/sək'si:d/⑥ was Junko/'dʒu:ŋkəʊ/ Tabei/tɑ:'beɪ/ from Japan in 1975.

1953 年 5 月 29 日，第一批到达山顶的人是丹增·诺尔盖和埃德蒙·希拉里。第一支中国队伍到达山顶是在 1960 年，而在 1975 年第一个成功登顶的女性是来自日本的田部井淳子。

Why do so many climbers risk their lives? One of the main reasons is that people want to challenge/'tʃælɪndʒ/⑦ themselves in the face of⑧ difficulties. The spirit of these climbers shows us that we should never give up trying to achieve/ə'tʃi:v/⑨ our dreams. It also shows that humans can sometimes be stronger than the forces/fɔ:(r)sɪz/⑩ of nature/'neɪtʃə(r)/⑪.

为什么如此多的登山者会冒着生命危险登山呢？其中一个主要原因是人们想在面对困难时挑战自己。这些登山者的精神向我们表明：我们决不应该放弃实现自己梦想的尝试。它还表明，人类有时可能会比大自然的力量更强大。

3b Read the article again and complete the chart. 再读一遍文章并完成图表。

Paragraph 1 第一段	Paragraph 2 第二段	Paragraphs 1 & 3 第一段和第三段
List four dangers for climbers 列出对于登山者来说的四种危险因素	List three achievements 列出三项成就	List four comparisons 列出四个比较
thick clouds 厚厚的云层	1953—Tenzing Norgay and Edmund Hillary were the first to reach the top 1953 年——丹增·诺尔盖和埃德蒙·希拉里成为第一批到达山顶的人	most dangerous sport 最危险的运动

3c Answer the questions using information from the article. 用文章中的信息回答问题。

1. Where are the Himalayas? 喜马拉雅山脉在哪里?
2. How high is Qomolangma? 珠穆朗玛峰多高?
3. Why do so many people try to climb this mountain even though⑫ it is dangerous? 即使这座山很危险为什么还有如此多的人试图登上它?
4. What does the spirit of the climbers tell us? 登山者的精神告诉我们什么?

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读 60分

☞（答案见 284 页）

阅读过程

一、速读 3a，回答问题

1. Why do so many climbers risk their lives?

（细节查找题）

二、细读 3a，选择正确答案

2. What is the Chinese meaning of the word "challenge"? （词义猜测题）

A. 斗争　B. 鼓励　C. 挑战　D. 支持

3. Which part of China do the Himalayas run along? （细节查找题）

A. The northwestern part.

B. The northeastern part.

C. The southeastern part.

D. The southwestern part.

4. Which is NOT true according to the passage? （细节判断题）

A. Qomolangma is the most famous and

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

highest mountain in the world.

B. Qomolangma is 8,844.43 meters high.

C. Qomolangma is covered by thick smog.

D. It often snows heavily in Qomolangma.

5. When did the first people reach the top of Qomolangma? （细节查找题）

A. In 1977. B. In 1975.

C. In 1960. D. In 1953.

Ⅲ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用 •考点批注

★Thick clouds cover the top and snow can fall very hard.

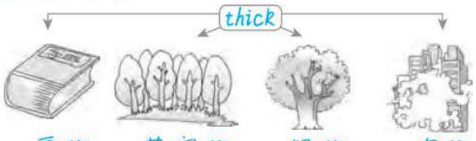
① **thick**/θɪk/ *adj.* 厚的；浓的 反义词为 thin“薄的；稀的”

e.g. He put on a thick sweater because it was cold.

因为冷他穿上了一件厚毛衣。

They walked through the thick forest.

他们徒步穿过了茂密的森林。



★Even more serious difficulties include freezing weather conditions and heavy storms.

② **include**/ɪn'klu:d/ *v.* 包括；包含 用于指某物包含某些部分，一般不用于进行时态。

e.g. The price includes both your shirt and your trousers.

这个价格包括了你的衬衫和裤子。

Ten members were present at the meeting, including me(=me included). 包括我在内的10名成员出席了这次会议。

Everybody had something to say, me included.

所有的人，包括我在内，都有些话要说。

including sth. 相当于 sth. included，其中 including 为介词。included 为形容词，无比较等级，仅置于名词或代词后，作后置定语。

考题在线1 Your payment doesn't i_____ the tickets to the show. So you need to give me another ten *yuan* if you want to see it.

[荆州]

点拨：本题用句意分析法。此处句意：你的付款不包括演出门票。所以如果你想看演出的话，要再付给我10块钱。根据句意可知此处填include，包括。

③ **freezing**/'fri:zɪŋ/*adj.* 极冷的；冰冻的 freeze-froze-frozen

e.g. It was well below freezing last night.

昨晚气温到了冰点以下。→名词，冰点

The lake had frozen overnight.

湖上一夜之间就结了冰。→动词，（使）结冰；（使）冻结

Today it is freezing, and you had better put on your coat.

今天极冷，你最好穿上外套。

I don't like frozen food.

我不喜欢冷冻食品。

辨析：freezing 与 frozen

freezing（冰冻的；极冷的）表主动的意义

frozen（冷冻的，结冰的）表被动的意义

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

④ **condition**/kən'dɪʃn/*n.* 条件；状况

e.g. Everything is in good condition.

一切状况良好。

He is overweight and out of condition.

他体重超重，健康状况不佳。

考题在线 2 Confidence is an important _____（条件）if you want to achieve success. [苏州]

Q condition 的相关搭配：

①in good/bad/excellent condition
处于良好的/糟糕的/极佳的状态

②out of condition
健康状况不佳

③living/working conditions
生活/工作条件

④under the condition that
在……的前提下

★**It is also very hard to take in air as you get near the top.**

⑤ **take in** 吸入；吞入（体内）

e.g. Do you know how plants take in water?

你知道植物如何吸收水分吗？

考题在线 3 —What do you think of the sofa? [扬州]

—Not bad, but it may_____too much space of our living room.

A. take up　　B. put up　　C. open up　　D. make up

点拨：用短语辨析法解题。take up 占据；put up 张贴，搭建；open up 打开（门，容器等）；make up 编造。结合句意可知，应是“占据起居室太多的空间”。

Q 由 take 组成的短语：

take up 开始做；占据
take out 取出
take off 脱掉；起飞
take down 拆除
take after （外貌或行为）像
take away 拿走

★**... while the first woman to succeed was Junko Tabei from Japan in 1975.**

success(*n.*) → successful(*adj.*) → successfully(*adv.*)

⑥ **succeed**/sək'si:d/ *v.* 实现目标；成功

e.g. His plan succeeded. 他的计划成功了。

The party was a big success. 聚会非常成功。

I was successful in passing the maths exam.

我成功地通过了这次数学考试。

He solved the problem successfully. 他成功地解决了这个问题。

考题在线 4 —What do you think of the speech given by Li Xun?

—It's very exciting. His speech _____ getting the teachers' appreciation.

A. succeeded in　　B. looked down

C. gave up　　D. came about

点拨：用语境分析法解题。succeed in 成功；look down 俯视；give up 放弃；come about 发生。根据语境可知答案。

succeed 是不及物动词，不能用于被动语态。常用短语：

succeed in doing sth.
成功做某事

succeed in sth.
在某方面获得成功

★**One of the main reasons is that people want to challenge themselves in the face of difficulties.**

⑦ **challenge**/'tʃælɪndʒ/*v.*&*n.* 挑战；考验

e.g. After lunch, my cousin challenged me to a game of tennis.

午饭后，我表弟硬逼着要和我打一场网球。

challenge sb.(to sth.) 向某人挑战……；（尤指在对方不情愿时）强烈建议（某人做某事）。

Q 常用搭配

face a challenge
面临挑战

meet the challenge of...
迎接……的挑战

accept/take up a challenge
接受挑战

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

We accepted their challenge to a baseball game.
我们接受了他们棒球比赛的挑战。

可数名词，意为“挑战；（比赛等的）邀请”，常跟介词 to 的短语或动词不定式。

⑧ **in the face of 面对（问题、困难等）**

e.g. They showed courage in the face of danger. 面对危险他们表现出了勇气。

The two have never met face to face before. 这两个人过去从未见过面。

面对面地

★...we should never give up trying to achieve our dreams.

⑨ **achieve**/ə'tʃi:v/ *v.* (to succeed in reaching a particular goal or doing sth; to be successful) 达到；完成；成功 名词 achievement（成就；成绩）。

e.g. I believe you will achieve your dream in the end.
我相信最终你会实现你的梦想。

辨析： achieve 与 come true

achieve	常用作及物动词	主语是人，其宾语可以是“实现”的目标、目的等，也可以是“达到”的胜利、成功、地位等
come true	不及物动词短语	其主语是希望、愿望、梦想等，不能用于被动语态

考题在线 5 Dreams are beautiful. However, to _____ them needs lots of time and work.

A. discover　　B. find　　C. achieve　　D. stop

点拨：本题用句意分析法。此处句意“梦想是美好的。然而，要实现它们需要大量的时间和努力。”achieve 表示“（通过努力）实现（梦想，目标等）”，符合句意。

一语辨异：
We all hope our dreams will come true though it is not easy to achieve them. 尽管实现梦想不容易，但我们都希望梦想成真。

★It also shows that humans can sometimes be stronger than the forces of nature.

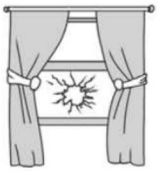
⑩ **force**/fɔ:(r)s/*n.* 力；力量；暴力

e.g. Ron is the driving force behind the project.
罗恩是这个计划的主心骨。

force 表示力量大的人（或事物），影响大的人（或事物）时，是可数名词

The force of the explosion blew out all the windows.
爆炸的冲力把所有的窗子都震碎了。

表示物理方面的“力”，是不可数名词



My parents always force me to learn more in the after-school center.
我父母总是强迫我在课后学习中心学更多东西。

作动词，“强制；逼迫；迫使”。常用结构 force sb. to do sth. /into doing sth. 迫使某人做某事。



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

不可数名词，其形容词形式为natural（自然的，天然的）。

⑪ **nature**/'neɪtʃə(r)/ *n.* 自然界；大自然

e.g. the beauty of nature 大自然的美景

My hair soon grew back to its natural color. 我的头发很快又恢复了本色。

It's only natural to worry about your children. 为孩子操心是很自然的。

★**Why do so many people try to climb this mountain even though it is dangerous?**

⑫ **even though** 即使；虽然

even though(=even if)从属连词，引导让步状语从句。even if引导的从句内容往往含有强烈的假定性，而even though引出的往往是事实。

e.g. Even though Frank left school at 16, he still became a successful writer.

即使弗兰克在16岁的时候就辍学了，但他还是成为了一位成功的作家。

考题在线6 WeChat Pay(微信支付) makes our life convenient. We can buy things _____ we don't take any money. [东营]

A. unless　　B. because　　C. even if　　D. so that

点拨：本题用联系上下文法。unless除非；because因为；even if即使；so that以便。结合前句中"makes our life convenient"可推知后句应表示"即使不带钱，我们也能买到东西。"

考题在线答案 1. include　2. condition　3. A　4. A　5. C　6. C

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础20分

☞(答案见284页)

一、根据句意及汉语提示或首字母提示写出单词

1. _____(浓的) black ink like that won't be washed off easily.
2. We had to use _____(力量) to get into the house.
3. It was f_____ cold that morning.
4. Their working c_____ are poor.
5. The strong man would like to c_____ nobody.

二、用括号内所给单词的适当形式填空

6. —How much should I pay?
   —18 *yuan* in all, _____(include) the pen you picked out just now. [常州]
7. Babies have a _____(nature) fear of falling.
8. His new book was a great _____(succeed).
9. China has been making many great _____(achieve) in every field these years, which amazes the world. [泰安]
10. Could you please speak a little _____(much) slowly? 【导学号：2039901】

三、根据汉语意思完成句子，每空一词

11. 打开窗户，呼吸一下新鲜空气。
    Open the window and _____ _____ some fresh air.
12. 面对危险他总是镇静自若。
    He was always cool _____ _____ _____ _____ danger.
13. 他冒着生命危险去帮助其他人逃离。
    He _____ _____ _____ helping others to escape.
14. 主要原因之一是他不喜欢他做事的方式。
    One of _____ _____ _____ is that he doesn't like the way he does things.
15. 尽管他经验最少，但教得最好。
    He's the best teacher _____ _____ he has the least experience.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 3 Section A（Grammar Focus-4c）

I. 课文原文、译文

Grammar Focus 语法聚焦

What's the highest mountain in the world? 世界上最高的山是什么？	Qomolangma. 珠穆朗玛峰。
How high is Qomolangma? 珠穆朗玛峰多高？	It's 8,844.43 meters high. It's higher than any other mountain. 它高达 8844.43 米。它比其他任何一座山都高。
Which is the deepest salt lake in the world? 世界上最深的咸水湖是哪一个？	The Caspian Sea is the deepest of all the salt lakes. 里海是所有咸水湖里最深的。
Did you know that China is one of the oldest countries in the world? 你知道中国是世界上最古老的国家之一吗？	Yes, I did. It's much older than the US. 是的，我知道。它比美国古老得多。

4a Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the words in the box. 用方框中单词的正确形式填空。

big 大的　much……得多　popular 受欢迎的　long 长的　old 古老的　high 高的

1. The Amazon River is one of the _____ rivers in the world. It's a little _____ than the Yangtze River. 亚马孙河是世界上_____河流之一。它比长江_____一点。
2. Qomolangma is 8,844.43 meters _____. It's one of the most _____ places for serious mountain climbers.
   珠穆朗玛峰有 8844.43 米_____。它对于热衷登山的人来说是最_____的地方之一。
3. No ocean/'əʊʃn/ in the world is as _____ as the Pacific/pə'sɪfɪk/ Ocean.
   世界上没有一个海洋像太平洋一样_____。
4. Although Japan is _____ than Canada, it is _____ smaller.
   虽然日本比加拿大_____，但是却小_____。

4b Write two comparisons about two topics. Write true facts.
就两个话题写两个比较级的句子。要写事实信息。

e.g. Two rivers: the Yangtze River and the Amazon/'æməzən/, /'æməzɑ:n/ River
例如：两条河：长江与亚马孙河
The Yangtze River is almost as long as the Amazon River. 长江几乎和亚马孙河一样长。
The Amazon is longer than the Yangtze, but the Yangtze is the longest river in China.
亚马孙河比长江长，但是长江是中国最长的河流。

Two cities 两个城市：_____ and _____　_____ 和 _____
1. _____
2. _____

Two animals 两种动物：_____ and _____　_____ 和 _____
1. _____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

2. _____

4c Write five questions using comparisons. Then ask your partner your questions.

使用比较级写五个问题，然后向你的同伴提问。

1. What is the highest building in our city? 我们城市里最高的建筑物是什么？

2. _____ 3. _____

4. _____ 5. _____

Ⅱ. 单元语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

基数词“游乐场”

考点 1 表示数量

表示确切的数量直接用基数词，表示不确切的数量则用 hundred, thousand, million, billion 等的复数再搭配介词 of。

e.g. Two hundred people were present at the meeting. 两百人参加了会议。

Hundreds of students are playing on the playground. 数百名学生正在操场上玩。

考题在线 1 The number “23, 456” can be read as “_____”.

A. twenty-three thousand, four hundred and fifty-six

B. twenty-three thousand and four hundred fifty-six

C. two three thousand and four five six

D. two three thousand, four and five six

点拨：在英语中读数字时，从数字的右端向左数，每三位数加一个逗点，第一个逗点前的数为 thousand（千），读的时候在 hundred 后加 and。

考题在线 2 Unluckily, _____ people were killed in the earthquake. [安顺]

A. two thousands B. thousand of

C. two thousands of D. thousands of

速记小筏：巧记 hundred, thousand, million 的用法：
模糊数目两有（有 s，有 of），
具体数目两无（无 s，无 of）。

考点 2 表示时刻

数词表示时刻时，一般先读整点数，再读分钟数，后面可加上 a.m./p.m., a.m. 表示“上午”，p.m. 表示“下午”。也可先读分钟数，再读整点数。分钟数不超过 30（包括 30 分钟在内），借助 past 表示；分钟数超过 30，借助 to 表示。

8：30 a.m. 读作 eight thirty a.m.（上午 8 点 30 分）

4：05 p.m. 读作 four o five p.m.（下午 4 点 5 分）

6：10 读作 ten past six

9：56 读作 four to ten

认识比较等级“太空村”

考点 1 形容词、副词比较级和最高级构成

形容词、副词比较级和最高级有规则构成和不规则构成两种。具体见下表：

规则		示例
规则构成	一般在词尾加 -er，-est	high 高的 higher 较高的 highest 最高的 fast 快地 faster 更快地 fastest 最快地
	以不发音的字母 e 结尾，只加 -r，-st	brave 勇敢的 braver 较勇敢的 bravest 最勇敢的 late 晚的 later 更晚的 latest 最晚的
	以一个辅音字母结尾的重读闭音节词，双写这一辅音字母后再加 -er，-est	big 大的 bigger 较大的 biggest 最大的 hot 热的 hotter 更热的 hottest 最热的 thin 薄的 thinner 更薄的 thinnest 最薄的

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

规则		示例
规则构成	以“辅音字母+y”结尾的词，将 y 变为 i 再加 -er, -est	busy 忙的 busier 较忙的 busiest 最忙的 ugly 丑的 uglier 比较丑的 ugliest 最丑的 early 早期的 earlier 更早的 earliest 最早的
	多音节词和部分双音节词，在词前加 more, most	expensive 昂贵的 more/most expensive 较 / 最贵的 quickly 快地 more/most quickly 更 / 最快地
不规则构成		good/well 好的 / 地 better 较好的 / 地 best 最好的 / 地 bad/badly 差的 / 地 worse 较差的 / 地 worst 最差的 / 地 much 许多　more 更多　most 最多 little 少量　less 更少　least 最少 far 远　farther(指距离) 较远 further(指距离和抽象概念) 较远 farthest(指距离) 最远 furthest(指距离和抽象概念) 最远

考点 2 归纳：形容词比较级句型

① A+be+ 比较级 +than+B.

e.g. The Amazon River is longer than the Yangtze River, but the latter is the longest river in China. 亚马孙河比长江长，但是后者是中国最长的河流。

②主语 + 谓语 + 比较级 + 名词 + than + 对等成分 .

e.g. Tom has shorter hair than Sam.
汤姆的头发比萨姆的头发短。

③ Which/Who + be + 比较级，A or B?

e.g. Which is easier, math or English?
哪个更简单，数学还是英语?
Who is taller, Tom or Jack?
谁更高，汤姆还是杰克?

④ A + be + the+ 比较级 + of the two.... 用于两者之间的比较，“两者中较……的那个”

e.g. Tom is the taller of the two boys.
汤姆是这两个男孩中较高的那个。

⑤ ... 数量 + 比较级 + than ...

e.g. This elephant is 200 cm taller than this panda. 这头大象比这只熊猫高 200 厘米。

⑥比较级 +and+ 比较级，表示“越来越……”

e.g. The weather is colder and colder.
天气越来越冷了。

⑦ The+ 比较级 ...，the+ 比较级 ... 表示“越……，就越……”

e.g. The more you eat, the fatter you will be.
你吃得越多，你就越胖。

⑧比较级表达最高级

e.g. Tom is taller than any other boy in his class. 汤姆比班上其他任何一个男孩都高。
(=Tom is the tallest boy in his class.
汤姆是班上最高的男孩。)

考题在线 3 I hope my school life of senior high will be _____ than that of junior high. [长春]

A. more exciting　　B. very exciting
C. as exciting as　　D. the most exciting

点拨：本题用寻找题眼法。考查形容词比较等级。由题中 than 可知，本空应填形容词比较级，而 exciting 的比较级形式为 more exciting。

考题在线 4 —“Food Safety” problem is becoming _____ these days.
—I think so. The government must do something to deal with it. [滨州]

A. smaller and smaller
B. worse and worse
C. better and better
D. nicer and nicer

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

点拨：本题用语境分析法。A 项“越来越小”；B 项“越来越糟糕”；C 项“越来越好”；D 项“越来越好”。由下句中“政府必须做些事情来解决它。”可知，这一问题正变得越来越糟糕。

考点 3 归纳：形容词最高级句型

① C + be + the + 最高级 + of/in（三者或以上范围的）.

e.g. My mother is the busiest in my family.
我妈妈在家里是最忙的。

考题在线 5 Tony is _____ of the three boys, but he is the tallest. [北京]

A. young　　B. younger

C. youngest　　D. the youngest

点拨：根据“of the three boys”及“the tallest”可知空格处要用最高级，最高级前通常加定冠词 the。

② C+be+one of the+ 最高级 + 名词复数 +in/of ...

e.g. Shenzhen is one of the biggest cities in China. 深圳是中国最大的城市之一。

③ C+be+the+ 序数词 + 最高级 + 名词 +in/of ...

e.g. The Yellow River is the second longest river in China.
黄河是中国第二长河。

④ Wh- 词 +be+the+ 最高级，A，B or C?

e.g. Which is the biggest, the moon, the earth or the sun?
月球、地球和太阳，哪一个是最大的?

⑤ C+be+the+ 最高级 + 名词 + 定语从句 (I have seen/heard/met/ read).

e.g. She is the most beautiful girl (who/that)I have met.
她是我遇见过的最漂亮的女孩。

考题在线 6 用括号中所给词的正确形式填空。

It might be one of the _____ (famous) poems about spring in China. [济宁]

点拨：此处句意“在中国，它可能是关于春天的最著名的诗歌之一。”“one of the + 形容词最高级 + 可数名词复数”表示“最……的……之一”。

考点 4 归纳：同级比较句型

① ... as+ 原级 +as ... .

e.g. This box is as big as mine.
这箱子和我的一样大。

He ran as fast as Tony.
他跑得和托尼一样快。

② ... not so/as+ 原级 +as ... .

e.g. This box is not as big as mine.
这箱子不如我的大。

He did not run as fast as Tony.
他跑得不如托尼快。

考题在线 7 Daniel is _____ his twin brother. They are both 1.75 meters tall. [宿迁]

A. taller than

B. shorter than

C. as tall as

D. so tall as

点拨：本题用语法判定法。句意“丹尼尔和他的双胞胎弟弟一样高。他们都是 1.75 米的身高。”根据“他们都是 1.75 米的身高。”可知用 as...as，意为“和……一样”表达。

考点 5 比较级和最高级的修饰语

① 比较级的修饰语

比较级的常用修饰语主要有 much(……得多), even(更加), still(更), yet(更), far(……得多), a lot(很), a great deal(很多), a little(有点), a bit(有点), rather(很)，倍数、分数、百分数等。

e.g. These tomatoes are a little cheaper than those.
这些西红柿比那些稍便宜点。

This room is twice bigger than that one.
这个房间比那个房间大一倍。

② 最高级的修饰语

最高级的常用修饰语有序数词以及 much(最), by far(最；很), nearly(几乎), almost(几乎) 等。

e.g. Tourism has become the second largest industry in the country.
旅游业已成为该国的第二大产业。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

This is by far the best song that I've ever heard.
这是我听过的最好听的歌。

This tree is almost/nearly the tallest one.
这棵树几乎是最高的。

考题在线 8 —Do you know that China is one of _____ countries in the world?
—Yes, I do. It's _____ older than America. [眉山]

A. the oldest; very
B. old; very
C. the oldest; much
D. oldest; much



点拨：本题用寻找题眼法。由 one of the +*adj.*(最高级)+*n.*(*pl.*)"最……的……之一"可知，第一个空选 the oldest；第二个空需要填副词修饰形容词的比较级形式，故用 much。

速记小筏：比较等级用法口诀
两者相比用比较，三者或以上用最高。
两者若是一个样，as … as 要用上。
甲不如乙加 not，意思与 less than 差不多。
程度递增"越来越……"，比较级用 and 连接。
两种情况同时变，The more, the better. 是样板。

考题在线答案 1.A 2.D 3.A 4.B 5.D 6.most famous 7.C 8.C

Ⅲ. 单元语法专练 夺取中考语法满分

☞(答案见284页)

一、用括号内所给单词的适当形式填空

1. This question is quite _____. That one is _____ than this one.(difficult)
2. I think the tennis game is as _____ as the soccer game. (excite)
3. What subject do you like _____?(well)
4. Take exercise one hour a day, and you will become _____ than before. (strong)
5. Uncle Wang doesn't drive as _____ as Uncle Liu. I think Uncle Liu drives _____. (carefully)

二、单项选择

6. Tony is the best student in the class because he works _____ than the others. [福建]
A. hard B. harder
C. hardest

7. —What do you think of your junior high school life?
—I think it is one of _____ periods in my life. [云南]
A. wonderful
B. more wonderful
C. much wonderful
D. the most wonderful

8. —Mary, do you prefer weekdays or weekends?
—Of course weekdays. Because I'm _____ on weekends. [成都]
A. busy
B. much busier
C. the busiest

9. —What's _____ time you're willing to wait for *Waimai* food?
—Ten minutes at most. [盐城]
A. long B. longer
C. the longer D. the longest

10. _____ you speak, _____ your English will be. [陕西]
A. The less; the more
B. The more; the better
C. The less; the better
D. The more; the less

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 4 Section B（1a–1d）

I. 课文原文、译文

1a Compare facts about these two animals. Use the language in the box to help you make sentences. 比较这两种动物的事实。使用方框中的语言帮助你造句子。

Elephant 大象
—is 350 cm/'sentɪmi:tə(r)/ tall 350 厘米高
—weighs/weɪz/① 5,000 kilos 重 5000 千克
—eats 150 kilos of food a day 一天吃 150 千克食物
Panda 大熊猫
—is 150 cm tall(standing on two legs) 150 厘米高（双腿站立）
—weighs 100 kilos 重 100 千克
—eats 10 kilos of food a day 一天吃 10 千克食物

Example sentence 例句:
This elephant weighs many times② more than this panda. 这头大象比这只大熊猫重很多倍。
(200 cm taller/shorter, weigh much more/less, eat much more/less, eat many times more)
（高 / 矮 200 厘米，重得多 / 轻得多，吃得多得多 / 少得多，吃得多很多倍）

1b Listen and check(√) the numbers you hear. 听录音，给你听到的数字打钩（√）。

_____100	_____16
_____20	_____50
_____120	___√___0.1
_____0.2	_____150

课文听力 1b

1c Listen again and complete the sentences. 再听一遍录音，完成句子。

1. At birth/bɜ:(r)θ/③, a baby panda is about _____ to _____ kilos.
出生时，一只熊猫宝宝大约_____至_____千克。
2. At birth, a baby panda is about _____ cm long. 出生时，一只熊猫宝宝大约_____厘米长。
3. A baby panda is not black. It is _____ and it has no _____.
熊猫宝宝不是黑的。它是_____并且它没有_____。
4. A panda can live up to④ _____ to _____ years. 大熊猫可以活到_____至_____岁。

1d Take turns telling your classmates about pandas. 轮流向你的同班同学讲述关于大熊猫的情况。

A: A baby panda cannot see. 熊猫宝宝看不见。

B: An adult/'ædʌlt/, /ə'dʌlt/ panda weighs many times more than a baby panda.
一只成年大熊猫比一只熊猫宝宝重很多倍。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

(答案见284页)

听力过程

听 1b，选择正确答案



1. How heavy is a baby panda?

A. About 0.1 to 0.2 kilos.

B. About 1 kilo.

C. About 2 kilos.

2. What about the size of an adult panda?

A. About 15 cm long.

B. About 50 cm long.

C. About 150 cm long.

3. What color is a baby panda?

A. Black and white. B. Blue.

C. Pink.

4. Does a baby panda have any teeth?

A. We don't know. B. Yes, it does.

C. No, it doesn't.

Ⅲ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用 •考点批注

★weighs 5,000 kilos

★用作连系动词，意为"重量是……"。对重量提问常用 How much…weigh? 或 How heavy…?

① **weigh** /weɪ/ *v.* 重量是……；称……的重量

e.g. The young birds weigh only a few grams. 雏鸟重量只有几克。

Do you know how much it weighs? 你知道它的重量吗？

He weighed the fish. 他称了称那条鱼。→作及物动词，意为"称重量，量体重（通常用磅秤）"。

You must weigh up the pros and cons.

你必须权衡利弊。→weigh sth.(up)/weigh (up) sth. 意为"认真考虑；权衡；斟酌"

Fruit and vegetables are sold by weight. 水果和蔬菜按重量出售。→（某物的）重量，分量；（某人的）体重

★This elephant weighs many times more than this panda.

② **many times** 很多倍 (多) time *n.* 倍。表示"A 比 B 长（宽、高、大、重等）……倍"时，其结构为"A+be+倍数+形容词比较级+than+B."。

e.g. This hall is five times bigger than our classroom.

这个大厅比我们的教室大四倍。

His father is twice as old as he.

他父亲的年纪是他的两倍。

小贴士："两倍"可用 twice 表示。表达倍数时，常用句型还有：A+be+倍数+as+形容词原级+as+B.

★At birth, a baby panda is about _____ to _____ kilos.

③ **at birth** 出生时 相当于 when one was born。

e.g. The baby weighed three kilos at birth. 那个婴儿出生时体重为三公斤。

Do you know his date of birth? 你知道他的出生日期吗？→作名词，意为"出生，诞生"。

Mary gave birth to a healthy baby girl. 玛丽生了个健康的女婴。→give birth (to sb./sth.) 生孩子；产崽

★A panda can live up to _____ to _____ years.

④ **up to** 到达（某数量、程度等）；至多有；不多于

e.g. The theater can hold up to 500 people. 这家剧院能容纳多达 500 人。

You can leave today or tomorrow. It's up to you.

你可以今天走，也可以明天走。你自己决定。→be up to sb. 由某人决定

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见285页)

根据汉语意思完成句子，每空一词

1. 他在脑中权衡着这些想法。
   He _____ the ideas in his mind.
2. 飞机飞行的速度是火车的好几倍。
   The plane runs _____ _____ _____ than the train.
3. 海伦出生时是个很健康的宝宝。
   Helen was a very healthy baby _____ _____.
4. 饭后走一走，活到九十九。
   You may live _____ _____ 99 years old if you take a walk after every meal.
5. 女孩人数是男孩人数的三倍。
   There are _____ _____ _____ many girls as boys.

Period 5 Section B（2a–2e）

课时导入

Ⅰ. 课文原文、译文及导读

导读批注 | 原文译文·导读

Pre-reading（读前）

2a Talk about pandas in your class. Use these words to help you. 在你的班里谈论大熊猫。用这些词来帮助你。

big 大的 bamboo/ˌbæm'bu:/ 竹子 zoo 动物园 popular 受欢迎的
cute 可爱的 black and white 黑白相间的 Sichuan 四川 famous 有名的
endangered/ɪn'deɪndʒə(r)d/ 濒危的 beautiful 漂亮的 forest 森林
protect 保护

While-reading（读中）

2b Read the article to find out what these numbers mean: 10, 12, 300, 2,000. 读文章，查明这些数字的意思：10、12、300、2000。

课文朗读2b

Scanning 寻读
This means moving your eyes quickly down the page to find specific information. 意思是快速浏览当前页，寻找具体信息。

批 体裁：说明文。

批 词语：用拟人手法形象描述了熊猫跑向饲养员时的兴奋心情，熊猫憨态可掬的可爱形象跃然纸上。

It is 8:30 a.m. at the Chengdu Research/rɪ'sɜ:(r)tʃ/ ① Base. Panda keepers/'ki:pə(r)z/ are preparing milk for ② the baby pandas' breakfast. At 9:00 a.m., they find that most of the babies are already awake/ə'weɪk/ ③ and hungry. When the babies see the keepers, they run over to them with excitement /ɪk'saɪtmənt/ ④ and some of the young pandas even walk into ⑤ their friends and fall over ⑥! 在成都研究基地，时间是早上八点三十分。熊猫饲养员正在准备牛

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

奶作为熊猫宝宝的早餐。在上午九点，他们发现大部分熊猫宝宝已经醒了而且饿了。当熊猫宝宝看到饲养员时，它们兴奋地跑向他们，其中一些年幼的小熊猫甚至撞上自己的伙伴而跌倒！

Lin Wei, one of the panda keepers, says, "They're so cute and lovely. I take care of them like they're my own babies. I wash, feed and play with them every day. They're very special to me." In fact, many people around the world love these black and white animals. Pandas have become so popular that they are now a symbol of China.

林伟，其中一个熊猫饲养员，说："它们是如此机灵可爱。我像照顾自己的孩子一样照顾它们。每天我给它们洗澡、喂食并跟它们一起玩。它们对我来说是非常特别的。"实际上，世界上有很多人喜爱这些黑白相间的动物。熊猫已经变得如此受欢迎以至于它们现在是中国的一种象征。

批 句子：运用比喻句形象地描写了 Lin Wei 对熊猫的深厚感情。

Scientists say there are now fewer than 2,000 pandas living in the forests. Another⑦ 300 or so⑧ live in zoos or research centers in China and other countries. Pandas do not have many babies, maybe only one every two years. The babies often die from⑨ illnesses/'ɪlnəsɪz/⑩ and do not live very long. Adult pandas spend more than 12 hours a day eating about 10 kilos of bamboo. Many years ago, there were a lot more bamboo forests and pandas in China, but then humans started to cut down these forests. As the forests get smaller and other human activities cause more problems, pandas cannot find enough to eat and they are having fewer babies.

批 写作手法：运用具体数字说明现今熊猫数量，直击人心。

科学家们说如今生活在森林里的大熊猫不到 2000 只。另外大约 300 只生活在中国和其他国家的动物园或研究中心。大熊猫产崽并不多，也许每两年仅产一只幼崽。熊猫宝宝经常死于疾病且活的时间不是很长。成年大熊猫每天花 12 个多小时的时间吃大约 10 千克竹子。多年前，在中国有比现在多得多的竹林和熊猫，但是之后人类开始砍伐这些森林。由于森林面积缩小以及其他人类活动引起了更多问题，熊猫找不到足够的食物致使它们产崽更少。

批 结构：递进式结构
大熊猫在研究基地生活 (Para. 1-2)
↓
大熊猫数量减少的原因 (Para. 3)
↓
保护大熊猫的措施 (Para. 4)

An education program in Chengdu teaches children about pandas and other endangered wild/waɪld/ animals. They send people to schools to tell children about the importance of saving these animals. And the Chinese government/'gʌvə(r)nmənt/ is trying hard to help save the pandas. Scientists are doing research to better understand the habits of pandas. We all hope that in the future there will be a lot more pandas. 成都的一个教育项目向孩子们教授大熊猫和其他濒危野生动物的知识。他们派人去学校告诉孩子们拯救这些动物的重要性。中国政府还正在非常努力地去帮助拯救大熊猫。科学家们正在做研究以便更好地了解大熊猫的习性。我们都希望将来会有更多的大熊猫。

批 句子：该句运用现在进行时形象描述了科学家们为拯救熊猫正在做的努力。

Post-reading（读后）

写作小练笔 ☞（答案见199页）

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

2c Read the article again and write short answers to the questions. 再次阅读文章并就这些问题写出简短的回答。

1. What is Lin Wei's job? 林伟的工作是什么? _____
2. What do the baby pandas have for breakfast? 熊猫宝宝早餐吃什么? _____
3. Why are pandas endangered? 为什么大熊猫濒临灭绝? _____
4. What does the education program in Chengdu do? 成都的教育项目是做什么的? _____
5. Why are scientists doing research? 科学家们为什么在做研究? _____

2d Complete the sentences using words from the passage. 使用文章中的词完成句子。

1. The panda _____ at the Chengdu Research Base are awake early in the morning to _____ breakfast for the baby pandas. 在成都研究基地的熊猫_____早上起很早为熊猫宝宝_____早餐。
2. In _____, pandas have become so _____ that they are now a symbol of China.
   在_____，熊猫已经变得如此_____以至于它们现在是中国的一种象征。
3. Adult pandas do not have babies very _____, and some of the babies only live for a short time because of _____.
   成年大熊猫不_____产崽，并且其中一些熊猫宝宝由于_____只活很短的时间。
4. A special program in Chengdu teaches _____ about why pandas are _____.
   成都一个特殊的项目教_____关于为什么熊猫_____。
5. The Chinese government is helping to _____ the pandas. Scientists also want to better _____ the habits of pandas.
   中国政府正在帮助_____大熊猫。科学家们也想更好地_____大熊猫的习性。

2e What other ways do you think children can help to save the pandas? 你认为孩子们可以用其他什么方式来帮助拯救大熊猫?

课文背诵指南



- **Para.1** → The panda keepers take care of pandas
  preparing milk for the baby pandas' breakfast
  the baby pandas run over to them with excitement
- **Para.2** → Lin Wei and her job
  one of the panda keepers
  take care of them: wash, feed and play with them
- **Para.3** → The reasons for fewer pandas
  pandas: don't have many babies
  the babies: often die from illnesses, don't live very long
  humans: cut down these forests, other human activities cause more problems
- **Para.4** → The ways of saving pandas
  an education program: teaches children, tell children about the importance of saving these animals
  the Chinese government: trying hard to help save pandas
  scientists: doing research to better understand the habits of pandas

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读 60分

(答案见285页)

阅读策略

先题后文法（做阅读理解时，如果文章太长，不易理解或带有一些数据，可以先把文章后面的问题看一遍，然后带着问题去阅读文章。这样可以做到有的放矢，提高做题的速度和准确性。）

阅读过程

阅读 2b，选择正确答案

拓展阅读

1. ⊙ What's the main idea of Paragraphs 3 and 4?

（段落大意题）

A. The reasons for fewer pandas and how to save them.

B. The number of pandas is smaller and smaller now.

C. We should do something to save pandas.

D. The Chinese government's measures to protect pandas.

2. Why are the pandas a symbol of China?

（细节查找题）

A. Because they are cute and popular.

B. Because there are many pandas in China.

C. Because they are black and white animals.

D. Because they eat too much bamboo every day.

3. How often do adult pandas have babies?

（细节查找题）

A. Every month.

B. Every year.

C. Every two years.

D. Every six months.

4. The phrase "fall over" in Paragraph 1 means "_____" in Chinese. （词义猜测题）

A. 携带　B. 跌倒　C. 撞上　D. 落下

5. Which is NOT true according to the passage?

（细节归纳题）

A. Adult pandas eat about 10 kilos of bamboo a day.

B. There are much more pandas in China than before.

C. An education program in Chengdu teaches children about pandas and other endangered wild animals.

D. If we don't save the pandas, there will be fewer pandas in the future.

Ⅲ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用　　•考点批注

★It is 8:30 a. m. at the Chengdu Research Base.

① **research** /rɪ'sɜ:(r)tʃ/ *n.*&*v.* 研究；调查（不可数名词）

e.g. He is doing research on ancient history.
他在从事古代历史的研究。
He is researching into the cause of cancer.
他正在研究癌症的起因。

- research on / into sth.
- do / conduct / undertake research
  做 / 从事 / 进行研究

★Panda keepers are preparing milk for the baby pandas' breakfast.

② **prepare...for...** 为……准备……

e.g. I'll prepare some food for you. 我会给你准备一些食物。

prepare 的常用搭配：
- prepare to do sth.
  准备做某事
- prepare for sth.
  为某事做准备

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★**At 9:00 a.m., they find that most of the babies are already awake and hungry.**

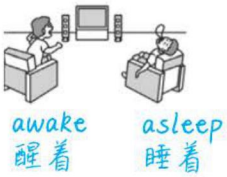
③ **awake**/ə'weɪk/ *adj.* (not asleep) 醒着 反义词是 asleep

小贴士：awake 是表语形容词，不能置于名词前作定语，也不能用 very 修饰。可在句中作表语、宾语补足语或后置定语。

e.g. Is he awake or asleep?
他是醒着还是睡着了？

I woke up very early this morning.
我今天早上醒得很早。

Please wake me up at six in the morning.
请在早上六点叫醒我。



wake up/wake sb. up 醒来 / 叫醒某人

考题在线 1 _____, Bill! It's time to go to school. [巴中]

A. Wake up B. Look up C. Make up

点拨：本题用句意分析法。此处句意：比尔，醒醒！该上学了。wake up 醒来；look up 查阅；抬头看；make up 弥补。由句意可知答案。

★**... they run over to them with excitement and some of the young pandas even walk into their friends and fall over!**

④ **excitement** /ɪk'saɪtmənt/ *n.* 激动；兴奋

激动地；兴奋地，相当于 excitedly，表示某人做某事的状态。

e.g. When he succeeded in working out the problem, he jumped with excitement.
当他解出那道难题时，他兴奋地跳了起来。

⑤ **walk into** 走路时撞着

e.g. Joe walked into a tree because he wasn't looking where he was going.
乔走路时撞到了一棵树上因为他没看路。

⑥ **fall over** 绊倒

e.g. Don't run too fast, or you might fall over. 别跑得太快，要不你会摔跤的。
Li Lei fell over a bike in the darkness.
在黑暗中李雷被一辆自行车绊倒了。

fall over sth. 意为"被某物绊倒"。

★**Another 300 or so live in zoos or research centers in China and other countries.**

⑦ **another** 另一；再一



"another+ 基数词 + 名词"="基数词 + other+ 名词"。

e.g. I had been there for another two days.(=I had been there for two other days.) 我在那里又待了两天。

考题在线 2 —What about these two coats, madam?
—_____ of them fits me.Could you show me _____ one? [达州]

A. Either; other B. Neither; another
C. Neither; else D. Either; another

点拨：根据问句中的"two"可知谈到两者；根据语境可知，需要看另外一件，这两件都不合适，故选 neither；another 指不确定数目中的另一个。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

⑧ **or so** 大约　常置于数量或时间后，表示“大约”，常用在被修饰词后，而about，around 表“大约”时，常用在被修饰词之前。

e.g. There are 30 workers or so in the factory.
这家工厂里大约有 30 名工人。

We will complete the project in two weeks or so.
我们大约两周后完成这个项目。

★**The babies often die from illnesses and do not live very long.**

⑨ **die from** 死于，表示因病而亡时，相当于 **die of**

辨析：die from 与 die of

- die from：通常指由于外部原因（事故等）造成的死亡。
- die of：通常指由于人体自身原因（年老、忧伤等）造成的死亡。


die from an accident
死于一起事故


die of sorrow
死于悲伤

⑩ **illness** /ˈɪlnəs/ *n.* “疾病；病”，通常指因病而导致的不健康的状态。

e.g. He can't come because of illness.
他因病不能来。

He died after a long illness.
他久病不愈而亡。

★英语中，有些形容词加后缀 -ness 可构成名词，表示性质、状态。
- kind—kindness（仁慈）
- cold—coldness（寒冷）
- good—goodness（善良）
- sad—sadness（悲伤）

考题在线答案　1. A　2. B

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练　稳拿中考基础 20分

☞（答案见 285 页）

一、用括号内所给单词的适当形式填空

1. He didn't go to school because of his _____ (ill).　【导学号：2039901】

2. My father works as a _____ (keep) in the zoo.

3. He was so sleepy that he could hardly keep _____ (wake) after the long walk.

4. Her big black eyes were bright with _____ (excite).

5. I'm doing _____ (research) on Roman history.

二、根据汉语意思完成句子，每空一词

6. 操场上大约有 40 名学生。
There are 40 students _____ _____ in the playground.

7. 别担心。我能照顾自己。
Don't worry. I can _____ _____ _____ myself.

8. 她的父母死于十年前的一场车祸。
Her parents _____ _____ a car accident ten years ago.

9. 你想为聚会准备什么?
What would you like to _____ _____ the party?

10. 刚才大明走路时撞到了一位老人，两个人都摔倒了。
Daming _____ _____ an old man just now, and both of them _____ _____.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 6 Section B（3a–Self Check）

I. 课文原文、译文

3a Read the following words and phrases about whales. Put them in the correct place in the chart. 读下面关于鲸鱼的单词和短语。将它们放在图表中正确的位置。

· Humans catch whales/weɪlz/ for meat, fat and oil/ɔɪl/ 人类捕捉鲸鱼获取肉、脂肪和油
· Eat small fish and other sea life 吃小鱼和其他海洋生物
· Jump high out of the water 高高地跳出水面
· Rules on whale protection/prə'tekʃn/ 鲸鱼保护规则
· Huge/hju:dʒ/ 巨大的
· Water pollution 水污染
· Live in the sea 住在海里
· Some kinds have teeth 有些种类有牙齿
· Learn more about whales 了解更多关于鲸鱼的事情
· Stop putting rubbish into the sea 停止向海里倾倒垃圾
· Sing songs 唱歌
· Whale parts sold to make things like candles and soap
鲸鱼的身体部位被卖去制造像蜡烛和肥皂之类的东西

What do they look like? 它们长什么样子?	
Where do they live? 它们住在哪里?	
What do they eat? 它们吃什么?	
What can they do? 它们能做什么?	
Why do some of them have to be protected? 为什么它们其中一些必须受到保护?	
How can we protect them? 我们怎样保护它们?	

3b Write a paragraph about whales and why they need to be protected. Use the information in 3a. Then make a poster. 用 3a 中的信息，写一段关于鲸鱼以及它们为什么需要保护的话。然后制作一张海报。

Whales are... 鲸鱼是……
They live in... 它们住在……
They eat... 它们吃……
They can... 它们能……
One interesting fact is... 一个有趣的事实是……
Another interesting fact is... 另一个有趣的事实是……
Some kinds of whales are in danger because... 有些种类的鲸鱼处于危险之中是因为……
We should protect whales from... 我们应该保护鲸鱼免受……
I think people should/shouldn't... 我认为人们应该 / 不应该……

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Self Check 自我检测

1 Complete the chart. 完成图表。

Adjectives 形容词	Comparatives 比较级	Superlatives 最高级
high 高的		
dangerous 危险的		
long 长的		
popular 受欢迎的		

2 Match verbs and objects. Then add one more object to each list.

搭配动词和宾语。然后给每列清单再添加一个宾语。

Verbs 动词	Objects 宾语
1. reach 到达	a. my life, my money, ... 我的生命，我的钱，……
2. achieve 完成；达到；成功	b.the top of a mountain, the library, ... 山顶，图书馆，……
3. risk 冒……的险	c. my dream, success, ... 我的梦想，成功，……

3 Circle the correct word and/or fill in the blank with the correct form of the word in brackets for each sentence. 圈出正确的词并 / 或者用括号中词的正确形式填空完成每个句子。

1. An elephant weighs (few/many) times more than a dog. 一头大象比一只狗重（很少 / 很多）倍。
2. An adult panda can eat (much/a little) more than a cat. 一只成年大熊猫能比一只猫吃得多（很多 / 一点儿）。
3. Canada is a (little/lot) less _____ (crowded) than China.
   加拿大比中国_____（拥挤的）（一点儿 / 很多）。
4. A tiger is (much/a little) _____ (strong) than a man.
   一只老虎比一个人_____（强壮的）（很多 / 一点儿）。

Ⅱ. 写作一课一法 夺取中考写作 20分

写作小练笔

We love pandas very much. They come from China. They are cute and beautiful.

They like to climb trees, and they can swim. They are black and white. They eat bamboo. The wild pandas live in the mountains. Some pandas are in danger because humans cut down the forests. They cannot find enough to eat and they are having fewer babies.

Please protect pandas. We all like pandas.

单元话题

请根据下表用英语写一篇 80 词左右的短文，内容须包括：对下表中关于这两个城市 (City A 和 City B) 的全部信息进行比较，分析利弊，选择其中一个城市作为你的暑假旅游目的地。

	City A	City B
Flying	2 hours	4 hours
Temperature	30℃	18℃
Hotel	★★	★★★★
Things to do	★★★★	★★
Food	★★	★★★★

In my opinion, _____ is the better place to spend my summer holiday. _____

_____

_____

_____

审题指导（把握中心，得方向分）

注意形容词、副词的比较级以及相关结构的运用。常用第一人称，一般现

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

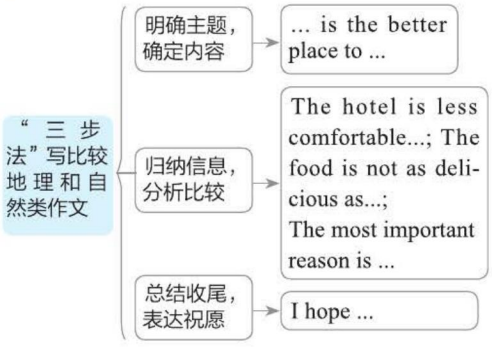
在时进行比较。

写作技法（学会方法，巧得高分）

“三步法”写比较地理和自然类作文

1. 明确主题，确定内容。
2. 归纳信息，分析比较。
3. 总结收尾，表达祝愿。

写作模板（学会套路，得基本分）



经典词句（妙用句式，得出彩分）

单词	choose, reason, less, more, compare...
短语	in my opinion, spend my summer holiday, have a lot of things to do, enjoy beautiful scenery, save us a lot of time, as...as...
句子	City A is the better place to...; I still choose...; The most important reason is that...; It takes us...to...; I hope...

范文赏析（书写工整，得印象分）

In my opinion, City A is the better place to spend my summer holiday. Although the temperature there is higher, the hotel is less comfortable, and even the food is not as delicious as that in City B, I still choose City A. The most important reason is that I will have a lot of things to do in City A. I can enjoy more beautiful scenery and do more activities. Besides, it takes us only two hours to fly there, which saves us a lot of time. I hope the holiday will be an unforgettable experience.

名师点评：本文运用了“‘三步法’写比较地理和自然类作文”，对表中所列两个城市的信息进行了分析比较，确定了选择，并表达了自己的心愿。1. 明确主题，确定内容（第1句）；2. 归纳信息，分析比较（第2–5句）；3. 总结收尾，表达祝愿（第6句）。

1. In my opinion, City A is... 开门见山，直奔主题。
2. 在比较的时候，作者用了多种方式，如：higher；less comfortable；as...as 等。
3. that 引导的表语从句等复杂句的使用显示了作者高超的英语写作技法和水平。



Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

（答案见285页）

单元知识浓缩（根据汉语提示，用适当的单词或短语完成短文）

Dear Tony,

From your last letter, I know you are interested in my country. Let me tell you something about it.

China is one of the oldest countries in the world and it is the biggest country in _____[1]（亚洲）. It has the largest _____[2]（人口）in the world. China is famous for the Great _____[3]（墙）and pandas.

The Great Wall is quite tall and _____[4]（宽的）. The _____[5]（古代的）emperors built the wall to _____[6]（保护）China. But sometimes they didn't _____[7]（成功）.

Pandas are cute animals. They enjoy eating _____[8]（竹子）. There are now fewer than 2, 000 pandas living in the _____[9]（森林）. The Chinese _____[10]（政府）is trying hard to save them.

Yours,

Lucy

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 8 Have you read *Treasure Island* yet?

词汇表听写



记忆大师

Period 1 Section A(1a–2d)

必背单词

1. **treasure** *n.* 珠宝；财富
2. **island** *n.* 岛→ an island 一座岛
3. **page** *n.*（书刊或纸张的）页，面，张→ page + 基数词 第……页→ the + 序数词 + page 第……页
4. **hurry** *v.* 匆忙；赶快 → hurry up 赶快；急忙（做某事）

必背短语

5. full of 满是……的；（有）大量的；（有）丰富的 → be filled with 用……装满
6. grow up 长大；成长

必背句子

7. **—Have you read** *Little Women* yet?
   你读过《小妇人》吗?
   —No, I haven't. 不，我没读过。
8. —**What's it like**? 它怎么样?
   —It's fantastic. 它棒极了。

Period 2 Section A(3a–3c)

必背单词

1. **ship** *n.* 船

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

2. **tool** *n.* 工具
3. **gun** *n.* 枪；炮
4. **mark** *n.* 迹象；记号；分数→ *v.* 做记号；打分
5. **sand** *n.* 沙滩；沙→ on the sand 在沙滩上
6. **towards** *prep.* 朝；向；对着
7. **land** *n.* 陆地；大地

‖必背短语

8. in the middle of 在……的中间
9. lose one's life 丧生→ save one's life 挽救某人

‖必背句子

10. **One** of them died but **the other** ran towards my house.
其中一个人死了，另一个朝我的房子跑去。

Period 3 Section A(Grammar Focus–4c)

‖必背单词

1. **fiction** *n.* 小说
2. **technology** *n.* 科技；工艺→ technological *adj.* 科技的；工艺的→ technologist *n.* 技术专家；工艺师
3. **French** *n.* 法语

‖必背短语

4. science fiction 科幻小说（或影片等）
5. can't wait to do sth. 迫不及待地想做某事→ can't help doing sth. 情不自禁做某事

‖必背句子&语法

6. —**Have** you **read** *Little Women* **yet**?
你读过《小妇人》吗?
—Yes, I have./No, I haven't.
是的，我读过了。/不，我没读过。
7. —**Has** Tina **read** *Treasure Island* **yet**?
蒂娜读过《金银岛》了吗?
—Yes, she has. She thinks it's fantastic.
是的，她已经读过了。她认为它很棒。
8. —**Have** you **decided** which book to write about **yet**?
你决定写关于哪本书了吗?
—Yes, I have. I've already finished reading it. It was really good.
是的，我决定了。我已经读完它了。它非常好。

Period 4 Section B(1a–1d)

‖必背单词

1. **pop** *n.* 流行音乐；流行乐曲
2. **rock** *n.* 摇滚乐

Period 5 Section B(2a–2e)

‖必背单词

1. **forever** *adv.* 永远
2. **abroad** *adv.* 在国外；到国外→ go abroad 到国外
3. **fan** *n.* 迷；狂热爱好者→ a fan of ……迷
4. **southern** *adj.* 南方的→ south *n.* 南方
5. **modern** *adj.* 现代的；当代的
6. **success** *n.* 成功→ succeed *v.* 成功→ successful *adj.* 成功的→ successfully *adv.* 成功地
7. **belong** *v.* 属于；归属→ belong to 属于
8. **laughter** *n.* 笑；笑声→ laugh *v.* 笑
9. **beauty** *n.* 美；美丽→ beautiful *adj.* 漂亮的→ beautifully *adv.* 漂亮地
10. **record** *n.* 唱片；记录→ *v.* 录制；录（音）→ recorder *n.* 录音机

‖必背短语

11. on the radio 通过广播
12. ever since 自从
13. such as 例如→ for example 例如
14. one another 互相→ each other 互相

‖必背句子

15. **It reminds** us **that** the best things in life are free — laughter, friends, family, and the beauty of nature and the countryside.
它提醒我们生命中最美好的事情是免费的——欢笑、朋友、家庭以及自然和乡村的美。
16. Garth is **one of the most** successful musicians in American history.
加思是美国历史上最成功的音乐人之一。
17. I **hope to see** him **sing** live one day!
我希望有一天去看他现场演唱!

Period 6 Section B(3a–Self Check)

‖必背单词

1. **introduce** *v.* 介绍；引见→ introduce sb. to sb. 把某人介绍给某人
2. **line** *n.* 行；排

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 1 Section A（1a–2d）

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

Language Goal: Talk about recent events and experiences
语言目标：谈论最近的事件和经历

1a Have you heard of these books? Check(√) the ones you know.
你听说过这些书吗？把你知道的书名打钩（√）。

_____*Alice in Wonderland*/ˈwʌndə(r)lænd/《爱丽丝梦游仙境》
_____*Little Women*《小妇人》
_____*Treasure*/ˈtreʒə(r)/ *Island*/ˈaɪlənd/《金银岛》
_____*Oliver*/ˈɒlɪvə(r)/, /ˈɑːlɪvə(r)/ *Twist*/twɪst/《雾都孤儿》
_____*Robinson Crusoe*/ˈkruːsəʊ/《鲁滨逊漂流记》
_____*Tom Sawyer*/ˈsɔːjə(r)/《汤姆·索亚历险记》

课文听力 1b

1b Listen and complete the chart. 听录音并完成表格。

Book title 书名	Name 姓名	Have they read it? 他们读过它吗?	What do they think of it? 他们觉得它如何?
	Nick 尼克		
	Judy 朱迪		
	Sandy 桑迪		
	Alan 艾伦		
	Kate 凯特		
	Harry 哈里		

1c Practice the conversation. Then talk about the other books in 1a.
练习对话。然后谈论 1a 中的其他书。

A: Have you read *Little Women* yet? 你读过《小妇人》吗?
B: No, I haven't. Have you? 不，我没读过。你呢?
A: Yes, I've already read it. 是的，我已经读过这本书了。
B: What's it like? 它怎么样?
A: It's fantastic. 它非常棒。

2a Listen. Who has read these books? Circle the names. 听录音。谁读过这些书? 圈出名字。

1. *Treasure Island*《金银岛》	Mark/Tina 马克 / 蒂娜
2. *Oliver Twist*《雾都孤儿》	Mark/Tina 马克 / 蒂娜
3. *Robinson Crusoe*《鲁滨逊漂流记》	Mark/Tina 马克 / 蒂娜
4. *Tom Sawyer*《汤姆·索亚历险记》	Mark/Tina 马克 / 蒂娜

课文听力 2a

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

2b Listen again and write *T* for true and *F* for false. 再听一遍。正确的写 T，错误的写 F。

1. *Oliver Twist* is about a boy who goes out to sea and finds an island① full of② treasures.
《雾都孤儿》是关于一个男孩出海并发现了一个满是财富的岛屿的故事。 ☐
2. *Robinson Crusoe* is a classic/'klæsɪk/.《鲁滨逊漂流记》是一部经典作品。 ☐
3. Tina thinks that *Treasure Island* is a fantastic book. 蒂娜认为《金银岛》是一本非常好的书。 ☐
4. *Tom Sawyer* is about a boy（who lives in the United Kingdom）.
定语从句
《汤姆·索亚历险记》是关于一个住在英国的男孩的故事。 ☐

2c Use the information in 2a and 2b to talk about the books. 用 2a 和 2b 中的信息谈论这些书。

A: Has Tina read *Treasure Island*? 蒂娜读过《金银岛》吗?

B: Yes, she has. She thinks it's fantastic. 是的，她已经读过了。她认为它很棒。

A: What's it about? 它是关于什么的?

B: It's about... 它是关于……

课文朗读 2d

2d Role-play the conversation. 分角色表演对话。

Amy: Steve, have you decided yet which book to write about for English class?
史蒂夫，你决定英语课上写关于哪本书的读书报告了吗? 写关于哪本书

Steve: Yes, *Little Women*. I've already finished reading it! 是的，《小妇人》。我已经读完它了!

Amy: Wow, you're fast! What's it about? 哇，你真快！它是关于什么的?

Steve: It's about four sisters growing up. It was really good, so I couldn't put it down③. Which book did you choose? 它是关于 4 个姐妹的成长故事。它真的很好，所以我对它爱不释手。你选了哪本书?

Amy: I chose *Treasure Island*, but I haven't finished reading it yet. I'm only on page/peɪdʒ/④ 25. 我选了《金银岛》，但是我还没有读完它。我只读到 25 页。

Steve: Have you at least read the back of the book to see what it's about?
宾语从句
至少你已经读过书的结尾，了解了它的大致内容了吧? to do 表目的

Amy: Yes, I have. It looks interesting. 是的，我读了。它看起来很有趣。

Steve: You should hurry/'hʌri/ up⑤. The book report is due/dju:/, /du:/⑥ in two weeks⑦.
你应该抓紧了。读书报告两周后必须交。

Amy: Yes, I know. I'll read quickly. 是的，我知道。我会快点读的。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注

•考点应用

小贴士: island 音标是以元音音素开头，所以用不定冠词修饰时，其前要用 an。

★***Oliver Twist* is about a boy who goes out to sea and finds an island full of treasures.**

① **island**/'aɪlənd/ *n.*(a piece of land that is completely surrounded by water) 岛
e.g. That is an island. I like it very much. 那是一座岛屿。我很喜欢它。

② **full of** 满是……的；（有）大量的；（有）丰富的
e.g. There are three bottles full of milk on the table.
桌子上有三个装满牛奶的瓶子。 full of milk 在句中作后置定语，相当于 filled with milk.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

The cup is full of hot tea.
杯子里装满了热茶。

Tom fills the cup with water.
汤姆把杯子装满了水。

The cup is filled with water.
这个杯子装满了水。


full　　fill

辨析：full 与 fill
- full 形容词"满的"，be full of 装满……的
- fill 及物动词"装满"，fill…(with) 将……装满；be filled with 用……装满

考题在线 1 Life is _____ the unexpected. Whatever we do, try our best. [烟台]

A. full of　　B. proud of
C. instead of　　D. because of

点拨：用短语辨析法解题。be full of 充满；be proud of 以……为骄傲；instead of 代替；because of 因为。由句意可知答案。

★It was really good, so I couldn't put it down.

③ **put down 放下**　写下，记下，相当于 write down, take down。

e.g. Let me put down your telephone number.
让我记下你的电话号码。

小贴士：put down 为"动词+副词"型短语，宾语若为代词，应放在 put 与 down 中间。

考题在线 2 —Oh, my God! I have _____ five pounds.
—Don't worry. It's normal for a growing teenage girl. [泰安]

A. put up　　B. put off
C. put on　　D. put down

点拨：本题用逻辑推理法。put up 张贴，搭建，举起；put off 推迟；put on 穿上，增加（体重）；put down 放下。由空格后 five pounds (5 磅) 可知答案。

★put 的相关短语：
- put away 收起来
- put off 推迟
- put on 穿上，增重
- put up 张贴

★I'm only on page 25.

④ **page**/peɪdʒ/*n.*（书刊或纸张的）页，面，张

e.g. Where's your book? Take it out and turn to page 4.
你的书呢？拿出来，翻到第 4 页。

"page + 基数词"表示"第……页"。

★You should hurry up.

⑤ **hurry up 赶快；急忙（做某事）**

e.g. Hurry up, or you will be late.
快点，否则你会迟到的。

常单独使用，用于催促对方快点儿做某事。相当于 come on 或 be quick。hurry 动词，意为"赶快；急忙"。

Miss Zhao hurried off to look after the man.
赵老师匆匆赶去照看那个男人。　匆忙离去 =hurry away

He left home in a hurry and forgot to turn off the light this morning.
今天早上他匆忙离开家，忘记关灯了。　匆忙；仓促　*n.*

考题在线 3 —_____, or we'll be late for the meeting.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

—It's only half past one by my watch. We have enough time left. [襄阳]

A. Hurry up　　B. Don't worry

C. Never mind　　D. Be quiet

点拨: 用情景交际法解题。hurry up 快点；don't worry 不必担心；never mind 没关系；be quiet 安静。根据后半句“否则我们开会要迟到了”可知前半句表示催促。

★The book report is due in two weeks.

⑥ **due**/dju:/; /du:/ *adj.* (expected to happen or arrive at a particular time) **预期；预定**

due 通常只用作表语。

be due to do sth. 意为“预定做某事”。

e.g. The next train is due in five minutes.

下一班火车预定在五分钟后到达。

The meeting is due to start at 3:30. 会议预定 3:30 开始。

⑦ **【高频】in two weeks 意为“两周之后”**

作表语

e.g. We will be back in an hour. 我们一小时后回来。

辨析: in + 一段时间与 after + 一段时间

in+ 一段时间	表示从现在算起的“一段时间以后”，也可以表示“在将来多长时间之内”，以现在为起点，常与一般将来时连用。对“in + 一段时间”提问时，用 how soon，意为“多快，多久以后”。
after+ 一段时间	表示过去的“一段时间以后”，以过去时间点为起点，常与一般过去时连用。

He is truly wise who gains wisdom from another's mishap.
善于从别人的挫折中得到教益的人才是真正的聪明人。

e.g. I'll come and see you in two days. 两天之后我将来看你。

After two hours' walk, we felt very tired.

走了两个小时的路之后，我们感到很累。

考题在线 4 I've ordered some flowers for Grandma and they will arrive _____ two hours. [温州]

A. in　　B. after　　C. over　　D. for

点拨: 本题用词义辨析法。此处句意：我已经给奶奶订了一些花，它们两个小时后会到。由句中的 will arrive 及 two hours 可知要用“in+ 一段时间”表示“将来一段时间之后”。

考题在线答案 1. A　2. C　3. A　4. A

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

(答案见285页)

听力技巧

正误推测法 (听前)(在做听力时，先阅读题干句子，明确句子的含义，根据图片观察并结合已有知识，推测句子的正误。)

听力过程

一、听 1b，选择正确答案

课文听力 1b

1. From conversation 1, who is reading *Treasure Island*?

A. Nick.　　B. Judy.　　C. Nobody.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

2. From conversation 2, what does Alan think of *Robinson Crusoe*?

A. It's exciting. B. It's boring.

C. It's wonderful.

3. From conversation 3, which book has Kate read?

A. *Treasure Island.* B. *Robinson Crusoe.*

C. *Little Women.*

二、听 2a，选择正确答案

4. Which book hasn't Mark read yet?

A. *Treasure Island.*

B. *Robinson Crusoe.*

C. *Oliver Twist.*

课文听力 2a

5. What is the book *Tom Sawyer* about?

A. A boy who goes out to sea and finds an island full of treasures.

B. A boy whom many exciting things happen to.

C. Four sisters who are poor but often help others.

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见285页)

一、根据句意及首字母提示补全单词

1. Not everyone can live on the i_____ alone like Robinson Crusoe.

2. The man was so greedy that he died when he wanted to get more t_____.

3. The play has become an American c_____.

4. The next bus is d_____ to arrive in five minutes.

5. The full address is given on p_____ 15.

二、单项选择 【导学号：2039901】

6. I want to be a scientist like Tu Youyou when I _____ in the future. [海南]

A. grow up B. wake up C. stay up

7. Her smile made me feel warm and lively. It was like a hidden _____. [天津]

A. competition B. interview

C. treasure D. tradition

8. —Thanks _____ our government, we can play sports on the new playground next week.

—That's for sure! And we'll have a sports meeting _____ one month. [滨州]

A. for; in B. to; in

C. for; after D. to; after

9. Your garden is _____ beautiful flowers.

A. full of B. full with

C. filled of D. fill with

10. Your toys are here and there. Please _____, Linda. [来宾]

A. put away them B. put them away

C. put them out D. put up them

Period 2 Section A（3a–3c）

课时导入

Ⅰ. 课文原文、译文

3a Read the passage based on *Robinson Crusoe*. Then answer the questions.

阅读这篇基于《鲁滨逊漂流记》写成的文章。然后回答问题。

1. What does Robinson Crusoe wait for? 鲁滨逊·克鲁索等什么?
2. Why does Robinson Crusoe call the man Friday?
   为什么鲁滨逊·克鲁索叫那个人“星期五”?

课文朗读 3a

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

When I first arrived on this island, I had nothing. But I've found the ship/ʃɪp/ and made a small boat. I've brought back many things I can use—food and drink, tools/tu:lz/, knives and guns/gʌnz/. Although I have lost everything, I have not lost my life. So I will not give up and I will wait for another ship. I have already cut down trees and built a house. I go out with my gun almost every day to kill animals and birds for food. I'm even learning to grow fruit and vegetables.

当我刚到这座岛上的时候，我什么都没有。但是我找到了这艘船，然后制造了一条小船。我带回了许多我可以用的东西——食物和饮料、工具、刀和枪。虽然我失去了所有，但是我没有丧生。所以我不会放弃，我要等另一条船。我已经砍倒了树木并建造了一所房子。我几乎每天拿枪出去猎食动物和鸟。我甚至学着种水果和蔬菜。

A few weeks ago, I found the marks/mɑ:(r)ks/① of another man's feet on the sand/sænd/. Who else② is on my island? How long have they been here? Not long after that, I saw some cannibals/'kænɪblz/ trying to kill two men from a broken ship. One of them died but the other③ ran towards/tə'wɔ:dz/, /tɔ:rdz/④ my house. I helped him kill the cannibals. This man now lives with me and helps me. I named him Friday because that was the day I met him. He is smart and I have already taught him some English.

几个星期以前，我在沙滩上发现了另一个人的脚印。还有谁在我的岛上？他们在这里多久了？在那之后不久，我看到一些食人肉者想要杀害两个从失事船只上逃出来的人。他们中的一个死了，但另一个跑向了我的房子。我帮助他杀死了食人肉者。现在这个人和我住在一起，帮助我。我称他为“星期五”，因为我是在那天见到他的。他很聪明，我已经教了他一些英语。

3b Read the passage again. Find words that have these meanings.

再读一遍文章。找出含有这些意思的单词。

1. You can use these to shoot things 你可以用这些去射东西：_____
2. Something you use to travel in the sea 海上旅行时你用到的东西：_____
3. A piece of land/lænd/⑤ in the middle of⑥ the sea 在海中间的一块陆地：_____
4. You can use these to cut things 你可以用这些去切东西：_____
5. Signs left behind by someone or something 某人或某物留下的迹象：_____

3c Correct the sentences. 改正句子。

1. Robinson Crusoe arrived on the island with enough food and drink.
   鲁滨逊·克鲁索到达岛上时带着充足的食物和饮料。
2. Friday made a small boat. 星期五制造了一艘小船。
3. Robinson had some food and tools when he first arrived on the island.
   当鲁滨逊刚到岛上时，他有一些食物和工具。
4. Robinson used the ship to build his house. 鲁滨逊用这条船建造了他的房子。
5. Friday saw some marks of another man's feet on the beach. 星期五在沙滩上看见了另一个人的脚印。
6. Robinson tried to kill the two men. 鲁滨逊试图杀害那两个人。

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读 60分

☞（答案见285页）

阅读过程

一、速读 3a，回答问题

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

（主旨大意题）

A. Robinson's life on the island.
B. Robinson Crusoe saved a man called Friday.
C. Robinson Crusoe arrived on the island.
D. Robinson Crusoe killed two men.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

二、细读 3a，选择正确答案

2. What did Robinson do for food?

（细节查找题）

A. He brought food from another island.

B. He killed animals and birds with guns.

C. He asked Friday to get food for him.

D. He bought food with money.

3. Which is true according to the passage?

（细节推理题）

A. Robinson Crusoe arrived on the island with a lot of food and money.

B. Robinson Crusoe killed a cannibal called Friday.

C. Friday made a house for Robinson Crusoe.

D. Robinson Crusoe taught Friday some English.

4. What does the word "marks" in Paragraph 2 mean in Chinese?（词义猜测题）

A. 工具　　B. 迹象

C. 记号　　D. 脚趾

Ⅲ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用　　•考点批注

★A few weeks ago, I found the marks of another man's feet on the sand.

① **mark**/mɑː(r)k/ *n.* 迹象；记号；分数 *v.* 做记号；打分

e.g. She always gets good marks.

她总是获得高分。　可数名词，分数

I marked the pages you need to look at.

我在你需要阅读的那几页上做了记号。　及物动词，做记号；打分

★Who else is on my island?

② **else**/els/ *adv.* 另外（的）；其他（的）

e.g. This book must be somebody else's.

这本书一定是别人的。

Where else did she go and who else did she see?

她还去了别的什么地方？还见了别的什么人？

What other things can you see in the picture?

图片中你还能看到别的什么东西？

常用在 who, whose, what 等疑问代词及 when, where 等疑问副词之后；也放在以 -one, -body, -thing, -where 结尾的复合不定代词/副词之后。

辨析：else 与 other

- else 用在疑问词或不定代词之后，也可后加 's 构成所有格。
- other 意为"其他的，另外的"，修饰名词，位于名词之前。

★One of them died but the other ran towards my house.

③ **One... the other...**（两者中的）一个……另一个……　固定搭配，用于两者之间。

e.g. I have two brothers. One is a doctor and the other is a teacher.

我有两个哥哥。一个是医生，另一个是教师。

Boys are on the playground. Some are playing basketball and the others are playing football.

some... the others... 用于三者或三者以上，"一些……其余的……"

男孩们在操场上。一些正在打篮球，其余的正在踢足球。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

考题在线 Catherine has two cousins. One is quiet and _____ is noisy. [上海]

A. another　　B. the other

C. other　　D. others

点拨：根据前一句“凯瑟琳有两个表妹。”可知，此处应用 one...the other... 结构，表示“一个……，另一个……”。

④ **towards**/tə'wɔ:dz/, /tɔ:rdz/ *prep.* 朝；向；对着

e.g. They'll leave for Xi'an to travel.

他们将去西安旅游。

When will you come to our school?

你将什么时候来我们学校?

She was walking towards the town.

她正往镇上走去。

辨析：for，to 与 towards

- for 常用于 leave，start 后表示运动的方向或目的地。
- to 置于 go，come，return，move 等词后，表示目的地。
- towards 意为“朝；向”，只说明运动方向，无“到达”之意。

★**A piece of land in the middle of the sea.**

⑤ **land**/lænd/ *n.* 陆地；大地

e.g. After 21 days at sea, we saw land.

在海上待了 21 天后，我们见到了陆地。

The lands belonged to my father.

这些地产属于我父亲。

The plane landed safely.

飞机安全着陆了。

land 的词性及用法：

n. 陆地；土地；地产

land

v. 着陆；降落



land 着陆



land 登陆

⑥ **in the middle of...** 在……的中间

敲黑板 既可指空间，也可指时间。



in the middle of the road
在路的中间



in the middle of the night
半夜

考题在线答案 B

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见285页)

一、根据汉语提示写出句中所缺单词

1. That man made a _____ (记号) on the boat.
2. The boys are playing on the _____ (沙滩).
3. He pushed the plate _____ (朝) me and offered me an apple.
4. Finally, the plane _____ (着陆) safely at Beijing Capital International Airport.
5. The computer is an important _____ (工具) for us.

二、根据汉语意思完成句子，每空一词

6. 大象是陆地上最大的动物。

The elephant is the biggest animal _____ _____.

7. 他宁死不屈。

He would rather _____ _____ _____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

than give in.

8. 从这里到伦敦要多长时间?

_____ _____ does it take to get to London from here?

9. 莉莉和她的姐姐看起来一样。我不能分辨出她们。

Lily and her sister look the same. I can't tell one from _____ _____.

10. 我昨天半夜里醒了。

I woke up _____ _____ _____ _____ the night yesterday.

Period 3 Section A（Grammar Focus–4c）

I. 课文原文、译文

Grammar Focus 语法聚焦

Have you read *Little Women* yet? 你读过《小妇人》了吗?	Yes, I have./No, I haven't. 是的，我读过。/ 不，我没有。
Has Tina read *Treasure Island* yet? 蒂娜读过《金银岛》了吗?	Yes, she has. She thinks it's fantastic. 是的，她读过。她认为它很棒。
Have you decided which book to write about yet? 你决定写关于哪本书了吗?	Yes, I have. I've already finished reading it. It was really good. 是的，我已经决定了。我已经读完它了。它真的很好。

4a Use the words in brackets to complete the conversations. 用括号内的词完成对话。

1. **A:** Would you like something to drink? 你想要些喝的东西吗?

   B: No, thanks. I've just drunk some tea. (just/drink some tea)

   不，谢谢。我刚喝了一些茶。（刚刚 / 喝一些茶）

2. **A:** I heard you lost your key. _____? (find)

   我听说你丢了你的钥匙。_____?（找到）

   B: No, not yet. 不，还没有。

3. **A:** Do you know when Tom is leaving? 你知道汤姆什么时候离开吗?

   B: _____. (already/leave)（已经 / 离开）

   A: When _____? (leave) 什么时候_____?（离开）

   B: This morning. 今天早上。

4. **A:** Is your sister going to the movies with us tonight? 你的妹妹今晚跟我们去看电影吗?

   B: No. _____.(already/see the film) 不。_____。（已经 / 看电影）

5. **A:** What do your parents think about our plan? 你的父母认为我们的计划怎么样?

   B: I _____. (not/tell them/yet) 我_____。（没有 / 告诉他们 / 还）

4b Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the words in brackets. 用括号中所给词的正确形式填空。

Sally _____ (love) reading. In the morning, she reads the newspaper and in the evening she reads books. She _____ already _____ (read) more than 100 different books! Her favorite kind of books is science fiction/'fɪkʃn/. She is interested in science and technology/tek'nɒlədʒi/, /tek'nɑːlədʒi/ and loves to imagine what the world _____ (be) like in 50 years. She _____ (finish) reading

宾语从句

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

a book about robots last week and _____ (write) a book report about it next week for her French /frentʃ/ class. Every time she is in the library, Sally looks at the many books she _____ (not read) yet and she can't wait to read ① them!

时间状语从句　　定语从句

萨莉_____(喜欢)读书。她上午看报纸，晚上读书。她已经_____(读)100多本不同的书了！她最喜欢的类型的书是科幻小说。她对科学技术感兴趣，并且喜欢想象50年后世界_____(是)什么样的。她上周_____(完成)阅读一本关于机器人的书，并将在下周为她的法语课_____(写)一份关于它的读书报告。每次萨莉在图书馆看着那么多她还_____(没有读)的书时，她就迫不及待地想去读它们！

4c Complete the chart with information about you and a friend. 用你和一个朋友的信息完成图表。

A: What books have you already read? 你已经读过什么书了?

B: I've already read *Tom Sawyer* and *Harry Potter*/'pɒtə(r)/, /'pɑ:tər/.

我已经读了《汤姆·索亚历险记》和《哈利·波特》。

A: What do you think of them? 你认为它们怎么样?

B: Well, I think *Harry Potter* was exciting, but *Tom Sawyer* was a bit boring.

唔，我认为《哈利·波特》很令人兴奋，但是《汤姆·索亚历险记》有点无聊。

	You 你	Your friend 你的朋友	Comments 评论
Books I have already read 我已经读过的书			
Movies I have already seen 我已经看过的电影			
Songs I have already heard 我已经听过的歌			

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础20分

•考点批注　　•考点应用

★... she can't wait to read them!

① can't wait to do sth. 意为"迫不及待去做某事；等不及做某事"。

e.g. I can't wait to tell her the good news. 我等不及要告诉她这个好消息。

I can't help feeling that there has been a mistake.

我不由自主地觉得什么地方搞错了。

小贴士: can't help doing sth. 情不自禁做某事

考题在线 —I always can't help _____ TV plays with my mobile phone when I'm studying.

—It's not a good habit. You are supposed to _____ it. [天水]

A. watching; correcting　　B. watch; correct

C. watch; correcting　　D. watching; correct

点拨: 本题用固定搭配法。上句中can't help doing sth. 意为"情不自禁做某事"；下句中be supposed to do sth. 意为"应该做某事"。

考题在线答案 D

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 单元语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

现在完成时“焦点访谈”(一)

现在完成时表示过去发生的动作对现在造成的影响或结果，也可以表示从过去某一时间开始，一直持续到现在的动作或状态，常与 for 或 since 引导的时间状语连用。也常与 already(已经)，just(刚刚)，ever(曾经)，never(从不)，before(以前)，yet(还)等连用。

小贴士：现在完成时与 for 或 since 引导的时间状语连用时，动词必须是延续性动词。

e.g. They have lived here for 20 years.
他们在这里住了 20 年。(可能继续住下去)

考点 1 现在完成时的句型结构

	结构
肯定句	主语 +have/has+ 动词的过去分词 + 其他 .
否定句	主语 +have/has+not+ 动词的过去分词 + 其他 .
一般疑问句和简略回答	Have/Has+ 主语 + 动词的过去分词 + 其他 ? 肯定答语：Yes，主语人称代词 + have/has. 否定答语：No，主语人称代词 + have/has not.

e.g. I have already finished my homework.
我已经完成了我的作业。

I have not heard from him yet.
我还没收到他的来信。

—Have you ever been to Beijing?
你曾去过北京吗?

—Yes，I have./No，I haven't.
是的，我去过。/不，我没去过。

小贴士：have not 常缩写为 haven't，has not 常缩写为 hasn't。

考题在线 1 用所给词的适当形式填空。

Beijing is such a fantastic place that Amy _____ (travel) there three times. [青岛]

点拨：句意为“北京是一个如此吸引人的地方以至于埃米都去那儿旅游过三次了。”由 three times“三次”可知，此处强调结果，所以用现在完成时。

考题在线 2 —I _____ my card. I want to report it.
—You can call the bank to report the loss. It would be faster. [盐城]

A. lose　　B. was losing
C. will lose　　D. have lost

点拨：句意为“我的卡丢了。我想去挂失。”“你可以给银行打电话挂失。那样会更快。”根据“I want to report it.”可知应用现在完成时，表示过去发生的事情对现在造成了影响。

考点 2 already 与 yet 在现在完成时中的用法

already 通常用于肯定句中，一般用于 have/has 后，实义动词前，偶尔放在句尾。yet 多用于否定句和疑问句中，一般放在句末。



e.g. I have already had breakfast.
我已经吃过早饭了。

I haven't done my homework yet.
我还没有做作业。

already 与 yet 的转换

在现在完成时态的句子中，含有 already 的肯定句变为否定句或疑问句时，要把 already 改为 yet，并放于句末。

e.g. I have already finished reading the book.
我已经读完这本书了。

→ I haven't finished reading the book yet.
我还未读完这本书。

→ Have you finished reading the book yet?
你已经读完这本书了吗?

考题在线 3 —Has your sister finished reading _____?
—Yes. She has _____ finished.

A. yet; yet　　B. yet; already
C. already; yet

点拨：本题用语法判定法。already 常用于肯定句中，yet 多用于否定句或疑问句中。

考题在线答案 1. has travelled　2. D　3. B

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 单元语法专练 夺取中考语法满分

(答案见285页)

单项选择

1. —Do you still play basketball?

—Oh, no. I _____ it for the past two years. [武汉]

A. haven't played

B. didn't play

C. won't play

D. hadn't played

2. —Look! Somebody _____ the lights.

—Well, it wasn't me. I didn't do it. [连云港]

A. turns off　　B. is turning off

C. was turning off　　D. has turned off

3. I _____ an invitation to the concert. I can't wait to go. [河北]

A. receive　　B. will receive

C. was receiving　　D. have received

4. —Peter, you speak Chinese so well.

—Thank you.I _____ Chinese since I came here in 2013. [扬州]

A. will learn　　B. learned

C. have learned　　D. learn

5. I am surprised at the new look of my hometown, for it _____ a lot over the years. [安徽]

A. changed　　B. changes

C. will change　　D. has changed

Period 4 Section B (1a–1d)

Ⅰ. 课文原文、译文

1a Who is your favorite singer or musician? Tell your partner why you like him or her.

谁是你最喜爱的歌手或音乐家？告诉你的同伴你为什么喜欢他或她。

1b Listen to a conversation between Alex and Dave. Write *A* for Alex or *D* for Dave next to each opinion. 听亚历克斯与戴夫之间的对话。在每个观点的旁边写A代表亚历克斯或D代表戴夫。



_____The Toms must be popular. 汤姆乐队一定很受欢迎。

_____The Toms play pop/pɒp/, /pɑːp/ music. 汤姆乐队演奏流行音乐。

_____The Toms' music sounds more like rock/rɒk/, /rɑːk/. 汤姆乐队的音乐听起来更像摇滚乐。

_____Listening to The Toms is a good way to wake up.

听汤姆乐队的音乐是一个让人清醒的好方法。 → 动名词短语作主语

1c Listen again and take notes. 再听一遍并做笔记。

Band/bænd/ name 乐队名称	
Country 国家	
Number of people in the band 乐队的人数	
Kind of music 音乐类型	
Why Alex and Dave like to listen to this band 为什么亚历克斯和戴夫喜欢听这个乐队（的歌）	Alex/'æleks/ 亚历克斯:
	Dave 戴夫:

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

1d Ask your friends and parents what kind of music they listen to and why. How does the music make them feel? 问你的朋友与父母他们喜欢听什么类型的音乐及原因。音乐使他们感觉怎么样?

	What kind of music? 什么类型的音乐?	Why do they listen to it? 为什么他们听它?	How does it make them feel? 它使他们感觉怎么样?
Friend 1 朋友 1			
Friend 2 朋友 2			
Parents 父母			

Ⅱ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

(答案见285页)

听力过程



听 1b，选择正确答案

1. What is Alex listening to?

A. A story. B. A song. C. A report.

2. How many CDs has the new band called "The Toms" made?

A. None. B. One. C. Two.

3. Where are the singers from?

A. China.

B. The United States.

C. England.

4. While you are listening to their songs, which of the following feelings won't you get?

A. Happy. B. Excited. C. Sad.

Period 5 Section B（2a–2e）



Ⅰ. 课文原文、译文及导读

原文译文·导读 导读批注

Pre-reading（读前）

2a Discuss the questions with a partner. 和同伴讨论问题。

1. Do you have a favorite singer or band? 你有最喜欢的歌手或乐队吗?
2. Do you have a favorite song? 你有最喜欢的歌吗?
3. What facts do you know about your favorite singer, band or song? 关于你最喜爱的歌手、乐队或歌曲，你知道什么实际情况?

While-reading（读中）



2b Read the passage and complete the fact sheet on page 63. 阅读文章并完成 63 页的简报。

Summarizing 总结

While reading, make notes or underline the main ideas in the text. After reading, write a short summary in your own words. This can help you better understand the text. 在读的过程中，要做笔记或画线标出文章的主要意思。读完之后，用你自己的话写一个简短的总结。这能帮你更好地理解文章。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

批体裁：记叙文

A Country Music Song Changed Her Life Forever/fər'evə(r)/

一首改变她一生的乡村音乐歌曲

批单词：运用 but 提示本段的重要内容。

When Sarah was a teenager, she used to fight over① almost everything with her family. But five years ago, while she was studying abroad② /ə'brɔ:d/ in England, she heard a song full of feelings about returning home on the radio③. It made Sarah think about her family and friends back in the US. She came to realize④ how much she actually/'æktʃuəli/⑤ missed all of⑥ them. Ever since then, she has been a fan/fæn/ of American country music. 当萨拉还是个青少年时，她几乎每件事都要和她的家人争吵。但是五年前，当她在英国留学时，她通过广播听到了一首充满归乡情结的歌。它使萨拉想起了她在美国的家人和朋友。她渐渐意识到了她到底有多想念他们所有人。从那时起，她成了一名美国乡村音乐爱好者。

批句子：运用 how 感叹句形象表达了 Sarah 在异国他乡非常想念家人的情感。

批写作手法：运用插叙法(Para. 2)，介绍乡村音乐的特点。

Country is a traditional kind of⑦ music from the southern/'sʌðə(r)n/ states of America. Nashville/'næʃvɪl/, Tennessee/ˌtenə'si:/ is the home of country music. Many songs these days are just about modern/'mɒdn/, /'mɑ:dərn/ life in the US, such as⑧ the importance of money and success⑨ /sək'ses/, but not about belonging/bɪ'lɒŋɪŋ/,/bɪ'lɔ:ŋɪŋ/ to⑩ a group. However, country music brings us back to the "good old days" when people were kind to each other and trusted one another⑪. It reminds us that the best things in life are free — laughter/'lɑ:ftə/, /'læftə(r)/⑫, friends, family, and the beauty/'bju:ti/ of nature and the countryside. 乡村音乐是一种来自美国南部各州的传统音乐。田纳西州的纳什维尔是乡村音乐之乡。如今在美国，许多歌曲仅仅是关于现代生活，比如金钱与成功的重要性，而不是关于群体归属感。然而，乡村音乐把我们带回到了"过去的好时光"，那时的人们彼此友善、互相信任。它提醒着我们生活中最美好的事物是免费的——欢笑、朋友、家人以及自然与乡村之美。

批句子：该句让读者幡然醒悟：原来生命当中最好的东西都是免费的，也是我们最容易忽略的。

批词语：此处用 also 表现 Sarah 对 Nashville 的详细了解，同时引出了她喜爱的歌手 Garth Brooks，描述了她对 Nashville 的向往之情和对乡村音乐的热爱之情。

Sarah hasn't been to⑬ Nashville yet, but it is her dream to go there one day. She has already read a lot about the place and done some research on it. She knows that there is the Country Music Hall of Fame/feɪm/ and Museum in Nashville. There are also always a lot of great country music concerts with famous musicians and singers, like Garth/gɑ:(r)θ/ Brooks/brʊks/. Sarah has already listened to most of his songs. "Garth is one of the most successful musicians in American history. He's sold more than 120 million/'mɪljən/⑭ records/'rekɔ:dz/, /'rekərdz/⑮. I hope to see him sing live⑯ one day!"

萨拉还没去过纳什维尔，但是她梦想着有一天能够去那里。她已经读了很多关于那个地方的资料并做了些关于它的调查。她了解到在纳什维尔有乡村音乐名人堂与博物馆。那里也总是有很多著名的音乐家和歌手参加的盛大的乡村音乐会，比如加思·布鲁克斯。萨拉听过他的大部分歌曲。"加思是美国历史上最成功的音乐家之一。他已经卖出了超过 1.2 亿张唱片。我希望有一天看到他现场演唱！"

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Country Music Fact Sheet 乡村音乐简报

Where it is from 它来自哪里：_____

What kind of music it is 它是什么类型的音乐：_____

A famous country music place in Nashville 在纳什维尔一个著名的乡村音乐之地：_____

A famous country music singer 一位著名的乡村音乐歌手：_____

The number of records/'rekɔ:dz/, /'rekərdz/ he has sold 他所卖唱片的数量：_____

Post-reading（读后）

写作小练笔 （答案见224页）

2c Read the passage again and underline the main ideas. Then use the underlined text to write short answers to the questions below.

再读一遍文章并画线标出主旨大意。然后用画线部分的文本写出以下问题的简短回答。

First paragraph 第一段

Who is Sarah? 谁是萨拉?

Where is she from? 她来自哪里?

What does she like? 她喜欢什么?

Second paragraph 第二段

What is country music? 什么是乡村音乐?

What is country music about? 乡村音乐是关于什么的?

Third paragraph 第三段

What is Sarah's dream? 萨拉的梦想是什么?

Who is Garth Brooks? 谁是加思·布鲁克斯?

2d Use the notes you made in 2c to write a short summary of the passage. Write no more than 100 words. 用2c中你做的笔记为此文写一篇简短的总结。不超过100词。

2e Close your book. What facts can you remember about country music? Tell a partner. What other facts would you like to know about country music? Make a list of questions. 合上书。你能记得关于乡村音乐的什么信息？告诉一个同伴。你还想知道关于乡村音乐的其他什么信息？列出问题。

课文背诵指南

A Country Music Song Changed Her Life Forever

- **Para.1** → Sarah
  - studying in England
  - thought about her family and friends, missed them
  - a fan of American country music
- **Para.2** → Country music
  - a traditional kind of music from the southern states of America
  - brings us back to the "good old days"
  - reminds us that ...
- **Para.3** → Sarah's dream
  - go to Nashville
  - hope to see Garth sing live

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读 60分

(答案见285页)

阅读策略

逻辑推理法(认真阅读文章，先把握文章整体脉络。然后认真浏览所给题目的信息，将相关信息与原文进行比较、归纳，做出必要的推断和转述。)

拓展阅读

阅读过程

阅读 2b，选择正确答案

1. What does the second paragraph mainly tell us?

(主旨大意题)

A. Sarah used to argue with her family.

B. The meaning of country music.

C. Sarah hopes to see Garth sing live.

D. Country music comes from the southern states of America.

2. ⊙ When did Sarah become a fan of American country music? (逻辑推理题)

A. When she was five years old.

B. When she was in America.

C. After hearing a song about returning home.

D. After fighting with her family.

3. What kind of music can bring people back to the "good old days"? (细节查找题)

A. Pop music. B. Classical music.

C. Rock music. D. Country music.

4. Where does country music come from?

(细节查找题)

A. The southern part of England.

B. The southern states of America.

C. The northern states of America.

D. We don't know.

5. ⊙ Why does Sarah dream of going to Nashville?

(逻辑推理题)

A. Because Nashville is a modern place.

B. Because Nashville is rich and beautiful.

C. Because Nashville has the Country Music Hall of Fame and Museum.

D. Because Nashville is full of success.

Ⅲ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

·考点批注 ·考点应用

★**When Sarah was a teenager, she used to fight over almost everything with her family.**

① **fight over** 因为……而争辩 = *fight about*

e.g. The twin sisters always fight over toys.

这对双胞胎姐妹经常因为玩具而争吵。

Seize the day, for fleeting youth never returns.
光阴勿虚度，青春不再来。

辨析: fight with, fight for 与 fight against

fight with	后常接人或国家名词，表示"与……作战；同……(并肩)战斗"。
fight for	意为"为……而斗争"，后常接抽象名词，表示为事业、自由等而斗争。
fight against	意为"为反对……而斗争；与……战斗"，后可接事物名词、人或国家名词。

e.g. They fight with the Italians in the last war.

他们在最后这场战争中是与意大利人作战。

They are fighting for freedom. 他们正为自由而战。

They fought against the enemy. 他们和敌人作战。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★**But five years ago, while she was studying abroad in England, she heard a song full of feelings about returning home on the radio.**

相当于go abroad to study，意为“出国留学”。

② **abroad** /ə'brɔ:d/*adv.* 在国外；到国外

常用搭配
- at home and abroad 在国内外
- go abroad 出国
- live abroad 住在国外

e.g. She's never lived abroad before.

她以前从未在国外生活过。

The movie is popular both at home and abroad.

这部电影在国内外都很受欢迎。

小贴士：abroad 不能与 in，to，at 等介词连用，其前面也不加冠词，但可以与介词 from 连用。

③ **on the radio 通过广播**

e.g. Jim learns Chinese on the radio.

吉姆通过广播学汉语。

on 为介词，相当于 over，此处意为“通过；从……方式”。

拓展：与 on the radio 类似的用法还有：

on TV 通过电视

on the phone 通过电话

on the mobile phone 通过手机

★**She came to realize how much she actually missed all of them.**

come to 相当于 begin/get to，后面跟动词原形，其后常跟动词有 like，understand，realize，see，know。

④ **come to do sth.** “逐渐 / 终于 / 开始做某事”。

e.g. I came to understand his love.

我开始理解他的爱。

come to do sth. 还可意为“来做（从事）某事”。

Excuse me, would you like to come to help me with my English?

打扰了，你愿意来帮助我学英语吗？

⑤ **actually**/'æktʃuəli/*adv.* **真实地；事实上**

由 actual 加后缀 -ly 构成，常用于修饰动词或形容词，无比较级和最高级，相当于 in fact。

e.g. Actually, on second thoughts, I don't think I want to go out tonight.

说实在的，再想想，我今晚不想出去了。

⑥ **all of 所有的**

all of 其后接人称代词时，要用宾格形式。作主语时，谓语动词要与 of 后的名词或代词的形式保持一致。

e.g. Bob is so lovely that all of us like him very much.

鲍勃如此可爱，以至于我们大家都很喜欢他。

All of the bread is fresh.

所有的面包都很新鲜。

★**Country is a traditional kind of music from the southern states of America.**

“many/all/different kinds of + 名词”，表示“很多种 / 各种各样 / 不同种类的……”

⑦ **a kind of 一种**

e.g. The apple is a kind of fruit. 苹果是一种水果。

There are all kinds of fishes in the sea.

海洋里有各种各样的鱼。

小贴士：kind of 意为“稍微；有点儿”，相当于 a little/a bit/a little bit。

I'm kind of hungry.

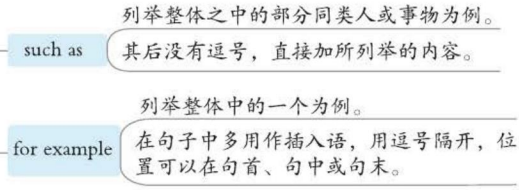
我有点儿饿了。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★**Many songs these days are just about modern life in the US, such as the importance of money and success, but not about belonging to a group.**

⑧ **such as 例如；诸如**

辨析：such as 与 for example



e.g. Tom, for example, is my good friend.

例如，汤姆是我的好朋友。

I have some good friends, such as Tom, Kate and Wang Bin.

我有一些好朋友，例如汤姆、凯特和王斌。

success 的相关词：
- succeed（v. 成功）
- success（n. 成功）
- successful（adj. 成功的）
- successfully（adv. 成功地）

⑨ **success**/səkˈses/*n.* **成功**

e.g. Zhang Yixing always says his success is all because of his hard work.

作不可数名词，意为“成功；胜利”。

张艺兴一直说他的成功是由于他的努力工作。

The movie was a great success.

作可数名词，意为“成功的人或事物”。

这部电影非常成功。

belong to 中 to 为介词，其后只能跟名词或人称代词的宾格形式，不能接名词性物主代词或名词所有格。

⑩ **belong to 属于；归属**

belong to 不用于被动语态，也不用于进行时态。

e.g. The bike belongs to my sister.

这辆自行车属于我妹妹。

These clothes belong to me.(= These clothes are mine.)

这些衣服是我的。

小贴士：belong to 常与物主代词或名词所有格进行句型转换，即 belong to sb.= be sb.'s。

考题在线 1 —Who do you think will be the winner of the 21st World Cup in Russia?

—I guess the gold medal will _____ Germany.

A. belong to　　B. take up

C. make up　　D. stick to

点拨：本题用语境分析法。答句句意“我猜金牌将属于德国。”belong to“属于”；take up“占据”；make up“编造”；stick to“坚持”。

each other=one another 意为“互相；彼此”，用作及物动词或介词的宾语。

★**... people were kind to each other and trusted one another.**

⑪ **one another 互相**

e.g. Our sons are very different from each other/one another.

我们的儿子彼此间很不相像。

I hope we can be good friends and make each other's/one

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

another's life more colorful!
我希望我们能成为好朋友并使彼此的生活更加丰富多彩！

each other 和 one another 都有名词所有格形式，即其后加 's。

★It reminds us that the best things in life are free — laughter, friends, family, and the beauty of nature and the countryside.

⑫ **laughter** /'lɑ:ftə/, /'læftə(r)/ *n.* 笑；笑声

具有抽象或概括意义，是不可数名词。其动词形式是 laugh（笑，发笑），常用固定短语 laugh at sb. 嘲笑某人。

e.g. Foster joined in the laughter.
福斯特也跟着笑起来。

"What a mess!" she said with a laugh. "多乱呀！"她笑了一声说道。

作可数名词，意为"笑声"。

素养 行动 常笑多笑，笑出幸福，笑出美好，笑出生活的灿烂！

素养 行动结果 一笑解千愁，这就是生活的智慧。让生活充满笑声，就会让世界充满笑声！

核心素养之文化意识

让生活充满笑声，活出旷达人生

笑，是人愉悦时的情感流露。让生活充满笑声，是达观的生活态度 (attitude to life)，更是高超的生活智慧。正所谓庸人自扰，智者无忧。高尔基说："只有爱笑的人，生活才能过得更美好。"那就让我们忘掉烦恼，丢弃忧伤，胸怀宽广，知足常乐。

★Sarah hasn't been to Nashville yet, but it is her dream to go there one day.

指现在已经回来，后面可接表示次数的词语，如 once, twice 等，也可以跟 never, ever 等。

⑬ **have/has been to...** 去过……

e.g. I have been to Jinan. 我去过济南。
（have been to, have gone to 与 have been in/at 区别见 U9 Period 3 单元语法沙龙）

★He's sold more than 120 million records.

⑭ **million**/'mɪljən/*num.* 一百万

"基数词 + million"表示确切的数量。

e.g. The book was sold more than one million copies.
这本书被售出了一百多万册。

Millions of people lost their lives in World War II.
数百万人在第二次世界大战中丧生。

millions of 意为"大量的；许多的；数以百万的"，表示约数。

考题在线 2 Nowadays, _____ farmers leave their hometown to search for work in the cities. [滨州]

A. million of　　B. two millions
C. millions of　　D. two millions of

点拨：本题用语法判定法。句意"现在数百万农民离开他们的家乡去城市里找工作。"millions of 为固定短语，意为"数百万的"，表示约数。

速记小筏：hundred, thousand, million 用法：s, of 不分家，遇到数字全拿下。模糊数字两有（有 s，有 of），具体数字两无（无 s，无 of）。

⑮ **record**/'rekɔ:d/, /'rekərd/ *n.* 唱片；记录 /rɪ'kɔ:(r)d/*v.* 录制；录（音）

e.g. He broke the record of the race. 他打破了长跑的纪录。
Mary gave me a record of Zhang Jie yesterday.
昨天玛丽给了我一张张杰的唱片。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★**I hope to see him sing live one day!**

⑯ **live**/laɪv/*adv.* 在现场表演（或录制）；在现场直播

e.g. Lang Lang is playing live in our city tonight.
郎朗今晚在我们城市举办现场演奏。作副词，在句子中作状语。

There are many live animals.
有许多活的动物。作形容词，"活的"。

形容词，"现场演出的"。The club has live music most nights.
这个俱乐部大多数晚上有现场演奏的音乐。

考题在线答案 1. A 2. C

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

（答案见285页）

一、根据汉语提示完成下列句子，每空一词

1. The game has been downloaded _____(百万) of times.

2. I have many hobbies, _____ _____(例如) swimming, rowing and hiking.

3. He just came back from _____(国外).

4. The Hong Kong-Zhuhai-Macao Bridge is considered as one of the "seven wonders of the _____(现代的) world". [泰州]

5. When you get older, you'll _____ _____ (逐渐) realize how much your parents have done for you.

二、用方框中所给词的适当形式填空

laugh, actual, succeed, south, beautiful

6. She _____ likes to go to work on foot.

7. Kunming is in the_____ part of China.

8. Last Sunday's party was a great _____.

9. They enjoyed the _____ of the island.

10. They roared with _____ at the joke.

三、根据汉语意思完成英语句子，每空一词

11. 这个发带可能是琳达的，因为她留着长头发。
The hair band might _____ _____ Linda, because she has long hair. [苏州]

12. 我喜欢跟着广播里的音乐跳舞。
I like to dance to the music _____ _____ _____.

13. 他们经常为了食物和水而相互打架。
They often _____ _____ food and water with each other.

14. 卡尔去过几次长城?
How many times _____ Carl _____ _____ the Great Wall?

15. 你们应该互相帮助。
You should help _____ _____.

Period 6 Section B（3a–Self Check）

Ⅰ. 课文原文、译文

3a Think of a singer or writer you know well. Make a list of facts about him/her. Think of the following: 想出一个你熟知的歌手或作家。列出一个关于他/她的信息的列表。思考如下问题：

1. Who is the singer/writer? 那个歌手/作家是谁?

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

2. When did the singer/writer first become famous? 那个歌手 / 作家最早什么时候成名的?

3. How and why did he/she first become famous? 他 / 她起初是如何并且为什么成名的?

4. What famous songs/books has he/she recorded/written? When?
他 / 她所录制 / 写的著名的歌曲 / 书是什么? 什么时候?

5. How many CDs/books has he/she sold? 他 / 她卖出多少张光盘 / 本书了?

6. How did you find out about him/her? 你是如何发现有关他 / 她的情况的?

7. Is he/she still popular today? 他 / 她如今还受欢迎吗?

8. Have you introduced/ˌɪntrəˈdjuːst/, /ˌɪntrəˈduːst/① this singer/writer to others?
你把这位歌手 / 作家介绍给别人过吗?

9. How do you feel about his/her music/books? 你认为他的 / 她的音乐 / 书怎么样?

10. Have you ever played/sung his/her songs yourself? 你曾经自己演奏 / 唱过他的 / 她的歌吗?

3b Write an article about the singer or writer. Here are some words and phrases you can use.
写一篇关于这个歌手或作家的文章。这是一些你可以用的单词和短语。

the first line/laɪn/ in the song/book 这首歌 / 这本书中的第一行

the book/song was written/recorded by 这本书 / 这首歌曲是由……写 / 录制的

enjoyed success in 享受在……的成功

successful song/CD/book 成功的歌曲 / 光盘 / 书

I listen to this song/read this book when... 当……时，我听这首歌 / 读这本书。

The song/book makes me feel... 这首歌 / 这本书使我感到……

Self Check 自我检测

1 Fill in the blanks with the correct words in the box. 用方框中正确的单词填空。

down 向下	of……的	about 关于	back 回原处	up 向上

1. What do you think _____ this dress? Do you think it looks good on me?
你认为这条裙子_____? 你觉得我穿它好看吗?
宾语从句

2. The little boy was so hungry that he didn't put his spoon _____ at all. He just kept on eating.
这个小男孩太饿了，以至于他一下也没放_____他的勺子。他只是一直在吃。

3. She grew _____ in a small town, although she lives in a big city now.
她在一个小镇上_____，虽然她现在住在大城市里。

4. For homework, our teacher told us to write _____ our summer vacation.
对于家庭作业，我们的老师告诉我们写_____我们的暑假。

5. At the end of the day, the bus brought us _____ to our school.
在这天的最后，公共汽车把我们带_____我们学校。

2 Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the words in brackets. 用括号内单词的正确形式填空。

1. I _____(join) the book club last month and I _____ (read) five books already.
我上个月_____(加入)读书俱乐部，而且我已经_____(读)5 本书了。

2. I only _____ (start) taking French classes last week and I _____(learn) 50 French words already. 我上周刚_____(开始)上法语课，而且我已经_____(学)了 50 个法语单词了。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

3. Tony _____ (buy) a pop music CD yesterday but he _____ (listen) to it yet.
托尼昨天_____(买)一张流行音乐光盘，但是他还_____(听)它。

4. They _____ (listen) to many songs by The Beatles/'bi:tlz/, but they cannot _____ (sing) any of them.
他们_____(听)了许多披头士乐队的歌，但他们不能_____(唱)其中的任何一首。

5. She _____(see) the newspaper on the table this morning, but she _____(have) any time to read it yet. 她今天早上_____(看到)桌上的报纸，但是她还_____(有)任何时间去读它。

3 Make a list of the things you have done and the ones you haven't done yet this week. Then ask two other students. 列出这周你已经做和还没有做的事情，然后问另外两名学生。

	You 你	_____ (student's name) (学生姓名)	_____ (student's name) (学生姓名)
Things I have done 我已经做的事情	science homework, 科学作业,		
Things I haven't done 我还没做的事情			

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注 •考点应用



introduce sb. to sb.
把某人介绍给某人



introduce oneself
自我介绍

★Have you introduced this singer/writer to others?

① **introduce**/ˌɪntrə'dju:s/, /ˌɪntrə'du:s/ *v.* 介绍；引见

e.g. There is an introduction about Norway in this magazine.
这本杂志里有一个关于挪威的介绍。→ *n.* 介绍；引言

考题在线 根据句意和汉语提示，在空白处填入一个适当的单词。

Last weekend, at the welcome party, the host _____ (介绍) the history and culture of Taizhou to the guests. [泰州]

点拨：句意"上周末，在欢迎会上，主持人向宾客们介绍了泰州的历史和文化。"分析句子结构可知，空格处在句中作谓语，且由时间状语 last weekend 可知此句为一般过去时，故填 introduced。

考题在线答案 introduced

Ⅲ. 写作一课一法 夺取中考写作 20分

Ⅱ写作小练笔

Sarah's life has changed a lot. She used to fight over almost everything with her family. She heard a song full of feelings about returning home five years ago while studying in England. The song made her think about her family and friends back in the US. Ever since then, she has been a fan of American country music.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Sarah's dream is to go to Nashville, the home of country music. She likes Garth Brooks best. She has already listened to most of his songs. She hopes to see Garth Brooks sing live one day.

单元话题

请根据以下提示，写一篇介绍电影 *Spider-Man*（《蜘蛛侠》）的英语短文。

Spider-Man

美国著名的科幻大片

蜘蛛侠是漫威漫画 (Marvel Comics) 创造的超级英雄形象

电影剧情

高中生彼得·帕克 (Peter Parker) 被一只转基因蜘蛛咬到之后，获得了一种超能力 (super ability)，从此他开始了与犯罪行为的斗争，以保护普通大众。

经典台词

能力越大责任越大。(With great power comes great responsibility.)

你对该电影的评价……

要求：

1. 可适当增加细节，使行文连贯。
2. 词数 70 左右。

审题指导（把握中心，得方向分）

写作体裁多为记叙文，时态多为一般现在时或者现在完成时。写作时先明确要写的人物或影片或者事情，然后具体阐述，一般结尾表达自己的观点或者感受。

写作技法（学会方法，巧得高分）

“两段法”写文学和音乐类作文

第一段：根据提示介绍影片的主要内容；

第二段：发表对影片的看法或者自己从中得到的启发。

写作模板（学会套路，得基本分）

影片介绍 → Now more and more people work far away...

发表看法 → I think ... is a great ...
The movie/music tells us that ...

经典词句（妙用句式，得出彩分）

单词	popular, superhero, create, ability, protect, power, responsibility
短语	fight against, take good care of, a kind of
句子	① ...shows that... ② ...first created by Marvel Comics... ③ I think *Spider-Man* is...

范文赏析（书写工整，得印象分）

Spider-Man is a popular science fiction movie in America. Spider-Man is a superhero first created by Marvel Comics. In the movie, Peter Parker, a high school student, obtains a kind of super ability after he was bitten by a transgenic spider. After that, he begins to fight against crimes and protect the common people.

I think *Spider-Man* is a great movie. I love a line in it—With great power comes great responsibility. This line shows that everyone in this world should take good care of his family and his country.

名师点评：本文用“两段法”介绍了影片名称、故事情节并发表了作者对这部电影的看法。要点齐全，思路清晰，层次分明。fight against, take good care of 等短语的使用体现了作者较高的英语运用水平。

及测听试力卷

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

☞(答案见285页)

单元知识浓缩（根据汉语提示，用适当的单词或短语完成短文）

Have you ever heard of Taiwan? Well, let me _____[1](介绍)it to you. Taiwan _____[2](属于)China. In China people call it the treasure _____[3](岛). Every year, _____[4](数百万的) tourists come to enjoy its_____[5](美).

Last year, we took a _____[6](船)to Gaoxiong, a _____[7](现代化的)city. It is in the _____[8](南方的) part of Taiwan. We bought some records of Jay Chou, because I'm a music _____[9](迷). I'll never forget this trip _____[10](永远).

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 9 Have you ever been to a museum?

词汇表听写

魔法六维导图

知识小集

高频单词
- encourage, collect ◂ 动词
- camera, toilet, ride, province, fox, spring ◂ 名词
- unbelievable, rapid, unusual, social, peaceful, perfect, safe ◂ 形容词
- simply, mostly ◂ 副词
- itself ◂ 代词
- whether, whenever ◂ 连词
- thousand ◂ 数词
- progress, German, fear, Indian, Japanese ◂ 兼类词

重点短语：amusement park // tea art // tea set // a couple of // thousands of // on the one hand ... on the other hand ... // all year round

常考句型：
1. Have/Has + 主语 + 过去分词 + 其他?
2. 主语 + have/has been to ...

单元语法：现在完成时（Ⅱ）

语言能力

听力：能听懂、询问和谈论有关游历等方面的对话或短文。（Section A 1b; 2b　Section B 1b）

阅读：能读懂有关游历及介绍某地风俗文化等方面的文章。（Section A 3a　Section B 2b）

写作：本单元的话题是"有趣的地方"，写一篇关于旅游或介绍旅游景点的短文。

方法大观

听力技巧：信息预测法（232 页）

阅读策略：排除法（245 页）

写作技法："三步法"写曾经去过的地方（251 页）

解题方法：语境分析法（230, 248, 249 页）；词义辨析法（231, 232, 240, 246 页）；分析句子结构法（231 页）；句意分析法（237 页）；语法判定法（241, 246, 247 页）

学习能力

1. 百度了解各类博物馆并与同学交流。（教材 P67）
2. 百度了解新加坡的语言、食物、气候和特色。（教材 P70）

英语思维

通过做英文读书笔记来巩固学习。（教材 P70）

文化意识

通过本单元的学习，了解国内外各类博物馆、主题公园以及一些名胜古迹，学会观察生活，体会旅游的乐趣，养成积极向上的生活观及合理、健康的生活习惯。

记忆大师

Period 1 Section A(1a–2d)

必背单词

1. **camera** *n.* 照相机；摄影机；摄像机

必背短语

2. learn about 了解；获知；得知

必背句子

3. **It's a great way to** spend a Saturday afternoon. 它是度过周六下午的一个好方法。

Period 2 Section A(3a–3c)

必背单词

1. **unbelievable** *adj.* 难以置信的；不真实的→反义词：believable 可信的
2. **progress** *v.* & *n.* 进步；进展→make progress(in...)（在……方面）取得进步
3. **rapid** *adj.* 迅速的；快速的
4. **unusual** *adj.* 不寻常的；特别的→反义词：usual

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

通常的；寻常的

5. **toilet** *n.* 坐便器；厕所
6. **encourage** *v.* 鼓励→ encourage sb. to do sth. 鼓励某人做某事
7. **social** *adj.* 社会的→ society *n.* 社会
8. **peaceful** *adj.* 和平的；安宁的→ peace *n.* 和平
9. **perfect** *adj.* 完美的；完全的→反义词：imperfect 有缺点的；不完美的
10. **itself** *pron.*(it 的反身代词) 它自己
11. **collect** *v.* 收集；采集→ collection *n.* 收藏品；一批物品；collector *n.* 收集者；收藏家

‖必背短语

12. think about 打算；考虑
13. in the future 在将来；未来

‖必背句子

14. Watching the tea preparation is just **as** enjoyable **as** drinking the tea itself.
看沏茶的过程和饮茶本身一样令人愉快。

Period 3 Section A(Grammar Focus–4c)

‖必背单词

1. **German** *adj.* 德国的；德语的；德国人的 *n.* 德语，德国人→复数 Germans
2. **ride** *n.* 供乘骑的游乐设施；短途旅程
3. **province** *n.* 省份

‖必背短语

4. a couple of 两个；一对；几个

‖必背句子&语法

5. —**Have you ever been to** a science museum?
你曾去过一家科学博物馆吗?
—Yes, **I've been to** a science museum./No, **I've never been to** a science museum. 是的，我曾去过一家科学博物馆。/不，我从未去过科学博物馆。
6. —**I've never been to** a water park.
我从未去过水上公园。
—**Me neither**. 我也没去过。
7. —**I've been to** the art museum many times.
我去过艺术博物馆很多次。
—Me, **too**. And **I've also visited** the nature museum. 我也是。我还参观过自然博物馆。

Period 5 Section B(2a–2e)

‖必背单词

1. **thousand** *num.* 一千→ thousands of 数以千计的；许许多多的
2. **safe** *adj.* 安全的；无危险的→反义词：dangerous 危险的
3. **simply** *adv.* 仅仅；只；不过→ simple *adj.* 简单的
4. **fear** *v.&n.* 害怕；惧怕
5. **whether** *conj.* 不管……(还是)；或者……(或者)；是否
6. **Indian** *adj.* 印度的 *n.* 印度人→ India *n.* 印度
7. **Japanese** *adj.* 日本的；日本人的；日语的 *n.* 日本人；日语
8. **fox** *n.* 狐狸
9. **whenever** *conj.* 在任何……的时候；无论何时
10. **spring** *n.* 春天
11. **mostly** *adv.* 主要地；通常

‖必背短语

12. three quarters 四分之三
13. be close to 离……近
14. whether ... or ... 不管……还是……
15. all year round 全年

‖必背句子

16. **On the one hand**, more than three quarters of the population are Chinese, so you can simply speak Putonghua a lot of the time. **On the other hand**, Singapore is an English-speaking country, so it's also a good place to practice your English!
一方面，这里超过四分之三的人都是中国人，所以很多时候你可以只讲普通话。另一方面，新加坡是个讲英语的国家，所以它也是一个你练习英语的好地方!
17. Maybe you fear **that** you won't be able to find anything good to eat when you travel.
也许你怕在旅行时你会找不到任何好吃的东西。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 1 Section A（1a–2d）

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

Language Goal: Talk about past experiences
语言目标：谈论过去的经历

Have you ever been to a science museum? 你曾去过一家科学博物馆吗?
Yes, I have. I went to the National/'næʃnəl/ Science Museum last year. Have you ever been to a history museum? 是的，我去过。去年我去了国家科学博物馆。你曾去过一家历史博物馆吗?
No, I haven't. 不，我没去过。
Me neither. ① Let's go to one ③ tomorrow. ②我也没去过。咱们明天去一家吧。

1a Which of these places would you like to visit? Rank them from 1 (most) to 6(least).
你想去这些地方中的哪些参观? 将它们从 1(最想去) 到 6(最不想去) 进行排序。

space museum 太空博物馆_____　　history museum 历史博物馆_____
art museum 艺术博物馆_____　　water park 水上公园_____
zoo 动物园_____　　amusement/ə'mju:zmənt/ park 游乐场_____

课文听力 1b

1b Listen. Have these students ever been to these places? Check(√) the boxes.
听录音。这些学生去过这些地方吗? 在框中打钩 (√)。

	Science museum 科学博物馆	History museum 历史博物馆	Art museum 艺术博物馆	Nature museum 自然博物馆	Space museum 太空博物馆
Claudia 克劳迪娅					
Sarah 萨拉	√				

1c Ask and answer questions about the places in 1b. 就 1b 中的地点进行问答。

A: Let's go somewhere/'sʌmweə/, /'sʌmwer/ ④ different today.
今天咱们去个不同的地方吧。

B: OK. Where do you want to go?
好。你想去哪里?

A: Have you ever been to the space museum?
你曾去过太空博物馆吗?

B: No, I haven't. How about you?
不，我没去过。你呢?

A: ...

课文听力 2a

2a Look at the map of the town. Listen and circle the places you hear.
看看这张城镇的地图，听录音并圈出你听到的地方。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

2b Listen again and circle *T* for true or *F* for false. 再听一遍录音，对的圈 T，错的圈 F。

Conversation 1 对话 1	Conversation 2 对话 2	Conversation 3 对话 3
1. Tina went to the space museum last year. T/F 蒂娜去年去了太空博物馆。对 / 错 2. John has never been to the space museum.T/F 约翰从未去过太空博物馆。对 / 错 3. They are going to take the subway.T/F 他们将乘地铁。对 / 错	1. Linda has been to the amusement park.T/F 琳达去过游乐场。对 / 错 2. Linda went to the amusement park yesterday.T/F 昨天琳达去了游乐场。对 / 错 3. Linda is going to the amusement park again by bike.T/F 琳达将骑自行车再去一次游乐场。对 / 错	1. Frank had a great time at the water park.T/F 弗兰克在水上公园玩得开心。对 / 错 2. Frank's friend has never been to the water park.T/F 弗兰克的朋友从未去过水上公园。对 / 错 3. Frank and his friend are going skating.T/F 弗兰克和他的朋友将去溜冰。对 / 错

2c Look at the map in 2a and make conversations about the places.

看看 2a 中的地图，就这些地点编对话。

A: Have you ever been to the space museum? 你曾去过太空博物馆吗?

B: Yes, I have. How about you? 是的，我去过。你呢?

A: No, I haven't. 不，我没去过。

B: Oh, it's fantastic. Let's go tomorrow. 哦，太好了。咱们明天去吧。

A: OK. How are we going to get there? 好。我们将怎么到那儿呢?

B: We can take the subway. 我们可以乘地铁。

2d Role-play the conversation. 分角色表演对话。

课文朗读 2d

Anna: I went to the film museum last weekend. Have you ever been there?
我上周末去了电影博物馆。你曾去过那儿吗?

Jill: Yes, I have. I went there back in April. 是的，我去过。我四月份去了那儿。

Anna: It's really interesting, isn't it? ⑤ It's a great way to spend ⑥ a Saturday afternoon.
那儿真有趣，对吧? 它是度过周六下午的一个好方法。

Jill: Yes, I love all the old movie cameras/'kæmərəz/ there. I learned about ⑦ the inventions /ɪn'venʃnz/ ⑧ that led to color movies, too. 是的，那儿的所有老电影摄影机我都很喜爱。我还了解了一些发明，它们成就了彩色电影。

先行词

that 引导的定语从句

Anna: So, what did you do on the weekend? 那么你周末干什么了?

Jill: I camped in the mountains with some friends. We put up a tent and cooked outside.
我和一些朋友去山里野营了。我们搭建帐篷，还在外面做饭。

Anna: That sounds fun. I've never been camping. ⑨ 那听起来很有意思。我从未野营过。

Jill: You should try it! 你该试试!

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

•考点批注　　•考点应用

★Me neither. 相当于 Neither have I. 或 I haven't either.

① **Me neither. 我也没去过。**

e.g. —Susan can't play the piano at all.
苏珊根本不会弹钢琴。
—Me neither.(= Neither can I.)
我也不会。
—She likes shirts made of silk.
她喜欢丝绸做的衬衫。
—Me too. 我也是。

小贴士："Neither+be动词/助动词/情态动词+主语."表示前者的否定情况也适用于后者。相当于"主语+neither."。

Me too. 意为"我也一样/我也如此"。"Sb./Sth. +too."结构表示前面所述的肯定情况也同样适合于其他人或物。

★Let's go to one tomorrow.

② **【重点】Let 型祈使句。**

e.g. —Let's go to the movies this evening.
今天晚上咱们去看电影吧。
—Good idea.
好主意。

Let's 句型用于提出建议或征求别人的意见。肯定回答用"OK. /All right. /Yes, let's ..."等；否定回答一般用"Sorry, I ..."等。

let's 和 let us 后面接动词原形，let sb. do sth."让某人做某事"，表示说话人的建议。

③ **one 一个**

e.g. These are my books. Which one do you want to read?
这些是我的书。你想看哪一本？
—I don't like these dresses.
我不喜欢这些连衣裙。
—How about those ones over there?
那边那些怎么样？



★在英语中，为了避免重复，通常用 one 代替上文中出现过的可数名词单数。如果指代可数名词复数，用 ones。

考题在线 1 —I'm a little hungry, Mum!
—There are some apple pies on the table. You may take_____. [泰安]

A. it　　B. this　　C. that　　D. one

点拨：用语境分析法解题。it 代指前面提到的同一个事物；this 特指"这个"；that 代替前面提到的特指的事物，所代替的名词可以是可数名词单数，也可以是不可数名词；one 代指前面提到的同类事物中的任何一个，所代替名词是可数名词单数。结合语境"桌上有一些苹果派。你可以吃_____。"可知空处应该填"其中的任何一个"，应用 one。

Constant dripping wears away the stone.
滴水穿石。

★Let's go somewhere different today.

④ **somewhere**/'sʌmweə/, /'sʌmwer/*adv.* **在某处；到某处**

e.g. It's too cold here. Let's go somewhere else.
这儿太冷了。我们去别的地方吧。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

—Did you go anywhere interesting last Sunday?
上个星期天你去什么有趣的地方了吗?
—No, I didn't go anywhere.
不，我哪儿也没去。

somewhere 通常用于肯定句中，在否定句或疑问句中要用 anywhere。形容词或副词修饰 somewhere, anywhere 等时，置于其后。

考题在线 2 —Blue mountains and green waters are around the village. It seems like a place in a fairy story.
—That's really _____. [青海]
A. somewhere awful B. somewhere fantastic
C. something exciting

点拨: 用词义辨析法解题。awful 极坏的；fantastic 极好的；exciting 令人兴奋的。根据第一句描述的“青山绿水”可知景色是“极好的”。

★ It's really interesting, isn't it?

⑤ **反意疑问句，由“陈述句 + 附加疑问句部分”构成。附加疑问句部分常译为“不是吗？”“是吧？”。**

e.g. We can go to the island by ship, can't we?
我们可以乘船去那个岛，不是吗?
Tom hasn't been to an amusement park, has he?
汤姆从来没有去过游乐场，是吗?
There's little rubbish in the schoolyard, is there?
否定词 肯定
校园里几乎没有垃圾，是吗?

反意疑问句要遵循以下原则：
① 前肯后否，前否后肯。
② 当前面的陈述句含有表示否定意义的词，如 few, little, never, no, nobody 等时，其后的附加疑问句要用肯定形式。

小贴士: 反意疑问句的回答应以事实为依据，如果事实是肯定的，就用 yes；如果事实是否定的，就用 no。在“前否后肯”的反意疑问句的答语中，yes 译为“不”，no 译为“是”。

考题在线 3 He can hardly stay awake because he is so tired, _____? [安顺]
A. is he B. isn't he C. can't he D. can he

点拨: 用分析句子结构法解题。句子中有情态动词 can，并有“hardly”（是含有否定意味的副词），前否定，后肯定。

★ It's a great way to spend a Saturday afternoon.

⑥ **a great way to do sth. 一个做某事的好方法**

e.g. Doing some kind of physical activity for 10 or 15 minutes can be a great way to change our state. =
Doing some kind of physical activity for 10 or 15 minutes can be a great way of changing our state.
做 10 到 15 分钟的某种身体活动可以成为一个改变我们状态的好方法。

动词不定式（短语）to do 作后置定语，修饰 way，相当于 a great way of doing sth.。

★ I learned about the inventions that led to color movies, too.

⑦ **learn about 了解；获知；得知** learn about 与 learn of 同义，后面接所了解的具体内容。

e.g. He reads a lot to learn about/of the history of Europe.
他大量阅读来了解欧洲历史。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

⑧ **invention**/ɪn'venʃn/*n.* 发明；发明物

e.g. Could you please tell us about the four great inventions of China?
你能告诉我们关于中国的四大发明吗？

指发明物

考题在线 4 —Have you heard of a cool washing machine called Bicycle Washing Machine?
—Yes, it's a new _____ by a group of Chinese university students.
[宜昌]

A. invention　　B. information
C. instruction　　D. introduction

点拨：本题用词义辨析法。句意"——你曾听说过一台叫自行车洗衣机的很酷的洗衣机吗？——是的，它是一项由一组中国大学生团队创造的新发明。"invention 发明；information 信息；instruction 命令；introduction 介绍。由句意可知这是一项新发明。

核心素养之学习能力

观察生活，培养发明意识

雨衣的发明：19世纪，在苏格兰橡胶厂工作的麦金托什因生活窘迫，无力购买雨具，每逢雨天，只能冒雨上下班。一个雨天，他不小心将橡胶汁沾满衣裤，怎么也擦不掉，只好穿着这身脏衣服冒雨回家。麦金托什回到家却惊喜地发现，穿在里面的衣服一点也没有湿，他索性将橡胶汁涂满全身衣服。这就是世界上第一件胶布雨衣(raincoat)。

★**I've never been camping.**

⑨【句法分析】本句时态为现在完成进行时，其结构为"**have/has been** + 动词的现在分词"，表示某动作从过去某个时间开始，一直延续到现在，并且还有可能持续下去。常与"**for** + 时间段"或"**since**+ 时间点"连用。

e.g. We have been waiting for him for two hours.
我们已经等了他两个小时了。

考题在线答案　1. D　2. B　3. D　4. A

---

invention 作"发明"讲时，为不可数名词，作"发明物"讲时是可数名词。

★ invent *v.* 发明；创造
+ ion → invention *n.* 发明；发明物
+ or → inventor *n.* 发明者；发明家

一语辨异：
An inventor may invent many inventions.
一个发明家可能创造许多发明。

素养行动 让我们从生活中汲取创新灵感(inspiration)，试着创造一项自己的小发明。

素养行动结果 勤于向生活学习，培养发明意识。

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

(答案见285页)

听力技巧

信息预测法（听中）（在做听力试题时，根据题中所给的信息了解主要听力信息，并预测听力内容，再根据录音内容判断听前预测是否正确。）

听力过程

一、听 1b，选择正确答案

1. From the conversation, which museum haven't Sarah and Claudia visited yet?
A. The science museum.
B. The history museum.
C. The art museum.

课文听力 1b

2. From the conversation, who has never been to the space museum?
A. Claudia.　　B. Sarah.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

C. Neither of them.

二、听 2a，选择正确答案

3. From Conversation 1, how will they get to the museum?

A. On foot.　　B. By bus.

C. By subway.



4. From Conversation 2, where will they go next week?

A. The amusement park.

B. The science museum.

C. The water park.

5. From Conversation 3, what's their decision at last?

A. They will go skating in River Park.

B. They will go to the water park.

C. They will go home.

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练　稳拿中考基础 20分

☞(答案见286页)

一、根据句意用括号内所给词的适当形式填空

1. Fax machines were a wonderful _____ (invent) at the time.

2. What do you do for _____ (amuse) in this town?

3. —My mobile phone doesn't work, but I can't find a shop to repair it.

—Oh, let me show you _____ (first) near our school.

4. What happened to you? Why have you been _____(cry)?

5. It's a great way _____ (solve) the problem.

二、单项选择

6. Steve Jobs was full of _____—always coming up with new ideas which led to great changes in society. [苏州]

A. instruction

B. invitation

C. introduction

D. invention

7. —I haven't been to the science museum for a long time. What about you?

—_____. Could you go with me this weekend?

A. Me too

B. Me neither

C. So have I

D. So do I

8. —There is a beautiful park near your school, _____?

—Yes. I often go walking there. [宿迁]

A. is there

B. isn't there

C. are there

D. aren't there

9. Theaters may have a brighter future if they can provide a movie experience _____ people cannot get at home. [河南]

A. that　　B. who

C. whom　　D. what

10. There's too much noise here. Why don't we go _____?

A. quiet somewhere

B. somewhere quiet

C. quiet everywhere

D. everywhere quiet

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 2 Section A（3a–3c）

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

3a **Three students talk about the most interesting museums they have ever been to. Read the magazine article and answer the questions.** 三个学生讨论他们曾经去过的最有趣的博物馆。阅读这篇杂志文章并回答问题。

课文朗读 3a

1. Which three museums do the students talk about? 学生们谈论了哪三个博物馆?
2. What do you think is the most interesting thing about each museum?
   关于每个博物馆，你认为最有趣的东西是什么?

Ken: The most interesting museum I've ever been to is the American Computer Museum. They have information about different computers and who invented/ɪn'ventɪd/ them. The old computers were much bigger. It's unbelievable/ˌʌnbɪ'li:vəbl/ ① that technology has progressed/'prəʊgrest/, /'prɑ:grest/ ② in such a rapid/'ræpɪd/ ③ way! I've also learned that there was a special computer. It could play chess even better than humans. I wonder how much more computers will be able to do in the future. 我曾去过的最有趣的博物馆是美国计算机博物馆。那里有关于不同的计算机和它们的发明者的信息。以前的计算机要大得多。让人难以置信的是科技进步得如此之快！我还了解到有一种特殊的计算机。它能下国际象棋甚至比人类下得都好。不知道将来电脑还能做些什么事情呢。

Amy: I've recently been to a very unusual/ʌn'ju:ʒuəl/ ④ museum in India, the International /ˌɪntə'næʃnəl/ Museum of Toilets. I just couldn't believe my eyes when I saw so many different kinds of toilets/'tɔɪlətz/ there. The museum teaches people about the history and development of toilets. It also encourages/ɪn'kʌrɪdʒɪz/, /ɪn'kɜ:rɪdʒɪz/ ⑤ governments and social/'səʊʃl/ groups to think about ⑥ ways to improve toilets in the future. 我最近去了印度的一个非同寻常的博物馆：国际厕所博物馆。当我在那里见到如此多不同种类的厕所时我完全不敢相信我的眼睛。这个博物馆教给人们关于厕所的历史和发展。同时也鼓励政府和社会团体去考虑未来改进厕所的方法。

Linlin: Last year I went to the Hangzhou National Tea Museum. It's a relaxing and peaceful/'pi:sfl/ ⑦ place near a lake. The tea art performances/pə(r)'fɔ:(r)mənsɪz/ ⑧ show how to make a perfect/'pɜ:(r)fɪkt/ ⑨ cup of tea with beautiful tea sets. Watching the tea preparation is just as enjoyable as drinking the tea itself/ɪt'self/. I've finally realized why my grandpa loves drinking tea and collecting/kə'lektɪŋ/ ⑩ tea sets. 去年我去了杭州国家茶博物馆。那是一个位于湖边的令人放松且安宁的地方。茶艺表演展示了如何用精美的茶具沏出一杯完美的茶。看沏茶的过程和饮茶本身一样令人愉快。最终我意识到为什么爷爷喜爱喝茶和收集茶具了。

3b **Read the article again and answer the following questions.** 再次阅读文章并回答下列问题。

1. What does Ken say about the American Computer Museum?
   肯说了关于美国计算机博物馆的什么事情?
2. What can we learn at the International Museum of Toilets? 我们能在国际厕所博物馆学到什么?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

3. Why is the Hangzhou National Tea Museum a nice place to enjoy tea?
为什么杭州国家茶博物馆是一个品茶的好地方?

3c Which of the underlined words in the passage have the following meanings?
文章中哪些画线单词有以下含义?

make (something) better 使得(某物)更好　quiet 安静的　become better 变得更好
made 制作　uncommon 不普通的　quick 迅速的

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读 60分

(答案见286页)

阅读过程

一、速读 3a，选择正确答案

1. What do the three students talk about?
(主旨大意题)

A. The most interesting museums they have ever visited.
B. The inventors of the museums they have ever visited.
C. The importance of improving the toilets in the future.
D. How to make a perfect cup of tea.

二、细读 3a，选择正确答案

2. Which museum has a special computer?
(细节查找题)

A. The International Museum of Toilets.
B. The American Computer Museum.
C. The Hangzhou National Tea Museum.
D. None of the above.

3. What can you learn from the International Museum of Toilets? (细节查找题)

A. The technology has progressed quickly.
B. Computers will do many things in the future.
C. How to make a perfect cup of tea with beautiful tea sets.
D. The history and development of toilets.

4. Where can you see the tea art performances?
(细节查找题)

A. In the US.　B. In India.
C. In Hangzhou.　D. In Japan.

Ⅲ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用　　•考点批注

★It's unbelievable that technology has progressed in such a rapid way!

① **unbelievable**/ˌʌnbɪ'li:vəbl/*adj.*(very difficult to believe and unlikely to be true) 不真实的;难以置信的 由"un-+believe去e+-able"构成,其反义词为believable,意为"可信的"。

e.g. It is unbelievable that we are expected to pay twice.
令人难以置信的是竟然要我们付两次钱。

拓展:believe 的相关词:



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

② **progress**/'prəʊgres/, /'prɑ:gres/*v.*&*n.* 进步；进展

e.g. Medical science is progressing rapidly in our country.
在我国医学正在迅速发展。作不及物动词，意为“进步；进展”。

The student is showing rapid progress in his study.
这个学生在学习上进步很快。

I have made much progress in English. 我在英语方面已经取得了很大的进步。

作不可数名词，意为“进步；进展”，常用搭配为 make progress (in…)“(在……方面)取得进步”。

③ **rapid**/'ræpɪd/*adj.* 迅速的；快速的　副词 rapidly

e.g. Amy made such rapid progress that her teacher praised her in front of the whole class.
埃米取得如此迅速的进步，以至于她的老师在全班同学面前表扬了她。

考题在线1 用括号中所给词的适当形式填空。

The world is changing _____, and we should keep up with the pace of change.(rapid)

点拨：此空用来修饰动词“changing”，应用副词形式。

★**I've recently been to a very unusual museum in India, the International Museum of Toilets.**

④ **unusual**/ʌn'ju:ʒuəl/*adj.* 不寻常的；特别的

e.g. The new museum is an unusual building. 这个新博物馆是一栋特别的建筑。

考题在线2 Shirley is an early bird. It was _____ for her to be late for school today.(usual)　[上海]

点拨：句意“雪莉是个早起的人。对她来说，今天上学迟到是不寻常的。”根据句意可知应填 usual 的反义词。

unusual 以元音音素开头，故前面加不定冠词时应用 an。反义词 usual“通常的；寻常的”。

★**It also encourages governments and social groups to think about ways to improve toilets in the future.**

⑤ **encourage**/ɪn'kʌrɪdʒ/, /ɪn'kɜ:rɪdʒ/*v.* (to give sb. support, courage or hope) 鼓励　encourage sb. to do sth. 鼓励某人做某事

e.g. My mom encourages me to learn dancing.
我妈妈鼓励我学习舞蹈。

名词 encouragement“激励；鼓励”

速记小筏：en-(使)+courage(勇气)→encourage(鼓励)

⑥ **think about** 考虑；打算　about 是介词，后面可接名词、代词或 v.-ing 形式作宾语。

e.g. I can't tell you now — I'll have to think about it.
我现在无法告诉你——我得考虑一下。

英语中，一些名词加后缀-ful 可构成形容词，表示具有某种性质。
use-useful 有用的
help-helpful 有帮助的
success-successful 成功的
color-colorful 颜色鲜艳的

★**It's a relaxing and peaceful place near a lake.**

⑦ **peaceful**/'pi:sfl/*adj.* 和平的；安宁的

e.g. They are trying to find a peaceful solution to the problem.
他们正在尽力为这个问题找到一个和平的解决方法。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★**The tea art performances show how to make a perfect cup of tea with beautiful tea sets.**

performer 名词，意为“表演者；演出者；演员”；perform 动词，意为“表演；演出”。

⑧ **performance**/pə(r)'fɔ:(r)məns/ *n.* 表演；演出

e.g. In the theatre, they were giving a performance of *Secret Love in Peach Blossom Land.*

在剧院里，他们正在演出《暗恋桃花源》。

Wu Yifan is a good performer. He has performed in several films. And his performance in *Mr. Six* was excellent.

吴亦凡是一个好演员。他演过几部电影。他在《老炮儿》中的表演很棒。

⑨ **perfect**/'pɜ:(r)fikt/*adj.* 完美的；完全的

反义词：imperfect“不完美的”；副词：perfectly“完美地”。

e.g. The car was in perfect condition. 这辆车的车况极佳。

★**I've finally realized why my grandpa loves drinking tea and collecting tea sets.**

collect 及其相关词：collect *v.* 收集；采集；collection *n.* 收藏品；一批物品；collector *n.* 收集者；收藏家

⑩ **collect**/kə'lekt/*v.* 收集；采集

e.g. I like collecting stamps. 我喜欢收集邮票。

Tony's hobby is collecting coins.

托尼的爱好是收集硬币。

All his collections are here. 他所有的收藏品都在这儿了。

John is a book collector. 约翰是一个藏书家。

一语辨异：A collector collects things and has collections. 一个收藏家收集东西，有收藏品。

考题在线 3) Some people buy stamps not for sending letters now. They _____ them as their hobby. [镇江]

A. sell　　B. design　　C. receive　　D. collect

点拨：用句意分析法解题。sell 卖；design 设计；receive 接收；collect 收集。根据句意可知是“他们把收集邮票作为他们的爱好”。

考题在线答案 1. rapidly　2. unusual　3. D

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见286页)

一、根据汉语提示或首字母提示写出单词

1. Tom has made great _____ (进步) in his Chinese study.
2. The disease is spreading at a _____ (迅速的) rate.
3. When he was young, he liked to _____ (收集) stamps.
4. I have never met a foreigner who speaks such p_____ Chinese.
5. Bell i_____ the telephone in 1876.

二、根据句意用所给单词的适当形式填空

6. The girl is always telling lies. What she said is _____(believe).
7. Blue is a _____(peace) color. People often feel quiet in blue rooms.
8. He _____(performance) perfectly on the stage yesterday.
9. I take part in a lot of _____(society)

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

activities every year.

10. We had snow in May, which was very _____ (usual).

三、根据汉语提示完成句子。每空一词

11. 她父母鼓励她为这次考试努力学习。

Her parents _____ _____ _____ study hard for the exam.

12. 我认为我们需要走开一下去考虑这件事。

I think we need to go away and _____ _____ this.

13. 我以一种不同的方式度过了今年暑假。

I spent this summer vacation _____ _____ _____ _____.

14. 我想了解一下英国的历史。

I want to _____ _____ the history of England.

15. 谁知道将来会发生什么事？

Who knows what will happen _____ _____ _____?

Period 3 Section A（Grammar Focus–4c）

I. 课文原文、译文

Grammar Focus 语法聚焦

Have you ever been to a science museum? 你曾去过一家科学博物馆吗？	Yes, I've been to a science museum./No, I've never been to a science museum. 是的，我曾去过一家科学博物馆。/不，我从未去过科学博物馆。
Have you ever visited the space museum? 你曾参观过太空博物馆吗？	Yes, I have. I went there last year./No, I haven't. 是的，我参观过。我去年去过那儿。/不，我从未参观过。
I've been to the art museum many times. 我去过艺术博物馆很多次。	Me, too. And I've also visited the nature museum. 我也是。我还参观过自然博物馆。
I've never been to a water park. 我从未去过水上公园。	Me neither. 我也没去过。

4a Put the correct forms of the verbs in the blanks. 用动词的正确形式填空。

1. **A:** Do you want _____ (come) to the space museum? 你想_____（来）太空博物馆吗？
   B: No, I've already _____ (be) there three times. 不，我已经_____（去）那里三次了。
2. **A:** Have you _____ (see) the robots at the science museum?
   你在科学博物馆里_____（看见）机器人了吗？
   B: Yes, I _____ (go) there last weekend. 是的，我上周末_____（去）那里。
3. **A:** Let's _____ (spend) the day at the zoo. 咱们在动物园里_____（度过）一天吧。
   B: Well, I've already _____ (be) there a couple of① times, but I'm happy_____ (go) again.
   好，我已经_____（去）那儿几次了，但是我很高兴能再_____（去）一次。
4. **A:** How about _____ (go) to the art museum? There are some special German/'dʒɜ:(r)mən/② paintings there right now. _____（去）艺术博物馆怎么样？那里现在有一些有特色的德国绘画。
   B: Sure. When do you want _____ (go)? 好的。你想什么时候_____（去）?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

5. **A:** Have you ever _____ (visit) the history museum? 你曾经_____(参观)历史博物馆吗?

B: No, I've never _____ (be) there. 不，我从未_____(去过)那里。

4b Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets. 用括号中动词的正确形式填空。

Most of us _____(see) Mickey Mouse, Donald/'dɒnəld/, /'dɑ:nəld/ Duck and other famous Disney characters in cartoons before. But have you ever _____ (be) to Disneyland/'dɪznilænd/? Disneyland _____(be) an amusement park with a special theme/θi:m/ — Disney characters and movies. There _____(be) many exciting rides/raɪdz/, lovely restaurants and fantastic gift shops there. You can also _____ (see) the Disney characters walking around the park. And have you ever _____ (hear) of a Disney Cruise/kru:z/? This _____ (be) a boat ride with a Disney theme. You can _____ (take) a ride on the boat for several days and eat and sleep on it. On the boat, you can _____(shop) and have Disney parties before you _____ (arrive) at the Disney island.

我们当中大多数人以前都在卡通片中_____(看见)米老鼠、唐老鸭和其他著名的迪士尼角色。但是你曾经_____(去过)迪士尼乐园吗? 迪士尼乐园_____(是)一个有着特殊主题的游乐场——迪士尼人物和电影。那里_____(有)许多令人兴奋的供乘骑的游乐设施、可爱的饭店和极好的礼品商店。你还可以_____(看见)迪士尼人物在公园中到处走动。你曾经_____(听)说过迪士尼游轮吗? 这_____(是)一个有迪士尼主题的乘船航行。你可以_____(乘)船几天，在上面吃住。在你_____(到达)迪士尼岛屿之前，你可以在船上_____(购物)，参加迪士尼派对。

4c Answer the survey questions and then ask your partner. 回答调查中的问题然后询问你的搭档。

Have you ever ... 你曾……	You 你	Your partner 你的搭档
been to another province/'prɒvɪns/, /'prɑ:vɪns/ in China? 去过中国另一个省吗?		
lost something important? 丢过重要的东西吗?		

II. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础20分

•考点应用

★Well, I've already been there a couple of times, but I'm happy to go again.

① a couple of 两个；一对；几个

辨析: a couple of 与 a pair of

二者在数量上都可以表示"两个"，但区别如下:

a couple of	不一定是配对的东西。有时 a couple of 不一定是指"两个"，而可能是指"几个"。如: a couple of tickets(几张票), a couple of months (几个月)。

•考点批注



a pair of shoes



a couple of stamps

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

a pair of	一定是配对的东西（一对；一双）。如：a pair of shoes（一双鞋），a pair of glasses（一副眼镜）。

There are some special German paintings there right now.

German 作名词，意为“德国人”时，复数形式是 Germans，而不是变 a 为 e。表示“德国”要用 Germany。

② **German** /'dʒɜ:(r)mən/ *adj.* 德国的；德语的；德国人的 *n.* 德语；德国人

e.g. Five Germans went back to Germany.

五个德国人回德国了。

考题在线 —Are all the students from _____ in your class?

—No, there are only 3 _____ in our class. The others are from other countries.

A. Germany; Germen

B. Germany; Germans

C. German; Germans

D. German; Germany

点拨：词义辨析法。句意“——你们班里所有的学生都来自德国吗？——不，我们班只有 3 个德国人。其他人来自其他国家。”Germany 意为“德国”；German 意为“德国人”，其复数形式为 Germans。

考题在线答案 B

各国人单复数变化形式：中日不变，（单复同形 Chinese-Chinese；Japanese-Japanese）英法变，（Englishman-Englishmen；Frenchman-Frenchmen）其余 -s 加后面。（German-Germans；Canadian-Canadians…）

Ⅲ. 单元语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

现在完成时“焦点访谈”（二）

含 been，ever，never 的现在完成时，been 是 be 动词的过去分词，ever（曾经），never（从不；未曾）一般作副词。

知识微课

考点 1 have been to + 地点

辨析：have been to，have gone to 与 have been in/at

have been to	曾经去过，现已回来，可接次数	He has been to Beijing 3 times. 他去过北京三次。
have gone to	到某地去了，尚未回来，通常不用第一人称	She's not here. She has gone to Qingdao. 她不在这儿。她去了青岛。
have been in/at	在某地待了多长时间，常接时间	He has been in London for half a year. 他在伦敦待了半年了。



小贴士：当 have been to 后面接副词，如 here，there，home 时，to 要省略，变为 have been here/there/home。

考题在线 1 —Paris is a wonderful place.

—So it is. I _____ there twice. [凉山州]

A. have been　　B. have gone

C. went　　D. will go

点拨：句意“——巴黎是一个很棒的地方。——的确。我去过那里两次。”由 twice 可知，此处表示曾经去过某地，用 have been。

考点 2 have been in + 组织，表示加入某组织

e.g. He has been in the army for 3 years.

他参军三年了。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考点 3 have been + *adj./n.* 呈现……状态

e.g. The shop has been open for 10 years.
这家店营业十年了。

We have been friends since we were 5.
我们从 5 岁起就一直是朋友。

考点 4 ever, never 常与现在完成时连用，是现在完成时态的提示词。

e.g. —Have you ever been there?
你曾去过那里吗?

—No, I have never been there before.
不，我以前从未去过那里。

考题在线 2 It is said that the number of forest parks in Guangdong _____ to more than 1,000 so far. [广东]

A. increase

B. increased

C. has increased

D. will increase

点拨: 本题用语法判定法。so far 意为“到目前为止”是现在完成时态的时间状语，其谓语构成为“have/has + 过去分词”。

考题在线答案 1. A 2. C

Ⅳ. 单元语法专练 夺取中考语法满分

(答案见 286 页)

一、根据汉语提示写出单词或短语

1. You speak _____ (德语) much better than me.

2. You'll be all right in _____ _____ _____ _____ (几天).

3. All his articles seemed an expression of the same _____ (主题).

4. He invited me to _____ _____ _____ _____ (兜风) in his new car.

5. Zhejiang is a _____ (省) of China.

二、语法专练 (用所给词的适当形式填空)

6. I _____ already _____ (see) the film. I _____ (see) it last week.

7. —_____ he _____ (finish) his work today?
—Not yet.

8. —_____ you _____ (be) to Hong Kong?
—Yes, I _____ (be) there twice.

9. —_____ you ever _____ (eat) chocolate sandwiches?
—No, never.

10. My parents aren't at home. They _____ (go) to Beijing on business.

Period 4 Section B (1a–1d)

Ⅰ. 课文原文、译文

1a **Match the pictures with the names.** 将图片与名字配对。

a	b	c	d

_____ the Terracotta/ˌterəˈkɒtə/, /ˌtereˈkɑːtə/ Army 兵马俑

_____ the Great Wall 长城

_____ the Bird's Nest/nest/ 鸟巢

_____ the Palace Museum 故宫博物院

1b **Listen to a student interviewing a foreign student. Check (√) the questions you hear.** 听一名学

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

生采访一名外国的学生。在你所听到的问题前打钩（√）。



_____ Have you visited the Palace Museum? 你参观过故宫博物院吗?

_____ Have you been to the Great Wall? 你去过长城吗?

_____ Have you been to the Bird's Nest? 你去过鸟巢吗?

_____ Have you seen the Terracotta Army? 你见过兵马俑吗?

_____ Have you tried Chinese food? 你尝试过中国食物吗?

1c Listen again and take notes. 再听一遍录音并记笔记。

Name 名字：_____

Country 国家：_____

How long in China 在中国多久：_____

Places visited 游览的地方：_____

Food 食物：_____

1d What places have you been to? Ask your partner. 你去过哪些地方？问你的搭档。

Have you visited ...? 你参观过……吗?
Have you been to ...? 你去过……吗?
Have you seen ...? 你见过……吗?
Have you tried ...? 你尝试过……吗?

Ⅱ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

（答案见286页）

听力过程



听 1b，选择正确答案

1. Where does Peter come from?

A. England. B. America.

C. Australia.

2. How long has Peter been in China?

A. For 2 weeks. B. For 2 months.

C. For 2 years.

3. Which place did Peter visit last week?

A. The Bird's Nest. B. The Palace Museum.

C. The Great Wall.

4. What does Peter think of Beijing Duck?

A. Terrible. B. Delicious.

C. Bitter.

Period 5 Section B（2a–2e）



Ⅰ. 课文原文、译文及导读

导读批注 | 原文译文·导读

Pre-reading（读前）

2a What do you know or want to know about Singapore/ˌsɪŋəˈpɔː(r)/, /ˈsɪŋəˌpɔː(r)/? Discuss it with your group. 关于新加坡你知道什么或者想知道什么？跟你的小组成员讨论一下。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

While-reading（读中）

2b Read the article. How many reasons can you find for visiting Singapore? 阅读文章。你可以找到几个游览新加坡的原因？

Making Notes 记笔记

After reading, write down three or more things you have learned.

读完后，写下三个或更多你学到的东西。

We always remember things better if we take time to reflect.

如果我们花时间思考，总会更好地记住东西。

批 体裁：说明文

批 文章结构：总分结构

Singapore — A Place You Will Never Forget!

新加坡—— 一个你将永难忘怀的地方！

课文朗读 2b

Have you ever been to Singapore? For thousands/'θaʊzndz/ ① of tourists from China, this small island in Southeast Asia 主题句 is a wonderful and safe/seɪf/ ② place to take a holiday. On the one hand, more than three quarters ④ of the population are Chinese, so you can simply/'sɪmpli/ ⑤ speak Putonghua a lot of the time. On the other hand, ③ Singapore is an English-speaking country, so it's also a good place to practice ⑥ your English!

批 句子：运用并列结构列举2个原因，例证上一句的观点，条分缕析，水到渠成。

你曾经去过新加坡吗？对于来自中国的成千上万的游客来说，这个位于东南亚的小岛是一个度假的极好且安全的地方。一方面，这里超过四分之三的人都是中国人，所以很多时候你可以只讲普通话。另一方面，新加坡是一个讲英语的国家，所以它也是一个你练习英语的好地方！

批 写作手法：Para.1, Para.2, Para.3. 首句均用一般疑问句起笔，引出话题，吸引读者继续阅读下去。

Have you ever tried Chinese food outside of China? Maybe you fear /fɪə/, /fɪr/ ⑦ that you won't be able to find anything good to eat when you travel. In Singapore, however, you'll find a lot of food from China; you won't have any problem getting rice, noodles or dumplings. Singapore is also an excellent place to try new food. Whether/'weðə(r)/ ⑧ you like Indian/'ɪndiən/ ⑨ food, Western food or Japanese/ˌdʒæpə'ni:z/ food, you'll find it all in Singapore!

你曾经在中国以外的地方尝试过中餐吗？也许你怕在旅行时你会找不到任何好吃的东西。但是在新加坡你会发现许多来自中国的食物；你会毫不费力地吃到米饭、面条或饺子。新加坡也是一个极好的尝试新食物的地方。不管你是喜欢印度食物、西方食物，还是日本食物，你都会在新加坡找到它！

批 词语：运用转折连词but提示读者，作者将要重点表达的内容。

Most large cities have zoos, but have you ever been to a zoo at night? Singapore has a Night Safari/sə'fɑ:ri/. It might seem strange to go to a zoo when it's dark. However, if you go to see lions, tigers or foxes/fɒksɪz/, /fɑ:ksɪz/ during the daytime, they'll probably be asleep! A lot of animals only wake up at night, so this is the best time to watch them. At the Night Safari, you can

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

watch these animals in a more natural environment than in a normal zoo.

大多数大城市都有动物园，但是你曾在晚上去过动物园吗？新加坡有一个夜间野生动物园。天黑的时候去动物园似乎很奇怪。但是如果你在白天去看狮子、老虎或者狐狸，它们可能在睡觉！许多动物只在夜晚醒来，所以这是观赏它们的最好时间。在夜间野生动物园，你可以在一个比普通动物园更自然的环境中观赏这些动物。

One great thing about Singapore is that the temperature is almost the same all year round[10]. This is because the island is so close to[11] the equator /ɪ'kweɪtə(r)/. So you can choose to go whenever/wen'evə(r)/ [12] you like — spring/sprɪŋ/, summer, autumn or winter. And, of course, it's not too far from China!

关于新加坡特别好的一点是其气温全年几乎是一样的。这是因为这个岛屿距赤道很近。所以你可以选择在任何你喜欢的时候——春天、夏天、秋天或者冬天前往。当然了，它离中国也不是很远！

Post-reading（读后）

写作小练笔 ☞（答案见251页）

2c The statements below are false. Use information from the article to correct them.

以下陈述是错误的。利用文章当中的信息更正它们。

1. Most people in Singapore only speak English. 在新加坡大多数人只讲英语。
2. It is not easy to get many different kinds of good food in Singapore.
   在新加坡找到许多不同种类的好吃的食物不容易。
3. It is better to see lions and tigers during the daytime because they will probably be awake.
   在白天去看狮子和老虎比较好，因为它们很可能是醒着的。
4. It is best to visit Singapore in the autumn. 在秋天游览新加坡是最好的。

2d Fill in the conversation about Singapore using the information from the article.

利用文章当中的信息补全关于新加坡的对话。

A: I'm going to Singapore next week. _____ you ever _____ there before?
我下周将要去新加坡，以前你曾_____那里吗？

B: Yes, I've _____ to Singapore many times. It's my favorite country to visit in _____ Asia. 是的，我_____新加坡许多次。它是我在_____亚最喜欢参观的国家。

A: What languages do people _____ there? 那里的人_____什么语言？

B: Mostly/'məʊstli/ Chinese and _____. 主要是中文和_____。

A: What about the food? Is it good? 食物怎么样？好吗？

B: It's excellent! _____ you ever tried Indian food? Indian food is really good in Singapore.
好极了！你曾尝试_____印度食物吗？在新加坡，印度食物的确很好。

A: I see. Have you _____ heard of the Night Safari? Someone told me to go there.
我知道了。你_____听说过夜间野生动物园吗？有人告诉我去那里。

B: Yes! I _____ been to the Night Safari. It was really exciting to _____ the animals in

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

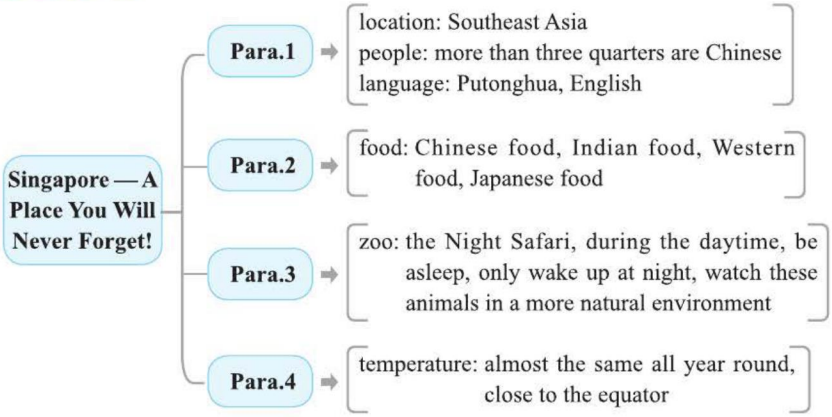
the dark. 是的！我_____去过夜间野生动物园。在黑暗中_____动物的确令人兴奋极了。

A: And is it always _____ in Singapore? 在新加坡总是_____吗?

B: All _____ round! It's always summer there! 一_____到头都是！那里总是夏天!

2e Make notes about Singapore. Write down anything that you remember. Do not look at the article. 记关于新加坡的笔记。把你记得的写下来。不要看文章。

课文背诵指南



Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读 60分

☞(答案见286页)

阅读策略

排除法(快速阅读全文,根据所给题目和选项,仔细分析考虑后,再与原文的信息进行比较,排除不符合原文细节的选项,从而得到正确答案。)

阅读过程

阅读 2b,选择正确答案

拓展阅读

1. ⊙ The passage mainly talks about Singapore's _____. (主旨大意题)

A. food　　B. Night Safari

C. temperature　　D. All of the above.

2. What languages do people speak there? (细节查找题)

A. Putonghua.　　B. English.

C. French.　　D. Both A and B.

3. What kind of food is not mentioned in this passage? (细节查找题)

A. Chinese food.　　B. Indian food.

C. American food.　　D. Japanese food.

4. Which is NOT true from the passage? (细节推理题)

A. In Singapore, you had better go to the zoo at night.

B. Many animals, such as tigers and lions, wake up during the daytime.

C. You can watch the animals better in a more natural environment.

D. Most large cities have the normal zoos.

5. Which is the best time to visit Singapore? (细节归纳题)

A. Whenever you like.　　B. In spring.

C. In winter.　　D. In summer.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

·考点批注　·考点应用

For thousands of tourists from China, this small island in Southeast Asia is a wonderful and safe place to take a holiday.

thousands of "数以千计的；许许多多的"，用来表示一个不具体的数目，前面不能用具体的数字修饰，后接可数名词复数。

① **thousand**/'θaʊznd/*num.* 一千

e.g. They plant thousands of trees every year.
他们每年种植数千棵树。

考题在线 1 _____ visitors came to take photos of Hongyadong during the vacation. [重庆A卷]

A. Thousand　B. Thousand of
C. Thousands　D. Thousands of

点拨：本题用语法判定法。thousand 前有具体数字修饰时，表示确切的数目，其后既不加 -s，也不与 of 连用；thousand 前无具体数字修饰时，其后需要加 -s，且与 of 连用，表示概数。句意"假期间数以千计的参观者来拍洪崖洞的照片。"

大数的表示（见 U8 Period 5）

safely(adv.安全地)
safe(adj.安全的) → dangerous(adj.危险的)
safety(n.安全) → danger(n.危险)

② **safe**/seɪf/*adj.* 安全的；无危险的

e.g. Is it safe to swim here?
在这儿游泳安全吗？

考题在线 2 —Are you clear about the job of a policeman, Ben?
—Yes, to keep people _____ and the society in good order.

A. busy　B. safe
C. lucky　D. healthy

点拨：用词义辨析法解题。busy 繁忙的；safe 安全的；lucky 幸运的；healthy 健康的。由"保持社会良好秩序"可判断出是为了人们的安全。

On the one hand, more than three quarters of the population are Chinese, so you can simply speak Putonghua a lot of the time. On the other hand, Singapore is an English-speaking country, so it's also a good place to practice your English!

用于引出不同的（尤指对立的）观点或思想等。

③ **On the one hand ... on the other hand** ...一方面……另一方面……

e.g. On the one hand, Peter wants to make more money. On the other hand, he wants to have more time to enjoy life.
一方面彼得想赚更多的钱。另一方面，他想有更多的时间享受生活。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

④ **quarter**/'kwɔ:tə(r)/*n.* 四分之一；一刻钟，可数名词，常用于分数表达。

敲黑板
分数表达法：
英语分数很好记，"母序子基"四个字；
分子若是大于一，分母还须加-s。

e.g. Three quarters of the foreign students in our school are from America.
我们学校有四分之三的外国学生来自美国。

$\frac{1}{4}$ = one fourth/quarter　$\frac{1}{5}$ = one fifth

One fifth of the water is dirty.
五分之一的水是脏的。

分数 + of + ①不可数名词 + 谓语动词（单数形式）
②可数名词复数 + 谓语动词（复数形式）

考题在线 3 According to a survey, four out of five women do housework at home, but only _____ of men would do it. [广东]

A. four fifth　　B. four fifths

C. two fifth　　D. two fifths

点拨：本题用语法判定法。句意"根据一项调查，五分之四的妇女在家做家务，但是只有五分之二的男人愿意做家务。"分数的表达法为：分子用基数词，分母用序数词，分子大于一，分母用复数，先排除A和C，再结合"but only"可知答案。

⑤ **simply**/'sɪmpli/*adv.* 仅仅；只；不过　相当于 just 和 only。

e.g. It's not simply a question of money. 这不仅仅是钱的问题。

The book explains grammar simply and clearly.
这本书对语法解释得简明扼要。

意为"简单地；简朴地；朴素地"。其形容词形式为 simple"简单的，朴素的"。

⑥ **practice** /'præktɪs/ *v.* 练习　后接名词或 v.-ing 形式。

e.g. I practice English every morning. 我每天早上练习英语。

He practices playing the piano every day. 他每天练习弹钢琴。

Learning a new language needs a lot of practice.
学习一门新语言需要多加练习。

作不可数名词，"练习"。

★**Maybe you fear that you won't be able to find anything good to eat when you travel.**

⑦ **fear**/fɪə/, /fɪr/ *v.*& *n.* 害怕；惧怕

e.g. She feared to tell him the truth.
她不敢把真相告诉他。

fear 作动词时，后常接名词、动词不定式、v.-ing 形式或 that 从句。

We were all in fear at that time. 那时我们都处于恐惧之中。

辨析：fear 与 afraid/scared

- fear *v.* 害怕
  - fear sth. 害怕某物
  - fear to do sth. 害怕做某事
- afraid/scared *adj.* 害怕的
  - be afraid/scared of sb./sth. 害怕某人/物
  - be afraid/scared to do sth. 害怕做某事

fear 还可作名词，意为"害怕；惧怕"，常用于短语 in fear of"害怕……，担心……"。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★**Whether you like Indian food, Western food or Japanese food, you'll find it all in Singapore!**

⑧ **whether**/'weðə(r)/*conj.* 不管……(还是)；或者……(或者)；是否

e.g. Whether you like it or not, you'll have to do it.

不管你喜不喜欢，你必须做这件事。

whether 常与 or not 连用，引导让步状语从句。

Nobody knows whether /if it will rain tomorrow.

没有人知道明天是否下雨。

whether 作连词，还可意为"是否"，常放在 ask, see, say, know 和 find out 等后面，相当于 if，引导宾语从句。

考题在线 4 The words "racecar" "kayak" and "level" are the same _____ they are read left to right or right to left. [河南]

A. since　　B. though

C. unless　　D. whether

点拨：本题用语境分析法。句意"'赛车''皮艇'和'水平'这些单词不管从左往右读还是从右往左读都是一样的。"since 自……以来，既然；though 虽然；unless 除非，如果不；whether 不管……(还是)，或者……(或者)，是否。

⑨ **Indian**/'ɪndiən/*adj.* 印度的　*n.* 印度人

e.g. The Indian food is quite different from ours.

印度食物与我们的食物完全不同。

Indian 是元音音素开头，故在前面加不定冠词时用 an。India 名词，意为"印度"。

拓展：英语中，一些表示国家或地区的名词，可加后缀 -(a)n 构成形容词，意为"……(人)的"。

e.g. America—American　　Australia—Australian

Europe—European　　Africa—African

★**One great thing about Singapore is that the temperature is almost the same all year round.**

⑩ **all year round** 全年　=all the year round

e.g. Some trees are green all (the) year round.

一些树常年翠绿。

He studied all day long. 他整天都在学习。

整天；全天

★**This is because the island is so close to the equator.**

⑪ **be close to** 离……近

e.g. The window is close to the door. 窗户离门很近。

小贴士：close 作形容词时，读音为 /kləʊs/；作动词时，读音为 /kləʊz/。

★**So you can choose to go whenever you like — spring, summer, autumn or winter.**

引导时间状语从句，引导让步状语从句时与 no matter when 同义。

⑫ **whenever**/wen'evə(r)/*conj.* 在任何……的时候；无论何时

e.g. You can come back whenever/no matter when you want.

你想什么时候回来都可以。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

考题在线 5 —Do you still remember our primary school teacher, Mrs. Liu?

—Yes, she always encouraged us and gave us support _____ we met difficulties. [深圳]

A. whenever B. whatever C. however

点拨：本题用语境分析法。句意“——你还记得我们的小学老师刘老师吗？——记得，无论何时我们遇到困难，她总是鼓励我们并支持我们。”whenever 无论何时，whatever 无论什么，however 无论如何。

考题在线答案 1. D 2. B 3. D 4. D 5. A

类似whenever的词还有：
whichever = no matter which 无论哪个
whatever = no matter what 无论什么
whoever = no matter who 无论谁
however = no matter how 无论如何
wherever = no matter where 无论在哪儿

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

（答案见286页）

一、根据句意及汉语提示完成句子

1. About three _____（四分之一）of the earth is covered with water.
2. It's not always _____（安全的）to shop online.
3. Some students _____（害怕）to speak in front of the class.
4. _____（无论何时）we had problems, they always gave us a hand.
5. It is very hot near the _____（赤道）.

二、用所给词的适当形式填空

6. We have seen some _____ (India) movies.
7. His stories were _____(most) about his travels in foreign countries.
8. I practice _____(play) the piano every evening.
9. You can _____ (simple) dance on the stage（舞台）.
10. He bought a _____ (Japan) car last year.

三、单项选择

11. —The picture of the Snowflake Boy has become very popular recently.
—Yeah, it receives _____ Internet hits a day. [凉山]
A. thousands of B. thousands
C. hundred D. hundreds

12. They'll find out the truth, _____ or not you tell it to them.
A. since B. though
C. unless D. whether

13. Come and see me _____ you are convenient.
A. whatever B. whenever
C. however

14. —Do you know Jack well?
—No, I have never met him. I _____ heard about him.
A. suddenly B. simply
C. really D. clearly

15. On _____ one hand, she wants to live in a new house. On _____ other hand, she has no enough money to buy one.
A. the; / B. a; the
C. the; the D. /; /

四、根据汉语意思完成英语句子，每空一词

16. 一方面我想去参加聚会，但另一方面我应该学习。
_____ _____ _____ _____, I want to go to the party, but _____ _____ _____ _____ I ought to be studying.

17. 中央电视台的《朗读者》节目吸引了成千上万各年龄段的人。
The CCTV program *The Readers* interests _____ _____ people of all ages. [孝感改编]

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

18. 不管我们将成功还是失败，我们都必须尽力而为。
_____ we will succeed _____ fail, we have to try our best.

19. 那些山很高，它们上面的冰长年不化。
The mountains are high and the ice on them doesn't melt _____ _____ _____.

20. 这座城市非常靠近大海。
This city is very _____ _____ the sea.

Period 6 Section B（3a–Self Check）

I. 课文原文、译文

3a Make a list of facts about your hometown or a place you have been to. Think about these topics. 把你的家乡或者你曾去过的一个地方的实际情况列成清单。思考这些话题。

Size and location/ləʊˈkeɪʃn/ 面积和位置：_____

Population 人口：_____

Weather 天气：_____

History 历史：_____

Places to visit 游览的地方：_____

Things to eat 吃的东西：_____

3b Write an article to advertise your hometown or a place you have been to. 写一篇文章来宣传你的家乡或者你曾去过的一个地方。

Have you ever tried/seen/been ...? 你曾经尝试过 / 见到过 / 去过……吗?

If you ... , you will/can ... 如果你……，你将 / 能……

You should ... One great thing about ... is ... 你应当…… 关于……特别好的一点是……

Self Check 自我检测

1 Think about the things below and write an answer for each one. 思考以下事情并写出每一个的答案。

1. One thing that you have collected before 以前你收藏过的一样东西：_____
（定语从句）

2. One invention that you have found to be very useful 你发现过的非常有用的一项发明：_____

3. One unbelievable or unusual thing that you've seen or heard recently 最近你见到或听到的令人难以置信或不同寻常的事情：_____

4. One way that you've used to encourage a friend in the past 在过去你用过的鼓励朋友的一种方法：
_____

5. One peaceful and quiet place that you've been to recently 最近你曾去过的一个平和宁静的地方：_____

2 Complete the conversation. 完成对话。

A: Hey, John. _____ are you doing this weekend? 嘿，约翰。这个周末你将做_____?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

B: Not much, Mark. I don't really have any plans yet. 没什么，马克。我至今还没有任何计划。

A: _____ you ever been to the space museum? 你曾去_____太空博物馆吗?

B: _____, I have. I _____ there last month._____，我去过。我上个月_____那里。

A: Oh, how _____ it? 哦，怎么样?

B: It was great. I _____ been there many times. 非常好。我_____去那里许多次了。

A: I see. I _____ never _____ there. 我知道了。我从没_____那里。

B: Well, let's go this weekend then. I don't _____ going again. I think there's something new there. I _____ not see it last time. 嗯，那咱们这周末去吧。我不_____再去一次。我想那里有新的东西。我上次没见到它。

A: Perfect! 好极了!

3 **Complete the chart.** 完成表格。

Have you ever been to a/an ... 你曾去过一个……	How many times? 多少次?	What did you see/do there? 你在那里见到 / 做了什么?
home for old people? 敬老院?		
farm? 农场?		
amusement park? 游乐场?		

Ⅱ. 写作一课一法 夺取中考写作 20分

写作小练笔

Singapore is a small island and it's a wonderful and safe place to take a holiday. Firstly, more than three quarters of the population are Chinese. And people can speak Putonghua and English in Singapore.

Then, there is a lot of food from China, like rice, noodles and dumplings. There is also Indian food, Western food and Japanese food. Next, at the Night Safari, we can watch those animals which only wake up at night in a more natural environment than in a normal zoo. Lastly, the temperature is almost the same all year round because the island is so close to the equator. This is a great thing, I think.

This is Singapore — a place you will never forget!

单元话题

请你写一篇英语短文谈论你心中的武汉，结合你的一次体验，写写你的感受。

审题指导（把握中心，得方向分）

写作时，开头用一两个句子引出话题，然后具体描述一下经历，结尾可用一两句话概述自己的感受。时态可以用一般现在时、一般过去时或现在完成时。

写作技法（学会方法，巧得高分）

“三步法”写曾经去过的地方

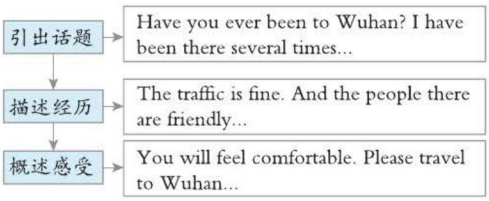
第一步：开篇点题，引出曾经去过的地方

第二步：具体活动或景区介绍

第三步：表达自己的感受或者看法

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

写作模板（学会套路，得基本分）



经典词句（妙用句式，得出彩分）

单词	beautiful, traffic, friendly, excellent, wonderful, interesting
短语	fall in love with, many kinds of, go shopping, feel comfortable, enjoy yourself
句子	① Have you ever been to ...? ② They're wonderful places to ... ③ ... you can see ... ④ Please travel to ... I would like to ...

范文赏析（书写工整，得印象分）

Have you ever been to Wuhan? I have been there several times. I think it's really a beautiful city. I fell in love with it when I first traveled there.It has many excellent places.

The traffic is fine. And the people there are friendly. There are some beautiful parks. In the zoo, you can see many kinds of animals. You can easily buy what you want, because there are supermarkets everywhere. They're wonderful places to go shopping. There are a lot of tall buildings up and down the streets. And the streets are very wide and tidy. Trees are everywhere. Buses and taxis can take you where you want to go.

The drivers are polite. You will feel comfortable. Please travel to Wuhan. I would like to be your tour guide.

名师点评：本文运用了"三步法"写曾经去过的地方，介绍了武汉。1. 开篇点题（第1段）；2. 具体介绍（第2段）；3. 表达感受（第3段）。

添彩点：1. 由现在完成时的结构 have been to 引入要介绍的地方，开门见山。

2. to go shopping 动词不定式作后置定语，修饰其前的 places，句式多样。

3. feel comfortable 感觉舒服。feel 感官动词，告诉读者相关的感受。



Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

（答案见286页）

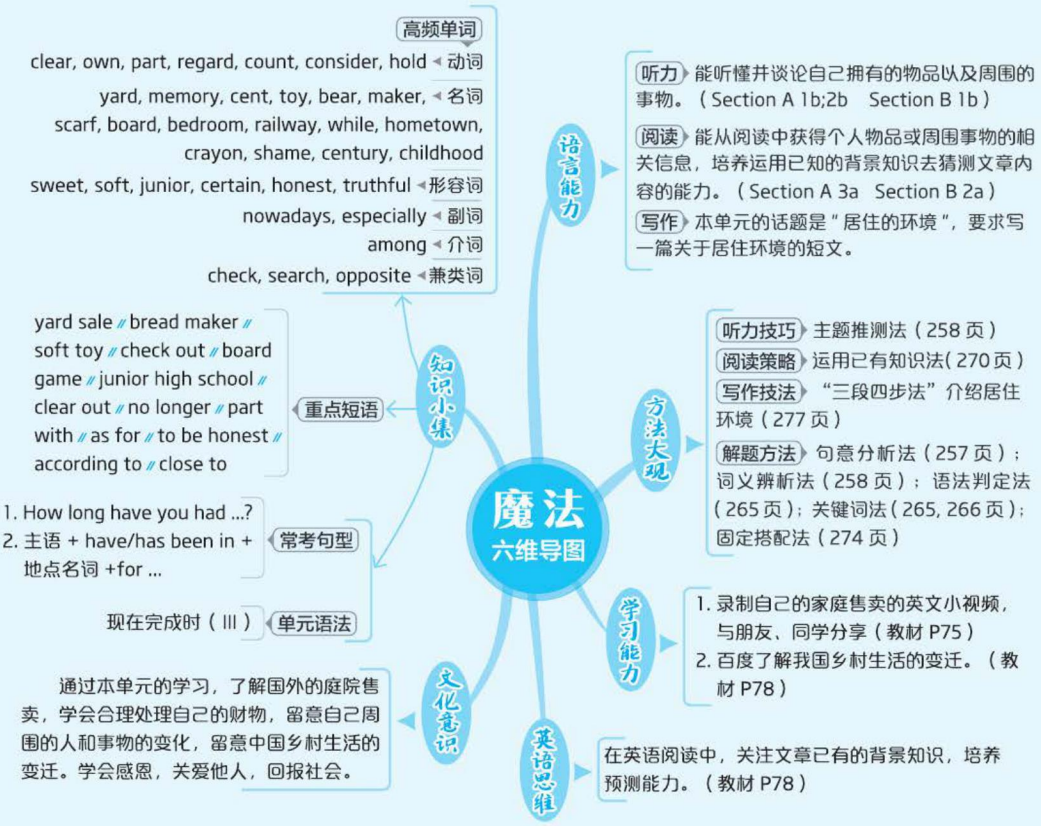
单元知识浓缩（根据汉语提示，用适当的单词或短语完成短文） 【导学号：2039901】

How _____[1]（难以置信的）it is! A 7-year-old Chinese boy has _____[2]（收集）_____[3]（数以千计的）movies. _____[4]（不管）you like _____[5]（德国的）movies, Indian movies or English movies, you can borrow them from him. "_____[6]（一方面）, it is my hobby; _____[7]（另一方面）, I think it's helpful for me to learn languages. For example, my English has _____[8]（进步）in such a _____[9]（快速的）and _____[10]（不寻常的）way," he says.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 10 I've had this bike for three years.

词汇表听写



记忆大师

Period 1 Section A(1a–2d)

必背单词

1. **yard** *n.* 院子→ yard sale 庭院拍卖会
2. **sweet** *adj.* 甜蜜的；甜的；含糖的
3. **memory** *n.* 记忆；回忆→复数：memories
4. **cent** *n.* 分；分币
5. **toy** *n.* 玩具→复数：toys
6. **bear** *n.* 熊
7. **maker** *n.* 生产者；制订者→ make *v.* 制造
8. **scarf** *n.* 围巾；披巾；头巾
9. **soft** *adj.* 软的；柔软的→反义词：hard 硬的
10. **check** *v.*& *n.* 检查；审查→ check out 察看；观察
11. **board** *n.* 板；木板

必背短语

12. bring back 使……回忆起来
13. bread maker 面包机
14. soft toy 软体玩具；布绒玩具
15. board game 棋类游戏

必背句子

16. —**How long have you had** that bike over there?
    你拥有那边那辆自行车多长时间了？

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

—I've had it **for three years**! I learned how to ride a bike on it.
我已经拥有它三年了！我在这辆自行车上学会了如何骑自行车。

17. Amy wants to keep her old things **because** they **bring back** sweet memories. 埃米想保留她的旧东西，因为它们能勾起甜蜜的回忆。

Period 2 Section A(3a–3c)

必背单词

1. junior *adj.* 地位（或职位、级别）低下的
2. clear *v.* 清理；清除→clear out 清理；丢掉
3. bedroom *n.* 卧室
4. own *v.* 拥有；有→owner *n.* 主人
5. railway *n.* 铁路；铁道
6. part *v.* 离开；分开→part with 放弃，交出（尤指不舍得的东西）
7. certain *adj.* 某种；某事；某人
8. honest *adj.* 诚实的；老实的→to be honest = honestly speaking = to be truthful 说实在的
9. while *n.* 一段时间；一会儿→for a while 一会儿
10. truthful *adj.* 诚实的；真实的

必背短语

11. junior high school 初级中学
12. no longer 不再；不复→not ... any longer 不再
13. as for 至于；关于

必背句子

14. As for me, I did not want to give up my football shirts, but, to **be honest**, I have not played for a while now.
对我而言，我不想放弃我的足球衫，但是，说实在的，现在我已经有一段时间没玩了。

Period 3 Section A(Grammar Focus–4c)

必背单词

1. hometown *n.* 家乡；故乡

必背句子&语法

2. —How long has his son owned the train and railway set? 他的儿子拥有那组火车和铁路套装玩具多久了?
—He's owned it **since** his fourth birthday.
自从他四岁生日起他就拥有它了。

3. —Have you ever played football?
你曾经踢过足球吗?
—Yes, I did when I was little, but I haven't played **for** a while now.
是的，我小时候踢过，但是现在我已经有一段时间不踢了。

4. Jim **has been in** Japan **for** three days.
吉姆已经在日本三天了。

Period 5 Section B(2a–2d)

必背单词

1. nowadays *adv.* 现今；现在；目前
2. search *v.&n.* 搜索；搜查→search for 搜寻；寻找
3. among *prep.* 在（其）中；……之一
4. crayon *n.* 彩色铅笔（或粉笔、蜡笔）
5. shame *n.* 羞耻；羞愧；惭愧
6. regard *v.* 将……认为；把……视为；看待→regard ... as ... 把……视为……
7. count *v.* 数数
8. century *n.* 百年；世纪→复数：centuries
9. opposite *adj.* 对面的；另一边的 *prep.* 与……相对；在……对面
10. especially *adv.* 尤其；特别；格外
11. childhood *n.* 童年；幼年
12. consider *v.* 注视；仔细考虑→consider doing sth. 考虑做某事
13. hold *v.* 拥有；抓住→过去式：held →过去分词：held

必背短语

14. according to 依据；按照
15. in one's opinion 依……看
16. close to 几乎；接近

必背句子

17. I used to return home at least once a year, but **I haven't been back for** almost three years now.
我过去常常至少一年回家一次，但是现在我几乎已经三年没有回去了。

18. According to Zhong Wei, however, some things will never change.
然而，在钟伟看来，有些东西永远不会改变。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 1 Section A（1a–2d）

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

Language Goal: Talk about possessions and things around you
语言目标：谈论你周围的私人物品和东西

How long have you had that bike over there? 你拥有那边那辆自行车多长时间了?
I've had it for three years! I learned how to ride a bike on it. 我拥有它三年了！我在这辆自行车上学会了如何骑自行车。

1a Look at the things at the yard/jɑ:(r)d/ sale. Do you have any of these things at home? How long have you had them? 看看庭院拍卖会的东西。你家有这些东西当中的一些吗？你拥有它们多长时间了?

1b Listen and check (√) the facts you hear. 听录音并在你所听到的实际情况前打钩（√）。

课文听力1b

_____ Jeff's family is having a yard sale①. 杰夫家正在举行一个庭院拍卖会。

_____ Amy thinks it's hard to sell her old things. 埃米认为卖掉她的旧东西很难。

_____ Jeff has had his bike for more than 10 years. 杰夫拥有他那辆自行车超过十年了。

_____ Amy wants to keep her old things because they bring back ② sweet/swi:t/ memories /'meməriz/③. 埃米想保留她的旧东西，因为它们能勾起甜蜜的回忆。

_____ You can also give old things away to people in need④. 你也可以把旧东西送给有需要的人。

1c Practice the conversation. Then make conversations about other things in the picture above.
练习对话。然后就上图中的其他物品编对话。

A: This is a really old book. 这的确是一本很旧的书。

B: Yes, I've had it for seven years. I've read it three times.
是的，我已经拥有它七年了。我已经把它读了三遍了。

A: Why are you selling it? 你为什么卖它?

B: Because I don't read it anymore. 因为我不再读它了。

A: How much is it? 它多少钱?

B: You can have it for 75 cents/sents/. 75 美分你就能拥有它。

2a Listen and check (√) the things Amy's family are giving away and (circle) the things they are keeping.
听录音并在埃米家要送走的东西前打钩（√），圈出他们要留下的东西。

课文听力2a

book 书　magazine 杂志　toy/tɔɪ/bear/beə/, /ber/ 玩具熊　toy lion 玩具狮子　toy tiger 玩具老虎
bread maker/'meɪkə(r)/ 面包机　sweater 毛衣　dress 连衣裙　hat 帽子　scarf/skɑ:(r)f/ 围巾

2b Listen again and fill in the blanks. 再听一遍录音并填空。

1. Amy has had her favorite _____ for three years. 埃米拥有她最喜爱的_____三年了。
2. Amy has had the toy _____ since she was a _____.
自从她是一个_____起，埃米就有那个玩具_____了。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

3. Amy's mom has had the old bread maker for more than _____ years.
埃米的妈妈拥有那台旧面包机超过_____年了。

4. Amy can give away the _____ and _____ because they do not fit her anymore.
埃米可以赠送_____和_____，因为它们不再适合她了。

2c Student A is Amy's mom. Student B is Amy. Make conversations.
学生 A 扮演埃米的妈妈。学生 B 扮演埃米。编对话。

A: Amy, can we give away these soft/sɒft/, /sɔːft/ toys? 埃米，我们能赠送这些布绒玩具吗？

B: Mom, I want to keep the bear. 妈妈，我想留下那个熊。

A: Why? It's so old. 为什么呢？它那么旧了。

B: Because I've had it since I was a baby. 因为自从我还是个婴儿的时候就拥有它了。

2d Role-play the conversation. 分角色表演这段对话。

课文朗读 2d

Linda: Welcome to the Sunshine Home for Children. I'm Linda.
欢迎来到儿童阳光之家。我是琳达。

Amy: Hi, I'm Amy. I have some things for the kids. I've had this magazine for a couple of months. The stories inside may be a bit old, but they're still interesting. 你好，我是埃米。我有一些东西想给孩子们。这本杂志我买了几个月了。杂志当中的故事可能有点老，但是它们还是很有趣的。

Linda: Great! Many children here love reading. 太好了！这里的许多孩子都喜爱阅读。

Amy: And check/tʃek/ S out these soft toys and board /bɔː(r)d/ games for younger kids. I've had them since I was a child. There's also a sweater and a dress. 看看这些给小一点的孩子们的布绒玩具和棋类游戏。当我还是个孩子的时候，我就拥有它们了。这里还有一件毛衣和一件连衣裙。

Linda: Perfect! We always need toys and clothes. 好极了！我们总是需要玩具和衣服的。

Amy: One last thing is a bread maker. My mom's had it for a long time but it still works.
最后一件东西是一台面包机。我的妈妈拥有它好久了，但是仍然能用。

Linda: Thanks so much! 太感谢了！

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注　　•考点应用

★Jeff's family is having a yard sale.

① **sale**/seɪl/*n.*(an act or the process of selling sth.) 出售；销售

e.g. Chickens are on sale in the market.
小鸡在市场上减价出售。

I'm sorry, it's not for sale.
抱歉，这个不卖。

Q 常用词组
- on sale "减价出售"
- for sale "待售，供出售（尤指从物主手里）"。
- yard sale "庭院拍卖会"



on sale


for sale



yard sale

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★Amy wants to keep her old things because they bring back sweet memories.

② **bring back** 使回忆起；使想起

e.g. Your article brings back happy memories to me.
你的文章勾起了我快乐的回忆。

We couldn't bring him back to life.
我们不能让他复活。

小贴士：bring back 为“动词+副词”型短语，代词作其宾语时，要放在 bring 与 back 之间。

bring sb. back to life 意为“使某人复活”。

考题在线 1 The smell of the flower _____ her good memories of running in the field of her hometown.

A. comes back　　B. gets back

C. brings back　　D. gives back

点拨：本题用句意分析法。come back 回来；get back 寻回；bring back 使回忆起；give back 归还。由句意“花香勾起了她在家乡田野上奔跑的美好回忆。”可知答案。

③ **memory**/'meməri/*n.* 记忆；回忆

e.g. These photos bring back lots of good memories.
这些照片唤起了许多美好的回忆。

记忆，回忆，memory 的复数形式。

I have a bad memory for names. 我不善于记名字。

People have short memories. 人是健忘的。→ 记忆力；记性

It's unbelievable that the boy can memorize so many numbers in such a short time.

动词形式，记忆；记住

那个男孩能在这么短的时间内记住那么多数字，真是令人难以置信。

★You can also give old things away to people in need.

④ **in need** 需要；在困难中

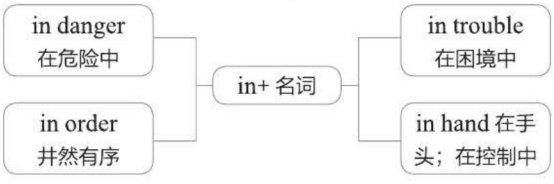
介词短语，可作后置定语或表语，其中 need 为不可数名词。

e.g. A friend in need is a friend indeed. 患难见真情（谚）。

I'll come when you are in need of help. 在你需要帮助的时候我会来的。

be in need of 意为“需要……”。

拓展：



★And check out these soft toys and board games for younger kids.

⑤ **check**/tʃek/*v.*& *n.* 检查；审查

e.g. Please check your answers again before you hand in the paper.
上交试卷前请再检查一遍你的答案。

Hey, check out that car! 嘿，看看那辆汽车！

察看；观察

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

I made a phone call to check out his address. 我打了个电话核实他的地址。

查明；核实

Mrs. Hyde checked out this morning. 海德夫人今天上午结账走了。

付账后离开

You'd better go to the hotel now to check in to get a good room.

你最好现在就去宾馆登记以便住个好房间。 登记；报到

All that you do, do with your might; things done by halves are never done right. 凡事要做，尽力去做；半途而废永远不行。

考题在线 2 You and your family are planning a picnic for tomorrow. But you want to _____ the weather forecast (预报) first to see whether there will be rain or not. [南京]

方法真题练

A. produce　　B. spread

C. check　　D. organize

点拨：本题用词义辨析法。句意“你和你的家人正在计划明天去野餐。但是你想先查一下天气预报看看是否会下雨。”produce 生产；spread 传播；check 观察，察看；organize 组织。

考题在线答案 1.C　2.C

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

(答案见286页)

听力技巧

主题推测法（听前了解活动或者表格信息，抓住关键词，推测出对话主题，做到有的放矢；听前阅读问题，明确答题内容，听时，做好笔记，把握重点内容，听后，综合判断，写出正确答案。）

听力过程

课文听力 1b

一、听 1b，选择正确答案

1. From the conversation, why does Jeff have some things in the yard sale?

A. He sells them for money.

B. He doesn't use them anymore.

C. They are good things for kids.

2. From the conversation, how long has Jeff had his bike?

A. For one year.　　B. For three years.

C. For ten years.

3. How much is the book if Amy buys it?

A. 15 cents.　　B. 50 cents.

C. 75 cents.

课文听力 2a

二、听 2a，选择正确答案

4. Which toy has special meaning to Amy?

A. The bear.　　B. The lion.

C. The tiger.

5. What is Amy's mom's suggestion about these things?

A. To take them to the children's home.

B. To throw them away.

C. To sell them to someone who needs them.

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见286页)

一、根据句意及汉语提示完成单词

1. I like this sofa very much because it is very _____(柔软的).

2. I'm very hungry. I'd like something _____(甜的).

3. My sister has many _____(玩具), but she still wants to buy one.

4. My father has a good _____(记忆力). He can

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

always remember the words as long as he sees them.

5. The house is wonderful if it has a big _____ (院子).

二、选择适当的短语完成句子，注意形式的变化

give away, bring back, check out, on sale, in need

6. The engineer _____ all these figures and found them correct.

7. Please _____ some books for me. I need to write a report.

8. The old man _____ about 50,000 *yuan* to charities since 2001.

9. Shirts are _____ in the market.

10. How do you say no to someone _____?

Period 2 Section A（3a–3c）



I. 课文原文、译文

3a Read the article written by a father for a newspaper. What is his family going to sell at the yard sale? 阅读一位父亲发表在报纸上的一篇文章。他的家人在庭院拍卖会上将会出售什么？



My children are growing up fast. My daughter is 16 and my boy is already in junior/'dʒu:niə(r)/ high school. As they get bigger, our house seems to get smaller. So we want to sell some of our things in a yard sale and give the money to a children's home.

我的孩子们正在快速地成长。我女儿16岁，我儿子已经上初中了。随着他们不断长大，我们的房子似乎变得越来越小了，所以我们想在家庭拍卖会上把我们的一些东西卖掉，然后把这些钱捐给一个儿童之家。

We have already cleared/klɪəd/, /klɪrd/ out① a lot of things from our bedrooms/'bedru:mz/. We have decided to each sell five things that we no longer② use. My son was quite sad at first. Although he has not played with his old toys for a long time, he still wanted to keep them. For example, he has owned /əʊnd/③ a train and railway/'reɪlweɪ/ set since his fourth birthday, and he played with it almost every week until he was about seven. And he did not want to lose his toy monkey, either. He slept next to the monkey every night when he was a child. My daughter was more understanding, although she also felt sad to part/pɑ:(r)t/④ with certain/'sɜ:(r)tn/⑤ toys.

我们已经从卧室里清理出来了许多东西。我们决定每人出售五件不再使用的物品。起初我的儿子十分悲伤。尽管他已经很久不玩他的旧玩具了，但他仍想留下它们。比如说自从他四岁生日起他就一直拥有的一组火车和铁路套装玩具，他几乎每周都玩它，直到他大约七岁的时候。他也不想失去他的玩具猴子。当他是个小孩的时候，他每天晚上都挨着这个猴子睡觉。尽管我女儿对要交出某些玩具也感到悲伤，但是她更通情达理。

As for⑥ me, I did not want to give up my football shirts, but, to be honest/'ɒnɪst/, /'ɑ:nɪst/⑦, I have not played for a while/waɪl/⑧ now. I am getting older, too!

对我而言，我不想放弃我的足球衫，但是，说实在的，现在我已经有一段时间没玩了。我也变得越来越老了！

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

3b Read the article again and answer the questions. 再次阅读文章并回答问题。

1. Why did they decide to have a yard sale? 为什么他们决定要进行一个庭院拍卖会?
2. What do they want to do with the money from the sale? 他们想用在庭院拍卖会上筹得的钱做什么?
3. Why does the son want to keep his train and railway set? 为什么儿子想留下他的那组火车和铁路套装玩具?
4. How can the old toys be useful again? 那些旧的玩具怎么才能重新变得有用起来?
5. Have you ever thought about having a yard sale to sell your things? What would you do with the money you raise? 你是否曾经想过进行一个庭院拍卖会来出售自己的物品? 你会怎样处理筹得的钱呢?

3c Find the words or phrases in the article which can be replaced with the ones below and write them next to the words. 找出文章当中可以被以下这些词或者词组替换的词或词组，将它们写在下列词或词组的旁边。

lose 失去 — part with 放弃
truthful/'tru:θfl/ 诚实的 — _____
some time 一段时间 — _____
quickly 快速地 — _____
kids 孩子们 — _____
many 许多 — _____
even though 即使 — _____
older 更老的 — _____

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读 60分

(答案见287页)

阅读过程

一、速读 3a，选择正确答案

1. What is the main idea of this passage? (主旨大意题)

A. The family decided to have a yard sale and help some children.
B. The family wanted to buy a big house.
C. The hobbies of this family.
D. The family often gives up something useful.

二、细读 3a，选择正确答案

2. What does the phrase "part with" in Paragraph 2 mean in Chinese? (词义猜测题)

A. 放弃　B. 带走　C. 打扫　D. 整理

3. Which is NOT true according to the passage? (细节推理题)

A. The family wants to have a yard sale and give money to the charity.
B. There are four people in the writer's family.
C. The son doesn't want to keep his toy train and railway set anymore.
D. The writer used to play football.

4. How did the writer's daughter feel when she gave up her things? (细节查找题)

A. Happy.　B. Excited.
C. Angry.　D. Sad.

Ⅲ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注　•考点应用

★**We have already cleared out a lot of things from our bedrooms.**

① **clear out** 清理；丢掉　clear 此处作动词，意为"清理；清除"。

e.g. The shelf in your room is old and useless. Clear it out.
你房间里的架子旧了，而且没什么用。把它丢掉吧。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Please help me clear out the rubbish.
请帮我清理一下垃圾。

clear out 为“动词+副词”型短语，人称代词作其宾语时，要放在 clear 和 out 中间。

★We have decided to each sell five things that we no longer use.

② **no longer** 不再；不复 = not ... any longer 不再

e.g. He no longer lives here.= He doesn't live here any longer.
他不再住在这里了。

We are no longer students.= We are not students any longer.
我们不再是学生了。

★For example, he has owned a train and railway set since his fourth birthday, and he played with it almost every week until he was about seven.

③ **own**/əʊn/*v.* 拥有；有 owner *n.* 主人

辨析： own，have 与 there be

own	指合法地拥有某物，强调具有法律上的所有权，其主语往往是人。
have	常用词，表示所属关系，是“所有”之“有”。
there be	表示某处有（某人或某物），表示客观存在之“有”。

own { 形容词性物主代词 +own
on one's own 单独，独自
of one's own 属于某人自己的

e.g. They own a house in the country. 他们在乡下有一幢房子。

I have a pencil. 我有一支铅笔。

A desk has four legs. 一张桌子有四条腿。

There is a hospital in our village. 我们村里有个医院。

Children need their own toys.= Children need toys of their own.
儿童需要有他们自己的玩具。

She lives on her own. 她独自一个人生活。

一语辨异：



Lucy owns the book. The book's owner is Lucy.
露西拥有这本书。这本书的主人是露西。

★My daughter was more understanding, although she also felt sad to part with certain toys.

既可作及物动词，也可作不及物动词，常构成短语 part with“放弃，交出（尤指不舍得的东西）”。

④ **part** /pɑ:(r)t/*v.* 离开；分开

e.g. I hate being parted from my friends. 我讨厌和朋友们分开。

Please read this before parting with your money. 交钱之前请先读一下这个。

Part of the building is painted green.
这栋楼的一部分被漆成了绿色。

作名词，表示“部分；参与”等。常用短语：part of ...“……的一部分”，take part in“参与；参加”。

Did you take part in the sports meet yesterday? 你昨天参加运动会了吗？

⑤ **certain**/'sɜ:(r)tn/*adj.* 某种；某事；某人 表“某种；某事；某人”时作定语。

e.g. A certain Mr. Brown phoned while you were out.
你出去的时候，有一位叫布朗的先生来过电话。

“某位，一位叫……的”

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

certain 表“肯定的；无疑的”时作表语，常用于以下结构：
be certain to do
be certain of
be certain + that 从句

There are certain things I just can't discuss with my mother.
有些事情就是没法和我母亲讨论。
He is certain to succeed. 他一定会成功。
He is certain of success. 他有把握成功。
I am certain that he will succeed. 我肯定他会成功。
—Can I open the door? 我可以把门打开吗?
—Certainly. 当然可以。副词形式，certainly=sure=of course 表示“当然”。

★**As for me, I did not want to give up my football shirts, but, to be honest, I have not played for a while now.**

⑥ **as for 至于；关于** 用来开始谈论某事或某人，表示话题转变。
e.g. As for the man, I know nothing about him. 至于那个人，我对他一无所知。
I like playing the guitar, but as for the piano, I'm not very interested in it.
我喜欢弹吉他，但至于钢琴，我并不很感兴趣。

⑦ **honest**/'ɒnɪst/, /'ɑːnɪst/ *adj.* **诚实的；老实的**
e.g. an honest person/boy/face
一个诚实的人 / 男孩 / 一张真诚的面孔
honest以元音音素开头，前有不定冠词时用an。

to be honest = honestly speaking 说实在的，在句中作插入语，用逗号与其他成分隔开，相当于 to tell the truth. to be truthful。

To be honest, I don't know what to do next.= Honestly speaking, I don't know what to do next. 说实在的，我不知道接下来该做什么。
To be honest(=To tell the truth), I don't like your new dress at all.
说实在的，我一点儿也不喜欢你的新连衣裙。

⑧ **while**/waɪl/*n.* **一段时间；一会儿** 一般用其单数形式，其前通常加不定冠词a。
e.g. I haven't seen him for quite a while.
我有好一阵子没有见到他了。
They chatted for a while.
他们聊了一会儿。
敲黑板 while 还可作连词，详见 Unit 3, P76。
I will be back in a while. 我不久就回来。

常用搭配
quite a while 有一阵子
for a while 暂时；一会儿
in a while 不久；马上

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见287页)

一、根据汉语提示完成句子

1. How long have you _____(拥有；有)this lovely pet?
2. A _____(某人) man will visit you tomorrow.
3. My brother is a _____(职位低下的) officer.
4. Leave the railway. The train is coming in a short _____(一会儿).
5. You and I must be _____(诚实的) with each other.

二、单项选择

6. _____ movies, the boy likes the action movies best.
A. In fact B. Even though
C. As for D. At first

7. —Do you watch *Peppa Pig* on TV? It's so funny!
—Well, no, to be _____, I think it's quite silly. [无锡]
A. curious B. brave C. gentle D. honest

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

8. Oh! The room is really in a mess. Could you _____ the rubbish?

A. come out　　B. clear out

C. give out　　D. go out

9. Mr. Black walked around and offered help _____ we were doing an experiment.

[上海]

A. while　　B. although

C. until　　D. unless

10. My sister loves her toys very much, so she feels sad when she has to _____ them.

A. play with　　B. agree with

C. part with　　D. share with

三、根据汉语意思完成句子

11. 说实在的，我不喜欢这件毛衣。

_____ _____ _____, I don't like the sweater.

12. 现在她再也不害怕了。

Now she _____ afraid _____ _____.

13. 我需要清理一下我的壁橱了。

I need to _____ _____ my closet.

14. 他喜欢踢足球。至于篮球，他一点儿也不喜欢。

He likes playing football. _____ _____ basketball, he doesn't like it at all.

15. 我不想放弃我的旧自行车。

I don't want to _____ _____ my old bike.

Period 3 Section A（Grammar Focus-4c）

I. 课文原文、译文

Grammar Focus 语法聚焦

How long have you had that bike over there? 你拥有那边那辆自行车多久了？	I've had it for three years. 我已经拥有它三年了。
How long has his son owned the train and railway set? 他的儿子拥有那组火车和铁路套装玩具多久了？	He's owned it since his fourth birthday. 自从四岁生日起他就拥有它了。
Have you ever played football? 你曾经踢过足球吗？	Yes, I did when I was little, but I haven't played for a while now. 是的，我小的时候踢过，但是现在我已经有一段时间不踢了。

4a **Rewrite the sentences using *for* or *since*.** 用“持续了”或者“自从”重写这些句子。

1. Jim is in Japan. He arrived there three days ago. 吉姆在日本。他三天之前到那儿的。

   Jim has been in Japan for three days. 吉姆已经在日本三天了。

2. They are very hungry. Their last meal was ten hours ago.

   他们非常饥饿。他们的上顿饭是在十个小时前吃的。

3. I have a camera. I bought it in 2009. 我有一个照相机。我在 2009 年买的它。

4. I know Anna. I first met her three years ago. 我认识安娜。三年前我第一次见到她。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

5. Linda is ill. She became ill on Monday. 琳达生病了。她是周一生的病。

4b Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets. 用括号中动词的正确形式填空。

1. I _____(never be) to the water park before. I want to _____(go) next month before the weather gets too cold.
   我以前_____(从未去过)水上公园。我想下个月在天气变得很冷之前_____(去)。
2. They _____(never own) any pets, but they _____(always want) to have a dog.
   他们_____(从来没有拥有)任何宠物，但他们_____(一直想要)有一只狗。
3. We _____(have) a piano since last November. We _____(buy) it from the Li family when they moved to the US last year. 自从去年十一月我们就_____(拥有)一架钢琴。我们是从李家_____(买)的，当他们去年搬到美国的时候。
4. Cathy and Amy _____(not be) back to their hometown/ˈhəʊmtaʊn/ for two years. They _____(miss) their hometown a lot and hope to visit the place next year. 凯茜和埃米两年_____(没)回过家乡了。她们十分_____(想念)她们的家乡，并且希望明年能回去看看。
5. This museum _____(be) here for over 20 years. It _____(be) one of the oldest buildings in this small town.
   这个博物馆_____(在)这里二十多年了。它_____(是)这个小镇最古老的建筑之一。

4c Fill in the questions and ask two students. Then complete the chart.
补全问题并询问两名学生。然后完成表格。

1. Do you have a(n)_____? How long have you had it? 你有一个_____吗？你已经买它多久了？
2. Do you own a(n)_____? How long have you owned it? 你有一个_____吗？你已经拥有它多久了？

	Things 东西	How long 多久
Tony 托尼	favorite book 最喜欢的书	for two years 两年了
	basketball 篮球	since he was 10 years old 自从他十岁起
Student 1 学生 1		
Student 2 学生 2		

Ⅱ. 单元语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

现在完成时“焦点访谈”(三)

考点1 for 和 since 的用法



现在完成时的“未完成”用法表示动作或状态从过去某时开始，一直延续至今，还可能继续下去。since 和 for 是现在完成时当中常见的标志词。since 意为“自从……”，for 意为“持续了……”。since 用来说明动作的开始时间，for 用来说明动作延续的时间长度。

1. since + 过去的时间点

e.g. I have been very sad since the last time.
从上次开始，我一直很伤心。

2. for + 时间段

e.g. Tina has been away from home for five years. 蒂娜离开家已经5年了。

考题在线1 Betty _____ hard since last term.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

That's why her exam results are so good!

[广东]

A. has worked　　B. will work

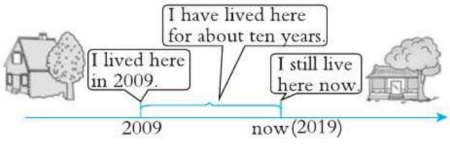
C. worked　　D. was working

点拨: 用关键词法解题。根据关键词 since 可知此句用现在完成时。

小贴士: 对 since 和 for 引导的时间状语进行提问，都可以用 how long 来提问。

— How long have you lived here?
你在这里住了多久了？

— I have lived here for about ten years.
我在这里住了大约10年了。



考点2 延续性动词与短暂性动词

延续性动词表示能够延续的动作。短暂性动词表示不能延续的动作，这种动作发生后立即结束。

1. 【难点】【易错】若现在完成时的句子中含表示时间段的时间状语（如含 since/for 引导的时间状语），则谓语只能使用延续性动词。

2. 短暂性动词可以转化为延续性动词

① 直接换成延续性动词

buy 买→have 有

borrow 借→keep 保留

put on 穿上→wear 穿着

come/go/become 来/去/变成→be 在/是

② 转换成 be +名词

join the army 参军→be a soldier 当兵

join the Party 入党→be a Party member 成为一名党员

go to school 去上学→be a student 成为一名学生

③ 转换成 be +形容词/副词

die 死亡→be dead 死了

finish 结束→be over 结束

begin 开始→be on 在上映/已开始

leave 离开→be away 远离的

fall asleep 入睡→be asleep 睡着的

close 关闭→be closed 关着的

④ 转换成 be +介词短语

go to school 去上学→be in school 在上学

join the army 参军→be in the army 在军队中

考题在线2 —Your new watch is so nice! When did you buy it?　　[黄冈]

—In April. I _____ it for two months.

A. have had　　B. had

C. have bought　　D. bought

点拨: 句意“——你的新手表真好看！你什么时候买的它？——四月份。我已经买了两个月了。”根据“for two months”可知要用现在完成时，先排除 B 和 D；buy 为短暂性动词，不能与时间段连用，此处应用延续性动词 have。

考题在线3 —I'm sorry for being late.

—Never mind. The meeting _____ for only 5 minutes. This way, please.　　[乐山]

A. has begun　　B. has ended

C. has been on

点拨: 本题用语法判定法。“会议已经开始了仅仅5分钟”。表示“开始”的 begin 是短暂性动词，与一段时间连用时，要用延续性动词，故用 be on 替换。

考点3 现在完成时和一般过去时的用法区别

这两种时态都说明过去已经发生的事，但现在完成时表示的动作与现在有关系或对现在有影响或表示在现在之前的一段时间里发生的事；一般过去时只表示过去的事，与现在没有联系，如果句子中有明确的表过去的时间状语，只能用一般过去时。

e.g. Tom rang up three times this morning.
汤姆今天上午打了三次电话。(现在是下午或晚上)

Tom has rung up three times this morning.
汤姆今天上午打了三次电话了。(现在还是上午)

I lived in London for two years.
我在伦敦住过两年。(现在不在伦敦)

I have lived in London for two years.
我在伦敦住了两年了。(现在还在伦敦)

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Linda arrived here an hour ago.
琳达一个小时前到的这儿。(仅说明动作发生了)
Linda has arrived here.
琳达已经到这儿了。(说明动作对现在有影响)

考题在线 4 —Have you ever been to South Tower Park?
—Yes. I _____ there a few months ago. [郴州]

A. went B. have been
C. have gone

点拨: 本题用关键词法。考查动词的时态。句意"——你去过南塔公园吗? ——去过。我几个月前去过。" went 用于是一般过去时, have been 和 have gone 是现在完成时态。由句中时间状语 a few months ago 可知, 需用一般过去时。

考题在线答案 1. A 2. A 3. C 4. A

Ⅲ. 单元语法专练 夺取中考语法满分

(答案见287页)

单项选择

1. —I _____ my card. I want to report it.
—You can call the bank to report the loss. It would be faster. [盐城]
A. lose B. was losing
C. will lose D. have lost

2. —Over 100 countries and organizations _____ warm support to the Belt and Road initiative (倡议) since 2013.
—Wonderful! Our circle of friends is growing bigger! [襄阳]
A. give B. have given
C. gave D. will give

3. — It's time to work now.
—OK. I'll wake Carl up. He _____ for an hour. [青岛] 【导学号: 2039901】
A. has fallen asleep B. has been asleep
C. fell asleep D. falls asleep

4. —Hurry up, the movie *Wolf Warrior II* _____ for 10 minutes.
—OK, I'm coming right now. [龙东]
A. began B. has begun
C. has been on

5. I _____ this magazine for three months. [绥化]
A. have bought B. have had
C. have borrowed

Period 4 Section B (1a–1d)

Ⅰ. 课文原文、译文

1a Check (√) the places or things you can find in your town or city.
在你所在的城镇或城市里你能找到的地点或事物前打钩(√)。

_____a museum 一座博物馆
_____a bridge 一座桥
_____a park 一个公园
_____a library 一个图书馆
_____a primary school 一所小学
_____a zoo 一个动物园
_____a hill 一座小山
_____a river 一条河

1b Listen and answer the questions. 听录音并回答问题。
1. Does Martin like Jenny's hometown? 马丁喜欢珍妮的家乡吗?

课文听力 1b

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

2. Does Jenny still live in her hometown? 珍妮仍然住在她的家乡吗?

3. What is behind the science museum? What do people do there on weekends?
科学博物馆的后面是什么? 周末人们在那里做什么?

1c Listen again and fill in the chart about the places in Jenny's hometown.
再听一遍录音并填写关于珍妮家乡的地方的表格。

Place 地方	New or old? 新或旧?	How long has it been there? 它在那儿多久了?
town library 镇图书馆		
science museum 科学博物馆		
restaurant down the street 街边的饭店		

1d Talk about your town/city with a partner. 跟你的搭档谈论你的城镇 / 城市。

A: My city is lovely. 我的城市很可爱。

B: What are some of the special places there? 那儿有些什么有特色的地方?

A: Well, there's a concert hall there. It's been around for at least 20 years.
嗯, 那儿有一个音乐厅。它在那儿至少有 20 年了。

Ⅱ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

(答案见287 页)

听力过程

课文听力 1b

听 1b, 选择正确答案

1. Does Jenny love her hometown?
A. Yes, very much. B. Not at all.
C. Not mentioned.

2. From the conversation, which is the new building in Jenny's hometown?
A. The town library.
B. The science museum.
C. The restaurant down the street.

3. How long has the building which now is the town library been there?
A. For hundreds of years.
B. Since last August.
C. For as long as Jenny can remember.

4. Jenny and Martin go to the restaurant down the street for_____.
A. breakfast B. lunch
C. dinner

Period 5 Section B (2a–2d)

课时导入

Ⅰ. 课文原文、译文及导读

原文译文 · 导读 导读批注

Pre-reading (读前)

Talk about your hometown feelings. 谈论你的家乡情感。

1. What are some of the special places/things in your hometown?
在你的家乡有些什么特殊的地方或物品?

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

2. What's your best memory? 你最好的回忆是什么?

While-reading(读中)

2a Answer the questions before you read.Then read the passage to find out if your answers are the same as in the passage.

课文朗读2a

在阅读前回答问题。然后读文章，看看你的回答跟文章里的是否一致。

1. Why do millions of Chinese leave the countryside every year?
为什么每年都有数以百万计的中国人离开农村?
2. How often do you think these people visit their hometowns?
你认为这些人多久会回他们的家乡看看?
3. What new buildings does the government usually build in towns and villages? 政府在城镇和乡村中，通常建造什么新的建筑物?

Using Previous Knowledge 使用以前的知识

We can often guess what a text is about by using what we already know. Answering questions before we read can also help us do this. 我们经常可以通过使用我们已经知道的(知识)来猜测一篇文章是关于什么的。在阅读前回答问题也能帮助我们做到这一点。

批词语：运用转折词引出本文主题。

批句子：本段主题句。

批句子：运用介词短语前置的倒装句，承上启下，引出事例，来例证上一句(一般为段落中心句)所表达的内容。

Hometown Feelings 家乡情感

Some people still live in their hometown. However, others may only see it once or twice a year. Nowadays/'naʊədeɪz/①, millions of Chinese leave the countryside to search/sɜ:(r)tʃ/② for work in the cities. Among/ə'mʌŋ/④ these is Zhong Wei, a 46-year-old husband and father⑤. ③ He has lived in Wenzhou for the last 13 years. With a hard job in a crayon/'kreɪən/ factory, he doesn't find much time to visit his hometown. "I used to return home at least once a year, but I haven't been back for almost three years now. It's a shame /ʃeɪm/⑥, but I just don't have the time," he says.

一些人仍然住在他们的家乡。但是，另外一些人可能一年只回家乡一次或两次。现今，数以百万计的中国人离开农村去城市寻找工作。钟伟是这些人中的一个，他是一位46岁的丈夫和父亲。在过去的13年里他居住在温州。他在一个蜡笔工厂里做着一份艰难的工作，他找不到更多的时间回他的家乡看看。"我过去常常至少一年回家一次，但是现在我几乎已经三年没有回去了。实在是遗憾，但我就是没有时间。"他说。

Many people like Zhong Wei regard/rɪ'gɑ:(r)d/⑦ with great interest how their hometowns have changed. Perhaps large hospitals and new roads have appeared. In many places, the government has also built new schools and sent teachers from the cities to help.

许多像钟伟一样的人都带着极浓厚的兴趣关注他们的家乡发生了怎样的变化。也许大型医院和新的马路已经出现了。在许多地方，政府还修建了新的学校，并从城市

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

派了教师去支教。

"I noticed that's true of my hometown, " adds Zhong Wei. "Children have learned to read and count/kaʊnt/ ⑧ at my old primary school since the mid-20th century/'sentʃəri/ ⑨. But now the buildings are really old. I hear they're going to build a new school there." Zhong Wei thinks such developments are good, and he also knows that his hometown cannot always stay the same.

批 写作手法：运用直接引语，形象生动，直观亲切。

"我注意到在我家乡也是如此。"钟伟补充说，"自从二十世纪中期开始，孩子们就在我所待过的那所旧的小学当中学习阅读和数数。但是现在，那些建筑物已经非常陈旧了。我听说他们将在那儿建一所新的学校。"钟伟认为这样的发展很好，他也知道他的家乡不会总是一成不变的。

According/ə'kɔ:(r)dɪŋ/ to ⑩ Zhong Wei, however, some things will never change. "In my hometown, there was a big old tree opposite/'ɒpəzɪt/, /'ɑ:pəzət/ ⑪ the school. It is still there and has become quite a symbol of the place. Most of the children in my time liked to play together under that big tree, especially/ɪ'speʃəli/ ⑫ during the summer holidays. It was such a happy childhood/'tʃaɪldhʊd/. Our hometown has left many soft and sweet memories in our hearts."

批 句子：本段主题句。

然而，在钟伟看来，有些东西永远不会改变。"在我的家乡，学校对面有一棵古老的大树。它仍然在那儿，并且已经成了那个地方的标志了。在我那个年代，大多数孩子喜欢在那棵大树下一起玩耍，尤其在暑假期间。那是一个如此欢乐的童年。我们的家乡在我们心中留下了许多温馨而甜蜜的回忆。"

Post-reading（读后）

写作小练笔 ☞（答案见276页）

2b Find expressions in the passage that have the same meanings as these words and phrases. 从文章中找到和以下这些词或词组意思相同的表达。

1. look for 寻找_____
2. consider/kən'sɪdə(r)/ ⑬考虑_____
3. across from 在对面_____
4. in one's opinion 依……看_____
5. go back 返回_____
6. changes 改变_____
7. area 区域_____

2c Complete the summary with words from the passage. You may need to change the forms of the words. 用文章中的词完成以下总结。你可能需要变换词的形式。

Many Chinese people these days leave their _____ to work in the _____. They usually _____ to their hometowns one or two times a _____. Zhong Wei hasn't been back in close to three years. He has been working in a _____ factory in Wenzhou for the past 13 years.

近来许多中国人离开他们的_____来_____工作。他们通常_____一两次_____他们的家乡。钟伟将近三年没回过家。在过去的13年里他一直在温州的一家_____工厂工作。

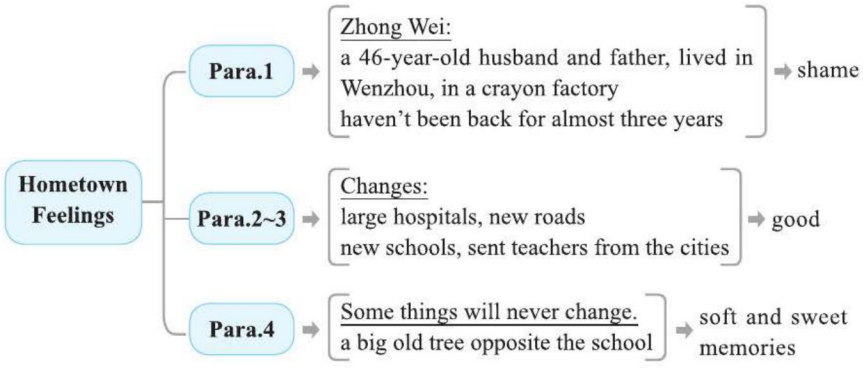
关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

People like him are _____ in how their hometowns are changing. New buildings are often built by the _____. Zhong Wei thinks these changes are _____ because things need to change in order to become better. But he also thinks some things _____ change, and his hometown is still the place that holds/həʊldz/ all his childhood _____.

像他一样的人们_____他们的家乡正在发生怎样的变化。新的建筑经常被_____建造。钟伟认为这些变化是_____，因为事物为了变得更好需要改变。但是他也认为一些东西_____改变，他的故乡还是承载他整个童年_____的地方。

2d Think of changes that are happening in your town or city today. Which changes are generally good? Which changes could be seen as bad? 想一想在你的城镇或城市如今正在发生的变化。哪些变化总体来说是好的？哪些变化可以被视为坏的？

课文背诵指南



Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读 60分

(答案见287页)

阅读策略

运用已有知识法（在阅读文章时，我们经常可以运用已有知识来猜测文章的主题是什么，对加深文章理解和提高阅读速度会有很大的帮助。）

阅读过程

拓展阅读

阅读 2a，选择正确答案

1. Why do many people only see their hometown once or twice a year?

（细节理解题）

A. Because they don't like their hometown.

B. Because they have to work in the cities.

C. Because their hometown has changed a lot.

D. Because their hometown is too poor.

2. How long hasn't Zhong Wei been back to his hometown?

（细节查找题）

A. For almost 1 year.

B. For almost 2 years.

C. For almost 3 years.

D. For almost 13 years.

3. What has become the typical symbol of Zhong Wei's village?

（细节查找题）

A. A big old tree. B. An old house.

C. A clock. D. The villagers.

4. ⊙ What does the word"opposite"in the last paragraph mean in Chinese?

（词义猜测题）

A. 紧靠 B. 相对

C. 反对 D. 挨着

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

5. Which is NOT true according to the passage?

（细节查找题）

A. Zhong Wei has lived in Wenzhou for about 13 years.

B. Many people like Zhong Wei are interested in their hometown's changes.

C. Hundreds of Chinese leave the countryside to work in the cities.

D. Many soft and sweet memories have been left in their hearts.

Ⅲ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础20分

•考点应用 •考点批注

★Nowadays, millions of Chinese leave the countryside to search for work in the cities.

相当于these days, at present，通常与一般现在时连用，且多用于句首或句末作状语。

① **nowadays**/'naʊədeɪz/*adv.* 现今；现在；目前

e.g. We are not poor any longer nowadays.

如今我们不再贫穷了。

如：现今我们觉得太空旅行没什么了不起。

正：Nowadays we think nothing of space travel.

误：In nowadays we think nothing of space travel.

小贴士：nowadays含有与过去相比较的意味，由于是作副词，而不是名词，所以不要在其前加in, at等介词。

② **search**/sɜ:(r)tʃ/*v.*& *n.* 搜索；搜查

e.g. You can search for information on the Internet. = You can search the Internet for information. 你可以通过网络搜寻信息。

search(…)for… 搜（……）寻……

I walked into a bookstore in search of some books that I wanted.

我走进一家书店寻找几本我想要的书。

search用作名词时，常用短语in search of，后接寻找的人或物。

They are searching for the missing dog.

他们在寻找那条丢失的狗。

辨析：search for, search与search…for…

The policeman searched the thief but found nothing.

那个警察搜了那个小偷的身，但什么都没发现。

①search for意为“搜寻；寻找”。

②search后接人时，指“搜某人的身”；后接地点时，指“搜查寻处”。

③search…for…意为“为了找……而搜查……”。

Mary is searching her bag for her keys.

玛丽正在包里找她的钥匙。

核心素养之文化意识

关爱留守儿童

在我们周围有这样一个特殊的群体——他们的父母为了生计（*livelihood*），背井离乡外出打工，一年难得回家一次，让留守在家中的他们备受思亲的煎熬——他们就是“留守儿童*(left-behind children)*”。

“幼吾幼以及人之幼”，是爱心、是责任*(duty)*、也是义务，是美好的情感，更是博大的胸襟。让我们手拉手与留守儿童共欢笑，共奋进，使这些处在人生成长关键时期的孩子们，能够健康快乐成长。

素养 行动 积极参加公益活动，为留守儿童带去温暖。

素养 行动结果 学会关心、关爱他人，学会感恩，回报社会。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★Among these is Zhong Wei, a 46-year-old husband and father.

③【句法分析】介词短语置于句首时，用倒装，目的是为了保持句子平衡或使上下文衔接紧密。

e.g. Among these people was his friend Jim. 他的朋友吉姆就在这些人当中。

比较：His friend Jim was among these people.（正常语序）

④ **among** /ə'mʌŋ/ *prep.*(being included or happening in groups of things or people) 在（其）中；……之一

辨析：among 与 between

among	一般用于三者或三者以上之间，其宾语通常是一个表示笼统数量或具有复数（或集合）之意义的名词或代词。
between	一般指两者之间，其宾语往往是表示两者的名词或代词，或者是由 and 连接的两个人或物。

e.g. Paris is among the largest cities in the world.

巴黎是世界上最大的城市之一。

There was a fight between the two boys. 这两个男孩打过一次架。



between
（在两者之间）



among
（在三者或三者以上之间）

⑤ **a 46-year-old husband and father** 一位 46 岁的丈夫和父亲

【易错】这是一个单数概念，即：一人两种身份。作主语时，谓语动词用单数形式。而 a 46-year-old husband and a father 指“一位 46 岁的丈夫和一位父亲”，指两个不同的人，是复数概念。

e.g. He Jiong is a famous host and teacher. 何炅是一位著名的主持人兼老师。

The 12-year-old girl won the first prize. 这个 12 岁的女孩获得了一等奖。

★“数词＋名词＋形容词”作定语时，用连字符“-”连接，且其中名词用单数形式；作表语时，不用连字符，表示复数概念时，名词用复数形式。

★It's a shame,but I just don't have the time ...

⑥ **shame**/ʃeɪm/*n.* 羞耻；羞愧；惭愧

e.g. She covered her face with her hands in shame.

她羞愧地用手遮住了脸。 丢脸；耻辱，不可数名词

What a shame they couldn't come. 他们不能来了，真是遗憾。

令人惋惜的事；让人遗憾的事，可数名词

To my shame, I left him alone at home.

令我感到羞愧的是，我把他一个人留在了家里。

Q shame 的常见搭配：

- to one's shame 令某人感到羞愧的是……
- in shame 羞愧地
- a sense of shame 羞耻感
- What a shame! 真遗憾！

★Many people like Zhong Wei regard with great interest how their hometowns have changed.

⑦ **regard**/rɪ'gɑ:(r)d/ *v.* 将……认为；把……视为；看待

e.g. I regard him as a friend of mine. 我把他视为我的一个朋友。

As regards him, he is a clever but lazy boy.

至于他，他是一个聪明但懒惰的男孩儿。

regard … as … 把……视为……

as regards 关于；至于

★Children have learned to read and count at my old primary school since the mid-20th century.

⑧ **count**/kaʊnt/*v.*(to say numbers in the correct order) 数数

e.g. That doesn't count. 那不算数。 算数，算得上

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

As there were only 10 seconds before Christmas, they began to count down. 在离圣诞节只剩十秒钟时，他们开始倒计时。

If you are going to do voluntary work, please count me in.
如果你们要做志愿工作，请算上我。

常用搭配
count down 倒数；倒计时
count in 算入；包括

⑨ **century**/'sentʃəri/*n.*(a period of 100 years) 百年；世纪

相当于 one hundred years，复数形式为 centuries。

e.g. The temple was built two centuries (two hundred years) ago.
这座庙是两百年前建造的。

These books were full of the scientific thought in the 19th century.
这些书在 19 世纪充满了科学思想。

表示"第几世纪"要用序数词，并在前面加定冠词 the。

在 21 世纪早期 in the early 21st century
在 20 世纪中期 in the mid-20th century
在 19 世纪晚期 in the late 19th century

★**According to Zhong Wei, however, some things will never change.**

⑩ **according to** 依据；按照

其中 to 是介词，后可接名词、代词。意为"据……所说"，表示信息来自别人或别的地方，相当于 in one's opinion。

e.g. According to George, she's a really good teacher.
按照乔治的说法，她是一位真正的好老师。

★**In my hometown, there was a big old tree opposite the school.**

⑪ **opposite**/'ɒpəzɪt/, /'ɑ:pəzət/ *prep.* 与……相对；在……对面 *adj.* 对面的；另一边的

作介词，意为"在……对面"，相当于 across from，常与名词一起构成介词短语，表方位。

e.g. The bank is opposite the bus stop.
那个银行在公交车站的对面。

We live on the opposite side of the road.
我们住在马路对面。

作形容词，意为"对面的，另一边的"，常用短语 be opposite to"和……相对"。

Her house is opposite to mine. 她的房子和我的房子相对。

There's an old man living opposite.
有一个老人住在对面。

作副词，意为"在对面"。

"Tall" is the opposite of "short".
"高"是"矮"的反义词。

作名词，意为"对立的人（或物）；对立面；反面"，常与介词 of 一起使用。

考题在线 1 In my hometown, there was a big old tree _____ (在……对面) the school. [滨州]

★**Most of the children in my time liked to play together under that big tree, especially during the summer holidays.**

⑫ **especially**/ɪ'speʃəli/ *adv.* 尤其；特别；格外

★副词，在句中作状语，用于列举某个特例或某事物的特殊性。其形容词形式为 especial，意为"特别的；特殊的"。

e.g. I love to travel to Italy, especially in summer.
我喜欢去意大利旅行，尤其是在夏天。

⑬ **consider**/kən'sɪdə(r)/*v.* 注视；仔细考虑

e.g. We considered it as part of her work. 我们认为这是她工作的一部分。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

She considers him (to be/as) a good teacher. 她认为他是一位好老师。

consider 作"认为"讲时，常用 consider … (as)… / consider…(to be)… 把……视为 / 认为……

辨析: consider 与 regard

consider	强调经过考虑后得出比较客观的看法	They considered his brother as an honest man. 他们认为他哥哥是个诚实的男人。
regard	常指对外表的看法或凭眼睛所见而作的评价；强调主观上的认为	We regarded her as a poor woman. 我们把她当作一个穷女人。(但实际上她却有可能很有钱)

He is considering going to see her. 他正在考虑去见她。

consider = think about 考虑，此时后接名词、代词或 v.-ing 形式，常用于 consider doing sth. "考虑做某事"。

考题在线 2 —I'm considering _____ abroad for further study, but I haven't decided yet.

—You'd better ask your English teacher for some advice. [哈尔滨]

A. going B. to go C. go

点拨: 用固定搭配法解题。consider doing sth. 意为"考虑做某事"，为固定搭配。

★**…, and his hometown is still the place that holds all his childhood memories.**

14 **hold**/həʊld/ *v.* 拥有；抓住

e.g. He holds 30% of the shares. 他持有 30% 的股份。

The girl was holding her father's hand. 那个女孩正拉着她父亲的手。

We hold our class meeting every week. 我们每星期举行一次班会。

The stadium can hold sixty thousand people. 这个体育场能容纳 6 万人。

The thieves held their breath when the police came over to the market. 当警察朝市场走过来时，这些小偷屏住了呼吸。

hold 常见搭配：
- hold on 等一下；坚持住；(电话用语) 别挂断
- hold … together (使) 保持团结
- hold up 举起；支撑
- hold one's breath 屏息；不出声


握着


占据


容纳

考题在线答案 1. opposite 2. A

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见 287 页)

一、根据句意及汉语或首字母提示写单词

1. _____ (现今) most kids prefer watching TV to reading.
2. A _____ (世纪) means one hundred years.
3. She has been writing poems since her _____ (童年).
4. He had to run to the o_____ side of the road.
5. He e_____ likes watching Disney cartoon movies.

二、单项选择

6. Sleeping is a popular way to relax _____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

students. [临沂]

A. on B. among C. about D. between

7. —How many apples are there?

—I don't know. Let me _____ them.

A. make B. count C. wash D. lend

8. —I don't know where to go this summer vacation.

—Why not _____ visiting Qingdao? There are many places of interest there.

A. suggest B. wonder

C. consider D. regard

9. —I haven't been back to my hometown for a few years.

— _____. You must miss your parents very much.

A. Of course B. No way

C. No, you haven't D. It's a shame

10. —Have you heard about Zhangjiajie Glass Footbridge?

—Of course, it's built over a _____ canyon in the Zhangjiajie National Forest Park. [连云港]

A. 300-meter-deep B. 300-meters-deep

C. 300 meter deep D. 300-meters deep

三、根据汉语意思完成句子，每空一词

11. 在我看来，做个善良和有礼貌的人总是好的。

_____ _____ _____, it's always a good idea to be kind and polite.

12. 他们对于这件事持有不同的观点。

They _____ different views on this matter.

13. 不要把我当傻子。

Don't _____ me _____ a fool.

14. 根据交通法规，汽车闯红灯要被罚款。

Cars that run red lights will be fined _____ _____ the traffic rules.

15. 我在哪里可以查询高中的信息?

Where can I _____ _____ the information about high schools?

Period 6 Section B (3a–Self Check)

I. 课文原文、译文

3a Think about your favorite thing from childhood which you still have. For example, it can be a toy or a book. Then take notes using the questions. 想想你仍然拥有的童年最喜欢的东西。比如说，它可以是一个玩具或一本书。然后通过这些问题将其记下来。

1. How long have you had it? 你拥有它多久了?
2. How did you get it? Did someone give it to you? Who? 你怎么得到它的? 是有人给你的吗? (那个人是)谁?
3. Why do you like it so much? Why is it special? 你为什么如此喜欢它? 为什么它很特别?
4. Can you say anything more about it? 你能再多说说关于它的事情吗?

3b Write three paragraphs about your favorite thing. Use your notes in 3a to help you. 关于你最喜欢的东西，写三段话。利用 3a 中的笔记来帮助你。

In the first paragraph, introduce your favorite thing. 在第一段，介绍你最喜欢的东西。	My favorite thing from childhood is _____. 我最喜欢的来自童年的东西是_____。 I've had it for/since _____. 我已经拥有它_____。 _____ gave it to me._____把它给我的。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

In the second paragraph, talk about why it is special. 在第二段，谈谈它为什么特殊。	I like _____ so much because _____. 我很喜欢_____因为_____。 It's special to me because _____. I think _____. 因为_____它对我来说很特殊。我认为_____。
In the third paragraph, write about a story or memories. 在第三段，写一个故事或一些回忆。	_____ has given me many memories._____给了我许多回忆。 I remember when _____. 我记得当时_____。

Self Check 自我检测

1 Complete the sentences using *for* or *since*. 用“持续了”或者“自从”来完成句子。

1. I haven't been to a museum 我未去过博物馆 _____
2. I haven't written a letter 我未写过信 _____
3. I haven't ridden a bike 我未骑过自行车 _____
4. I haven't seen a movie 我未看过电影 _____
5. I haven't played computer games 我未打过电脑游戏 _____

2 Complete the conversation. 完成对话。

A: Hey Eric, _____ you enjoyed your time in Beijing so far? 嘿，埃里克，到目前为止你在北京玩得开心吗?

B: Yes, it _____ been great! Everyone is so friendly. 是的，不错！每个人都那么友好。

A: How long _____ you been in China now? 现在你在中国已经多久了?

B: Oh, I _____ here _____ about two years now. 哦，现在我已经在这儿大概两年了。

A: Wow, that means you haven't _____ back to the US for two years? 哇，那就意味着你已经有两年没回美国了?

B: No, I _____ been back twice _____ moving to China. _____ you been to the US before, Li Juan? 不，_____搬到中国我回过两次。李娟，以前你去过美国吗?

A: Yes, I went there once when I _____ 10 years old, but I _____ not been back _____ then. 是的，当我十岁的时候去过那儿一次，但是_____那以后我就再没去过。

Ⅱ. 写作一课一法 夺取中考写作 20分

写作小练笔

Nowadays, millions of Chinese leave the countryside to search for work in the cities. Zhong Wei, a 46-year-old husband and father, has lived in Wenzhou for the last 13 years. He hasn't been back for almost three years.

His hometown has changed a lot. Large hospitals and new roads have appeared. The government has also built new schools and sent teachers from the cities to help. In Zhong Wei's hometown, they are going to build a new school. Such developments are good. But some things will never change. For example, Zhong Wei thinks the big old tree opposite the school has become quite a symbol of the place in his hometown. It has left many soft and sweet memories in his heart.

单元话题

请以“My Hometown”为题写一篇英语短文。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

提示：1. 家乡的环境等基本情况；2. 家乡的人们及其主要活动；3. 对家乡的简要评价。

要求：1. 条理清楚，语意连贯；2. 90 词左右。

审题指导（把握中心，得方向分）

在写作过程中，要开门见山交代家乡的地理位置，重点写家乡的变化、特色建筑等。结尾表达对家乡的真挚情感。时态可以用一般现在时、一般过去时，也可以用现在完成时。

写作技法（学会方法，巧得高分）

“三段四步法”介绍居住环境

三段：

第一段：家乡环境。

第二段：家乡的人。

第三段：对家乡的评价。

四步：一般描述、深入描述、情感描述、总结。

写作模板（学会套路，得基本分）

家乡环境 →	My hometown is ...You can see...
家乡的人 →	There are about ...All of them ... In busy seasons, most of them ...
评价家乡 →	My hometown is ...I love my hometown very much.

经典词句（妙用句式，得出彩分）

单词	village, through, friendly, famous, temperature, behind
短语	far from, run through, lead to, most of, be famous for
句子	① There are ... ② When summer ... ③ ... is becoming more and more ... ④ The village is so ...that ...

范文赏析（书写工整，得印象分）

My Hometown

My hometown is a small village not far from the Yangtze River. A road runs through the village, leading to the nearest market. You can see houses behind green trees along both sides of the road.

There are about 300 people in the village. All of them are very friendly. In busy seasons, most of them do farm work in the fields. The village is famous for its fruit. When summer comes, many people drive here to buy fresh fruit.

My hometown is becoming more and more beautiful. I love my hometown very much.

名师点评：本文采用“三段四步法”介绍我的家乡。本文行文流畅，结构完整，涵盖了所有内容要点，较好地完成了写作任务。全文从三个方面介绍了自己的家乡，语言简练，结构清晰。最后一段抒发了作者对家乡的热爱之情，使文章更加完整。1. far from, run through 以及 both sides of the road 点明家乡地理位置并恰当地描述了家乡的特征。2. 时间状语从句 When summer comes 及比较级 more and more beautiful 的运用为文章增加文采，提高档次。



Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

（答案见287页）

单元知识浓缩（根据汉语提示，用适当的单词或短语完成短文，每空一词）

Last Sunday, my father had a _____[1] _____[2]（庭院拍卖会）. He wanted to sell the things we _____[3] _____[4]（不再）used. _____[5] _____[6] _____[7]（说实在的）, we wanted to keep the old things because they brought back sweet _____[8]（回忆）, _____[9]（尤其是）some birthday gifts. In my _____[10]（观点）, old things may be better than new ones.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

参考答案及点拨

Unit 1 What's the matter?

Period 1 Section A (1a–2d)

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

一、1. B 2. A

二、3. take your temperature 4. a sore throat

5. have a stomachache 6. get an X-ray

7. by accident

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. fever 2. toothache

3. stomach 4. lay 5. feet

二、6. A 点拨：此题用句意分析法。句意：——李老师，考试之前，我感觉有点紧张。——你最好先别学习了，休息一下，放松一下自己。take a break 意为“休息”；break 此处意为“休息”。

7. C 点拨：考查连词辨析。so 因此，表示“结果”；if 如果，表示“假设”；but 但是，表示“转折”；as 因为，由于，表示“原因”。由上文“霍金不再与我们同在”以及下文“他将继续激励世界”可知前后两个分句间应该是转折关系。

8. B 点拨：without 后接名词、代词或 *v.* -ing 作宾语，此处意为“没有吃早饭”。

9. D 点拨：此题用语境分析法。根据句意，空格后为形容词 soft，故空格处为连系动词，系动词没有被动语态，用主动语态表示被动意义。

10. A

三、11. What's; with; has; sore throat

12. Should; take; temperature

13. hurt herself

14. with honey

15. lie down

Period 2 Section A (3a–3c)

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

一、1. Yes, I do.

二、2. B 3. B 4. D

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. surprise 2. trouble 3. hit

4. himself 5. themselves

二、6. playing

7. happened

8. to finish

9. to join

10. finding

三、11. got off 12. waiting for

13. Thanks to 14. in time

15. right away

Period 3 Section A (Grammar Focus–4c)

Ⅳ. 单元语法专练

1. A 点拨：本题用语法判定法。句意：为了让孩子们在即将到来的暑假期间远离危险，父母应该给他们一些安全提示。情态动词 should 表示“应该”做某事。

2. B 点拨：本题用语境分析法和语法判定法。句意：狗不应该在公园里有足球比赛的地方乱跑。那是危险的！shouldn't 表示“不应”做某事。

3. C 点拨：本题用语境分析法。考查反身代词。句意：——妈妈，你能帮我洗衣服吗？——抱歉，亲爱的。自己去做吧。祈使句省略了主语 you。

4. B 点拨：本题用语境分析法。句意：欢迎你们都来中国并且祝你们在这里玩得愉快。enjoy oneself 玩得开心，根据前面的 all 确定选择 yourselves。

5.B

Period 4 Section B (1a–1d)

Ⅱ. 教材听力新题秀

1. B 2. A 3. C 4. C 5. A

Period 5 Section B (2a–2e)

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

一、1. A

二、2. A 3. B 4. B 5. C

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. risks 2. needing 3. finishing 4. decision

5. picking

二、6. C 点拨：用词义辨析法。matter（必须考虑或处理的）问题，事情；question（具体的）问题，疑问；problem 问题，困难；trouble 麻烦。have problems (in) doing sth. 。

7. B 点拨：句意：所有的成员都决定把售书所得的钱捐给无家可归的人。give up 放弃；give away 捐赠；赠送；take up 占据（空间或时间）；take away 拿走，带走。根据句意，可知选 B。

8. A 点拨：考查 used to 结构。used to 表示“过去常常……”；be used to 意为“习惯于……”；句意：我妹妹过去很懒，但是现在她学习真的很努力。

9. B 点拨：考查连词短语辨析。even if 即使；as soon as 一……就；so that 以便，为了，引导目的状语从句，符合题意。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

10. B 点拨：考查形容词的用法辨析。以 -ing 结尾的形容词一般用来描述事物；而以 -ed 结尾的形容词一般用来描述人的感受。第一个空格修饰名词 show（节目），故用形容词 interesting，意为“有趣的”，relaxed 意为“感到放松的”。

三、11. kept on ringing
12. in control of
13. save her life
14. Giving up
15. cut off

Period 6 Section B (3a–Self Check)

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

1. had a cold 2. fever 3. should
4. decision 5. happened 6. hurt
7. passengers 8. fell down 9. hit
10. hospital

Unit 2 I'll help to clean up the city parks.

Period 1 Section A (1a–2d)

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

一、1. A

二、2. come up with
3. put off 4. 3/three
5. put up 6.call up

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. volunteer 2. notice 3. sign
4. cheer up 5. clean up

二、6. B 点拨：用语法判定法解题。live alone 独自生活，alone 是副词，修饰动词 live。lonely 孤独的，是形容词，作表语。

7. B 点拨：本题用短语辨析法。句意：在中国新年的第一天，我们穿上新衣服去拜访人们。pick up 捡起；put on 穿上；take off 起飞，脱下；throw away 扔掉。

8. A 点拨：考查动词短语辨析。give out 分发；give away 赠送；give back 归还；give up 放弃。句意：——你认为节日期间在微信上发红包很流行吗？——是的。但我更喜欢给家人礼物。

9. A 点拨：本题用短语辨析法。句意：——那个老人必须照顾他的妻子吗？——是的。他们没有孩子可以依靠。look after 照顾；look for 寻找；look up 向上看，查找；look like 看上去像。

10. A 点拨：句意：中国政府在 2013 年提出一带一路的想法。come up with 想出；make up with 与……和解；cheer up（使）变得更高兴；put up 张贴，举起，搭建。

Period 2 Section A (3a–3c)

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

一、1. It's about 2 young people who love volunteering. / It's about 2 helpful volunteers.

二、2. D 3. B 4. C 5. C

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. several 2. journey 3. feeling
4. strong 5. owner

二、6. not to try out
7. come true 8. call up
9. at the same time
10. To the teacher's satisfaction

Period 3 Section A (Grammar Focus–4c)

Ⅳ. 单元语法专练

1. C 点拨：本题用固定搭配法。plan to do sth. 计划做某事。句意：“你今晚计划干什么呢？”“我计划去看《我们逝去的青春》。”

2. B 点拨：本题用短语辨析法。句意：“我们正计划这个周末进行长江保护日。你有什么建议吗？”“你最好在学校周围张贴一些布告告诉所有学生这个事情。”make up 编造，化妆；put up 张贴；set up 建立；show up 出现。

3. B 点拨：本题用短语辨析法。句意：“杰克正在告诉每个人他买了一辆新车。”“别理他。他仅仅是在_____。”take off 起飞，脱下；show off 炫耀；drive off 驱车离去；set off 出发，动身。

4. D 点拨：本题用固定搭配法。ask sb. to do sth. 让某人做某事。

5. C 点拨：本题用固定搭配法。考查了固定句型 It's + *adj.*（for sb.）to do sth.（对某人来说）做某事是……的。句意：“朱莉亚，你的电话在响。”“等一下。过马路的时候接电话是危险的”。

Period 4 Section B (1a–1e)

Ⅱ. 教材听力新题秀

1. A 2. C 3. A 4. C 5. C

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

1. ran out of 2. take after 3. broken 4. fix it up
5. are similar to

Period 5 Section B (2a–2e)

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

一、1. A

二、2. B 3. D 4. A 5. C

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. write 2. carry 3. blind 4. change 5. clever

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

二、6. difficulties 7. disabled 8. training
9. understood 10. kindness
三、11. B
12. C 点拨：用短语辨析法解题。句意：——我们应该为儿童之家的残疾儿童做些什么呢？——你们应该设立一个学习小组去帮助他们。take up 占据；fix up 修理；set up 建起，设立；stay up 熬夜。与“学习小组”搭配的应该是“设立”。
13. D
14. A 点拨：考查形容词用法。句意：我们对于北京将于2022年举办冬季奥运会这个令人兴奋的消息感到兴奋。excited 用来修饰人，exciting 用来修饰物。
15. A 点拨：本题用语法判定法。不定式放在句首，表目的。句意：为了学好英语，他不得不每天听磁带。

Period 6 Section B (3a–Self Check)

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

1. volunteers 2. cheer them up
3. set up 4. training
5. several 6. (to) give out
7. raised 8. kindness
9. come up with 10. take

Unit 3 Could you please clean your room?

Period 1 Section A (1a–2d)

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

一、1. A 2. B
二、3. go out for 4. new action movie
5. stay out late 6. have a good rest 7. a ride

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. fold 2. rubbish 3. mess
4. floor 5. sweep
二、6. take out 7. any minute now
8. reading 9. If 10. at least
三、11. Two weeks is 12. work out
13. Could you please 14. has to 15. at least

Period 2 Section A (3a–3c)

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

一、1. A
二、2. C 3. A 4. B 5. A

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

1. the minute 2. in the front of 3. all the time
4. throw away 5. neither did I

Period 3 Section A (Grammar Focus–4c)

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. chores 2. lent 3. while
4. hates 5. finger
二、6. C 点拨：本题用句意分析法。hang up 意为“挂断电话”；hang back 意为“留下”；hang out 意为“闲逛”。句意：春节第一天，人们穿着新衣服闲逛。
7. D 点拨：本题用固定搭配法。borrow sth. from ... 意为“从……借来某物”，为固定搭配。故选 D。
8. C 点拨：句意：当房间里还有很多烟的时候，市长走了进来。if 意为“如果”；so 意为“因此”；while 意为“当……的时候”；unless 意为“除非”。故选 C。
9. A 点拨：本题用短语辨析法。句意：——詹森，我没有给休打通电话。——今天下午我要去看她。你想要我转告一些信息吗？pass on 转交，传给；find out 查明；look up 查阅；work on 从事。根据句意可知答案。
10. C 点拨：考查 hate 和固定短语 do chores 的用法。do chores 意为“做家务”，排除 A 和 B 项；hate doing sth. 意为“讨厌做某事”，故选 C。
三、11. A 点拨：本题用情景交际法。句型 Could you please...？意为“请你……好吗？”，其中 could 表示委婉语气。故选 A。
12. A
13. C 点拨：考查情态动词。句意：——一些人最初并不显示他们的天赋。——我同意。甚至爱因斯坦_____读书直到7岁。A. 不能，不会；B. 禁止；C.can 的过去式 could；D. 不需要，不必要。not...until... 为固定句型，“直到……才……”。“until he was seven”谈论的是过去的事情，使用的是一般过去时。故应选 C。
14. B 点拨：本题用情景交际法。句意是：——你能帮我刷盘子吗？——_____。我割伤了手指，我正努力不弄湿它。根据答语后句可推知此空表示“不能帮着刷盘子”，应用 Sorry, I can't。故选 B。
15. D 点拨：考查情态动词辨析。should 表示“应该，应当”；must 表示“必须”；need 意为“需要”；mustn't 表示“禁止，不允许”；needn't 意为“不需要”，一般用来回答 must 引导的疑问句；could 表示“能，可以”，语气更委婉；can't 表示“不能”。由语境知，第一空用 could 向对方提出请求；第二空表示不能，故选 D。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 4 Section B (1a–1e)

Ⅱ. 教材听力新题秀

1. B 2. C 3. B 4. C 5. A

Period 5 Section B (2a–2e)

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

一、1. D

二、2. A 3. B 4. C 5. B

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. D 点拨：考查动词辨析。由上句中的 building 可知动词要使用 spend，句式为：spend+ money + doing sth.。故选 D。

2. C 点拨：本题用短语辨析法。“为某人提供某物”的两个相近短语为 offer sth. to sb.，provide sb. with sth.。故选 C。

3. C

4. C 点拨：本题考查情景交际。由对话知明天是否去野餐取决于天气。depend on 依靠；取决于。

二、5. enough stress 6. on; in order to

7. no need; to buy 8. as a result

9. take care of 10. in learning

Period 6 Section B (3a–Self Check)

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

1. Sweep 2. Fold 3. chores

4. could 5. make the bed

6. independence

7. take care of/look after

8. fairness 9. depend on

10. borrow

Unit 4 Why don't you talk to your parents?

Period 1 Section A (1a–2d)

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

一、1. B 2. B

二、3. A 4. C

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. allow 2. wrong 3. deal

4. guess 5. Although

二、6. to play 7. tell 8. playing 9. too much

10. Look through

Period 2 Section A (3a–3c)

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

一、1. B

二、2. A 3. C 4. A 5. C

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. elder 2. Secondly

3. communication 4. to do

5. argued

二、6. explain 7. be nervous about

8. Instead 9. Whatever

10. getting on well with

Period 3 Section A (Grammar Focus–4c)

Ⅳ. 单元语法专练

1. B 点拨：本题用逻辑推理法。句意：——你上周的滑冰课怎么样？——还不错。_____我摔倒好多次，最后我终于学会滑冰了。because 因为；although 尽管，虽然；so 因此。

2. A 点拨：考查交际用语。A.（心情）放轻松；B. 听起来不错；C. 谢谢你；D. 多么遗憾。句意：——我害怕在这次游戏中做不好。——_____。只是为了好玩呀。故选 A。

3. A 点拨：后半句“他们能够了解世界上正在发生的事情”是前半句“很多人喜欢读报纸”的目的。故选 A。

4. C 点拨：考查连词辨析。句意：——打扰一下，你能告诉我去最近的地铁站的路吗？——一直往前走，直到你看见一座白色建筑。就是那里。though 尽管，since 自……以来，until 直到……为止，if 如果。根据句意可知，空白处应用 until 表示“直到……为止”。故选 C。

5. D 点拨：考查连词辨析。unless 除非；until 直到……为止；since 自……以来；although 尽管。“a white elephant”指的是昂贵而无用之物。“useless”与“它有可能花了不少钱”之间是让步关系，表示让步用 although。

Period 4 Section B (1a–1e)

Ⅱ. 教材听力新题秀

1. A 2. B 3. C 4. C 5. A

Period 5 Section B (2a–2e)

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

一、1. C

二、2. A 3. B 4. B 5. D

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. typical 2. continues 3. crazy; push

4. development 5. cause

二、6. C 点拨：考查冠词辨析。“the + 姓氏的复数形式”

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

表示“一家人”。故选C。

7. C 点拨：考查continue的用法。continue doing sth.表示“继续做某事”。

8. A 点拨：用句子结构分析法解题。分析句子结构可知所选词修饰名词，而such修饰名词，so修饰形容词或副词，因此用such。

9. A 点拨：用短语辨析法解题。cut down削减；cut up切碎；cut out裁剪；cut off中断。句意：我们国家正在采取措施减少空气污染。

10. A 点拨：用词语运用法解题。形容词作make的宾语补足语。too much后接不可数名词，而much too后常接形容词。故选A。

三、11. lot of pressure 12. compete with

13. family members 14. comparing; with

15. pushing me to

Period 6 Section B (3a–Self Check)

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

1. wrong 2. argues with 3. money 4. all kinds of

5. training 6. cut out 7. return 8. until 9. compare

10. successful

Unit 5 What were you doing when the rainstorm came?

Period 1 Section A (1a–2d)

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

一、1. C

二、2. A 3. C 4. A

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. alarm 2. began 3. suddenly

4. (to) pick up 5. strange

二、6. A 点拨：本题用词义辨析法和语法判定法。heavy重的；light轻的。根据句意“我们不得不取消我们的足球比赛”，可知雨下得很大。又因为rain是动词，修饰动词应用副词，故选A。

7. B 8. C

9. C 点拨：beautiful美丽的；美好的；typical典型的；strange奇特的；奇怪的；interesting有趣的。由“It made me scared.（它使我害怕。）”可推知答案选C。

10. C

Period 2 Section A (3a–3c)

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

1. C 2. B 3. A 4. D 5. A

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. matches 2. rises 3. fall

4. windy 5. was dying

二、6. With much work 7. feels like

8. beat against 9. wake up

10. fell asleep; dying down

Period 3 Section A (Grammar Focus–4c)

Ⅳ. 单元语法专练

1. D 点拨：考查时态。答句句意：“当我在公交车站_____（等）的时候，三辆公交车没有停就走了”，也就是说“我”正在公交站等车的这一段时间里，走了三辆车。由此可判断，“等（wait）”这一动作在那个时候一直在进行，故选D。

2. B 点拨：考查时态。由答语可知，“昨天晚上（last night）没有看篮球比赛，是因为当时爸爸在看他最喜欢的电视节目”。所以，要用过去进行时。故选B。

3. A 点拨：考查时态。由句意可知，“当你昨晚打电话给我时我正在洗东西”。故要用过去进行时，选A。

4. C 点拨：考查连词。A. if如果，引导条件状语从句。B. because因为，引导原因状语从句。C. while当……时候，引导时间状语从句。D. until直到，引导时间状语从句，常用于“not... until”句型中，表示“直到……才……”。由句意可知，主从句之间是动作发生的时间先后的逻辑关系。故选C。

5. A 点拨：考查时态。由过去进行时的时间标志词“this time yesterday”可判定选A。

Period 4 Section B (1a–1d)

Ⅱ. 教材听力新题秀

1. A 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. C

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

1. B 点拨：本题用语法判定法。句意：我现在正在回家的路上。make one's way to后接地点副词时，应省略介词to。故选B。

2. B

3. A 点拨：realize认识到；waste浪费；control控制；cause引起。根据句意“现在越来越多的人开始认识到节约水的重要性”可知答案。

4. C 点拨：考查时态。句意：Amon_____（驾驶）着船只在大风暴中，这时，一条巨大的鱼从海里冒了出来。“驾驶船只”的时间是在“大鱼冒出水面”过去的那一刻，且由came可知用过去进行时。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

5. B 点拨：本题用语法判定法。根据句中的 while“当……时候”，可知强调在过去某一动作正在发生时发生了另一动作；fall 为非延续性动词用一般过去时态；skate 为延续性动词用过去进行进态。

Period 5 Section B (2a–2e)

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

一、1. A

二、2. B 3. D 4. C 5. B

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. completely 2. recently 3. passage

4. tower 5. pupil

二、6. A 点拨：本题用语境分析法。由“None of them talked.”可知他们无声地吃完了饭。in silence 无声地。故选 A。

7. C 点拨：本题用语境分析法解答。句意为“我不相信那个故事的真实性”。先排除 real 和 true 两个形容词，reality 事实；truth 真实性，故选 C。

8. D 点拨：本题用词义辨析法解题。考查副词的词义辨析。almost 几乎；probably 或许；mostly 主要地；hardly 几乎不。由答语后半句“因为你说得非常快”推知，前半句说的是“对不起，我几乎听不懂”。故选 D。

9. B 点拨：as usual 像往常一样；at first 起先；起初；after all 毕竟；终归；so far 到目前为止。由句意可知答案选 B。

10. D 点拨：本题用语法判定法。由动词 tell 可知其后为宾语从句，宾语从句应为陈述语序。故答案只能为 B 或 D，再由答语可推断出答案为 D。

三、11. The rest of 12. take down

13. was shocked 14. has meaning to

15. could/can hardly

Period 6 Section B (3a–Self Check)

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

1. sleeping 2. While

3. suddenly 4. strange

5. followed 6. scared

7. called 8. heard about

9. in silence 10. woke up

Unit 6 An old man tried to move the mountains.

Period 1 Section A (1a–2d)

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

一、1. A 2. B 3. B

二、4. C 5. A

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. shot 2. seems 3. silly 4. weak 5. stone

二、6. C 点拨：句意：最近查尔斯在致力于写一部新小说。work on“致力于”，符合句意。take in“理解”；dream of“梦想”；pick up“捡起；搭载”。

7. B 点拨：remind sb. of sth. 意为“使某人想起某事”，为固定搭配。

8. B 9. B

10. D 点拨：句意：王先生生病了。让我代替他去开会吧。instead 后面不能直接接人称代词；because of 表示原因；according to“根据”。故选 D。

Period 2 Section A (3a–3c)

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

一、1. The English TV program called *Monkey*.

二、2. C 3. D 4. C

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. hide 2. magic 3. stick 4. object

5. Western

二、6. excited 7. to pick up 8. more than

9. come out 10. turn into

三、11. B 点拨：come out 盛开；come in 进来；come from 来自；come to 来到。句意：鲜花在春天开始盛开。根据句意可知答案。

12. A 点拨：turn... into... 把……变成……；turn down 拒绝；compare... with... 把……和……相比；compare... to... 把……比作……。句意：我想知道她怎么把石头变成金子的。根据句意可知答案。

13. B 点拨：本题用语法判定法。动词不定式作目的状语。句意：为了更好地理解这个故事，迈克向他朋友求助。

14. C 点拨：enough 修饰形容词时，应放在形容词后。boring 常用来修饰或描述物；bored 常用来修饰或描述人。故选 C。

15. D 点拨：考查短语辨析。句意：——一位伟人曾经说过，“如果你能追随你的心，永不放弃，你的梦想就会成真。”。——我也这样认为。我相信，假如我努力学习，今年我就能进入好的高中。give away 捐赠；give back 归还；give out 分发；give up 放弃。根据语境可知是“放弃”。故选 D。

Period 3 Section A (Grammar Focus–4c)

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. Once upon a time

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

2. doesn't fit 3. got married
4. fell in love with 5. can't stop doing

二、6. B
7. A 点拨：考查结果状语从句。such 后跟名词，so 后跟形容词或副词，句中 excited 为形容词，用 so。故选 A。
8. A 9. A
10. A 点拨：so... that... 与 such... that... 表示“如此……以至于……”，引导结果状语从句，但 so 后跟形容词或副词，而 such 后跟名词。故选 A。

Period 4 Section B (1a–1d)

Ⅱ. 教材听力新题秀

1. C 2. B 3. A 4. B

Period 5 Section B (2a–2e)

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

1. A 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. C

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. bright 2. shining 3. brave
4. wives 5. were

二、6. D 点拨：考查 nobody 的用法。根据 terrible 可知，没人喜欢，选 nobody“没有人”。
7. A 点拨：be made from 看不出原材料，符合题意。
8. A 点拨：本题用固定搭配法。根据固定搭配 plan to do 可知，选 A。
9. C 点拨：考查形容词词义辨析。句意：这个演讲者列举了一些合适的实例以使得这份科学报告容易理解。awful 可怕的；stupid 愚蠢的；proper 合适的；thick 厚的。根据语境知选 C。
10. A

Period 6 Section B (3a–Self Check)

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

1. Western 2. began 3. once upon a time
4. magic 5. born 6. stick 7. objects
8. hide 9. weak 10. brave

Unit 7 What's the highest mountain in the world?

Period 1 Section A (1a–2d)

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

一、1. B 2. B
二、3. A 4. C

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. meters 2. tourists 3. deep 4. ancient
5. amazing

二、6. What's the population
7. As far as I know 8. protect; from
9. taller than any other student
10. Feel free to

Period 2 Section A (3a–3c)

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

一、1. Because people want to challenge themselves in the face of difficulties.
二、2. C 3. D 4. C 5. D

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. Thick 2. force 3. freezing
4. conditions 5. challenge
二、6. including 7. natural 8. success
9. achievements 10. more
三、11. take in
12. in the face of
13. risked his life
14. the main reasons
15. even though

Period 3 Section A (Grammar Focus–4c)

Ⅲ. 单元语法专练

一、1. difficult; more/less difficult
2. exciting 3. best 4. stronger
5. carefully; more carefully

二、6. B 点拨：考查副词的比较级。由比较级的标志词 than 可知用 hard 的比较级 harder。
7. D 点拨：考查形容词的最高级。由固定结构 one of + the + 形容词的最高级 + 名词复数可知答案。
8. B 点拨：考查形容词的比较级。句意：“玛丽，你是比较喜欢工作日还是周末呢？”“当然是工作日。因为周末我_____。”由此可知，是工作日和周末两者进行比较，所以用形容词的比较级。
9. D 点拨：考查形容词的最高级。句意：“你愿意等外卖的最长时间是多少？”“最多十分钟。”由此可知要用最高级。
10. B 点拨：考查比较级句型：“The + 形容词 / 副词比较级 ..., the + 形容词 / 副词比较级 ...”“越……越……”。依据常识，你英语讲得越多，你的英语就越好。

Period 4 Section B (1a–1d)

Ⅱ. 教材听力新题秀

1. A 2. C 3. C 4. C

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

1. weighed 2. many times faster

3. at birth 4. up to 5. three times as

Period 5 Section B (2a–2e)

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

1. A 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. B

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. illness 2. keeper 3. awake

4. excitement 5. research

二、6. or so 7. take care of 8. died from

9. prepare for 10. walked into; fell over

Period 6 Section B (3a–Self Check)

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

1. Asia 2. population 3. Wall 4. wide

5. ancient 6. protect 7. succeed 8. bamboo

9. forests 10. government

Unit 8 Have you read *Treasure Island* yet?

Period 1 Section A (1a–2d)

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

一、1. B 2. C 3. C

二、4. A 5. B

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. island 2. treasures 3. classic 4. due 5. page

二、6. A

7. C 点拨：考查名词词义的辨析。此处句意“她的微笑让我感到温暖而充满活力。它像是隐藏的珍宝。”competition“比赛，竞赛”，interview“面试；采访”，treasure“财富；珍宝”，tradition“传统”。根据句意可知用 treasure。

8. B 点拨：考查介词。thanks to... 意为“多亏……”，“in+ 一段时间”表示从现在算起的“一段时间之后”，与句意相符。

9. A 点拨：考查短语的用法。此处句意“你的花园里长满了漂亮的花。”be full of =be filled with 充满……的。

10. B 点拨：此题用短语辨析法。put away 收起来，放好；put up 张贴；put out 熄灭，扑灭。代词作动副型短语的宾语时要放在中间，结合句意可知B项符合题意。

Period 2 Section A (3a–3c)

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

一、1. A

二、2. B 3. D 4. B

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. mark 2. sand 3. towards 4. landed 5. tool

二、6. on land 7. lose his life 8. How long

9. the other 10. in the middle of

Period 3 Section A (Grammar Focus–4c)

Ⅳ. 单元语法专练

1. A 点拨：考查时态。由现在完成时的时间标志词“for + 一段时间”可知答案。

2. D 点拨：考查时态。句意：“看！有人把灯关了。”“哦，不是我。我没有关灯。”由“wasn't”和“didn't”可知，关灯这件事发生在过去，但是对现在有影响，故用现在完成时。

3. D 点拨：此题用语法判定法。句意“我收到一个音乐会的邀请。我迫不及待要去。”收到的动作发生在过去，并对现在造成了一定的影响，故用 have received。

4. C 点拨：考查现在完成时的用法。“since+ 一般过去时句子”表示“自从……以来”，主句应该用现在完成时。

5. D 点拨：考查句子时态。根据句中的时间状语“over the years”可知，这里指的是“过去的动作对现在的影响”，应用现在完成时态表达。

Period 4 Section B (1a–1d)

Ⅱ. 教材听力新题秀

1. B 2. C 3. B 4. C

Period 5 Section B (2a–2e)

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

1. B 2. C 3. D 4. B 5. C

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. millions 2. such as 3. abroad

4. modern 5. come to

二、6. actually 7. southern 8. success

9. beauty 10. laughter

三、11. belong to 12. on the radio 13. fight over

14. has; been to 15. one another

Period 6 Section B (3a–Self Check)

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

1. introduce 2. belongs to 3. island

4. millions of 5. beauty 6. ship

7. modern 8. southern 9. fan 10. forever

Unit 9 Have you ever been to a museum?

Period 1 Section A (1a–2d)

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

一、1. B 2. B

二、3. C 4. A 5. A

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. invention 2. amusement 3. one 4. crying
5. to solve

二、6. D 点拨：用词义辨析法解题。instruction 指令；invitation 邀请；introduction 介绍；invention 发明；创造力。分析句意可知空格处应填 invention。故选 D。

7. B 点拨：本题用语境分析法。由上句“我已经很长时间没有去科学博物馆了。你呢？”和下句“这个周末你能和我一起去吗？”可知答语应为“我也没有”。Me neither. 我也没有。故选 B。

8. B 点拨：考查反意疑问句。根据反意疑问句“前肯后否”的特点，排除 A、C；结合 there is 的句子的反意疑问句形式为 isn't there。故选 B。

9. A

10. B 点拨：考查 somewhere 的用法。形容词修饰 somewhere 或 everywhere 时放在其后，所以排除 A 和 C；somewhere 到某处，everywhere 到处，根据句意可知选 B。

Period 2 Section A (3a–3c)

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

一、1. A

二、2. B 3. D 4. C

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. progress 2. rapid 3. collect 4. perfect
5. invented

二、6. unbelievable 7. peaceful 8. performed
9. social 10. unusual

三、11. encouraged her to
12. think about
13. in a different way
14. learn about
15. in the future

Period 3 Section A (Grammar Focus–4c)

Ⅳ. 单元语法专练

一、1. German 2. a couple of days 3. theme
4. go for a ride 5. province

二、6. have; seen; saw
7. Has; finished
8. Have; been; have been
9. Have; eaten
10. have gone

Period 4 Section B (1a–1d)

Ⅱ. 教材听力新题秀

1. C 2. A 3. B 4. B

Period 5 Section B (2a–2e)

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

1. D 2. D 3. C 4. B 5. A

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. quarters 2. safe 3. fear 4. Whenever
5. equator

二、6. Indian 7. mostly 8. playing
9. simply 10. Japanese

三、11. A 点拨：确数两无，无 -s 和 of；概数两有，有 -s 和 of。句意“——雪花男孩的照片最近非常受欢迎。——是的，它每天收到网络点击率数千次。”由此可以判断点击的次数是无法确定的，故选 A。

12. D 点拨：考查连词的用法辨析。句意“不论你是否告诉他们，他们都会查明真相的。”since 自从，既然；though 虽然；unless 除非，如果不；whether ... or not 不论，是否。根据句意选 D。

13. B 点拨：本题用句意分析法。句意“你什么时候方便就什么时候来看我。”whenever 表示“无论什么时候”；whatever 表示“无论什么”；however 表示“无论如何”。根据句意可知选 B。

14. B 点拨：本题用词义辨析法。suddenly 突然地；simply 仅仅；really 真正地；clearly 清楚地。根据“我从来没有和他会过面”可知“我仅仅听说过他”。故选 B。

15. C 点拨：本题用固定搭配法。on the one hand ... on the other hand 为固定搭配，意为“一方面……另一方面”。

四、16. On the one hand; on the other hand
17. thousands of 18. Whether; or
19. all year round 20. close to

Period 6 Section B (3a–Self Check)

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

1. unbelievable 2. collected
3. thousands of 4. Whether
5. German 6. On the one hand
7. on the other hand 8. progressed
9. rapid 10. unusual

Unit 10 I've had this bike for three years.

Period 1 Section A (1a–2d)

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

一、1. B 2. B 3. C

二、4. A 5. A

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. soft 2. sweet 3. toys

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

4. memory 5. yard

二、6. has checked out 7. bring back

8. has given away 9. on sale 10. in need

Period 2 Section A (3a–3c)

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

一、1. A

二、2. A 3. C 4. D

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. owned 2. certain 3. junior 4. while

5. truthful

二、6. C 点拨：in fact 事实上；even though 即使；as for 至于；at first 首先。句意“至于电影，这个男孩最喜欢动作片。”

7. D 点拨：本题用词义辨析法。curious 好奇的；brave 勇敢的；gentle 绅士的，文雅的；honest 诚实的。句意“——你在电视上看《小猪佩奇》吗？那太有趣了！——哦，没有，说实话，我觉得它很愚蠢。”此处用到固定短语 to be honest 表示“说实在的”。故选 D。

8. B 点拨：本题用短语辨析法。come out 出版；clear out 清理；give out 分发；go out 出去。由句意“噢！这个房间真的是一团糟。你能清理一下垃圾吗？”可知选 B。

9. A 点拨：考查从属连词的用法。句意“布莱克先生在我们做实验的时候走来走去并提供帮助。”根据句意可知此处表示“在……时候”。故选 A。

10. C 点拨：play with 和……玩耍；agree with 同意某人的意见；part with 放弃，交出（尤指不舍得的东西）；share with 和……分享。由句意“我妹妹非常喜欢她的玩具，所以当她不得不放弃它们的时候，她感觉很难过。”可知选 C。

三、11. To be honest 12. isn't; any more

13. clear out 14. As for 15. part with

Period 3 Section A (Grammar Focus–4c)

Ⅲ. 单元语法专练

1. D 点拨：考查动词时态。句意“——我的银行卡丢了。我想要挂失。——你可以打电话给银行挂失。那样更快。”根据“I want to report it.”可知应用现在完成时，表示过去发生的事情对现在造成影响。故选 D。

2. B

3. B 点拨：考查动词时态。由现在完成时的标志词“for + 段时间”可排除选项 C、D。fall asleep 为短暂性动词词组，不能与段时间连用。be asleep 是延续性动词词组，可以与段时间连用。故选 B。

4. C 点拨：考查现在完成时中延续性动词与段时间连用的用法。for+ 一段时间提示句子的时态用现在完成时。表示“开始”的 begin 是短暂性动词，与段时间连用要用 be on 替换。

5. B

Period 4 Section B (1a–1d)

Ⅱ. 教材听力新题秀

1. A 2. B 3. A 4. B

Period 5 Section B (2a–2d)

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

1. B 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. C

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. Nowadays 2. century 3. childhood

4. opposite 5. especially

二、6. B 点拨：考查介词辨析。由句意可知是在学生之间，并且为三者以上。故选 B。

7. B 点拨：本题用逻辑推理法。根据问句“How many apples are there?”可推知，让我数数它们。故选 B。

8. C

9. D 点拨：本题用语境分析法。句意“——我有几年都没有回过家乡了。——_____。你一定非常思念你的父母。”由句意语境可知这是一件遗憾的事。

10. A 点拨：考查复合形容词的用法。句意“——你听说过张家界玻璃人行桥吗？——当然，它被建在张家界国家森林公园的一个 300 米深的峡谷上。”“基数词 + 连字符 + 单数名词 + 连字符 + 形容词”可构成复合形容词，用来修饰名词，故选 A 项。

三、11. In my opinion 12. hold 13. regard; as

14. according to 15. search for

Period 6 Section B (3a–Self Check)

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

1. yard 2. sale 3. no

4. longer 5. To 6. be

7. honest 8. memories

9. especially 10. opinion

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

教材习题参考答案

Unit 1 What's the matter?

▶Section A

1a e g i b a j l c d m k f

1b Nancy 3, Sarah 1, David 2, Ben 5, Judy 4

2a 2 4 3 1 5

2b **1.** d, **2.** a, **3.** b, **4.** c, **5.** e

3b **1.** √ **3.** √ **5.** √ **6.** √

4a **1.** myself should should

2. What's have Should shouldn't

3. Does have doesn't has should

4b **1.** (put some medicine on the cut) She should go to a doctor.

2. (see a dentist) She should get an X-ray.

3. (exercise) They should lie down and rest.

4. (lie down and rest) He should go to see a doctor.

▶Section B

1a 上图3 1 2; 下图左1 2 3; 下图右2 1 3

1c Checked: Someone felt sick. b, c;
Someone cut his knee. a, d;
Someone had a nosebleed. f;
Someone got hit on the head. e

2a A/B B/C A A/B/C A/B A/B

2c **1.** 圈 DON'T KNOW

2. 圈 TRUE

3. 圈 DON'T KNOW

4. 圈 FALSE

5. 圈 TRUE

2d **1.** In Utah.

2. Because a 360-kilo rock fell on him.

3. He used his knife to cut off half his right arm.

4. He wrote a book about it.

5. It means being in a difficult situation that you cannot seem to get out of.

2e 2 1 5 4 3

▶Self Check

1 Head: have a headache
Back: have a sore back
Throat: have a sore throat
Tooth: have a toothache
Stomach: have a stomachache
Other problems: my finger hurts, cut myself

2 2 5 1 4 6 3

3 **1.** Run it under water, and then put some medicine on it.

2. Take some medicine.

3. Drink lots of water and sleep more.

4. Lie down and rest.

Unit 2 I'll help to clean up the city parks.

▶Section A

1a help kids with their homework; help old people cross the road; babysit; pick up rubbish in the park

1b 3, 2, 4, 1

2a Checked: b, c, e

2b **1.** come up with

2. put off

3. put up

4. hand, out

5. call up

3a Mario volunteers at an animal hospital every Saturday morning. Mary works at an after-school reading program once a week to help kids learn to read.

3b **1.** Mario volunteers at an animal hospital because he loves animals and wants to be an animal doctor. Mary volunteers at an after-school reading program because she is a book lover and she loves to help kids learn to read.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

2. Mario says that it's hard work, but he gets a strong feeling of satisfaction.
Mary says that it's a dream come true for her.

3c 1. to be
2. to learn; to care
3. to try out; to help
4. to do

4a 1. put off
2. call up
3. come up with; cheer up
4. put up; hand out; give out

4b to make; to do; to help; to spend; to visit; to move

▶Section B

1a 1. b 2. c 3. a 4. d

1b I am running out of money.
I take after my father.
I gave away my old clothes to the children in poor areas.
I fixed up my bike.

1c a. 4, b. 2, c. 1, d. 3

1d 1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T

2d Ben Smith wrote a letter to Miss Li.
Lucky can get things for disabled people.
Animal Helpers trains animals like Lucky.

▶Self Check

1 1. put up
3. give away
5. take after
2. put off
4. run out of
6. come up with

2 ran out; to buy; to cheer; put up; called up; to tell; handed out; set up; came up; to fix; give away

Unit 3 Could you please clean your room?

▶Section A

1b Peter's mother—do the dishes, sweep the floor, clean the living room
Peter—take out the rubbish, make the bed, fold the clothes

2a go out for dinner—yes
go to the movies—yes
stay out late—no
get a ride—no

2b stay out late—no; You have a basketball game.
get a ride—no; I have to do some work.

3a 1. Because Nancy's mother wanted her to take the dog for a walk. But Nancy was too tired to walk.
2. Yes. Nancy cleaned and tidied the house and finally understood that they needed to share the housework.

3b 1. For one week, she did not do any housework and neither did I.
2. The minute I sat down in front of the TV, my mom came over.
3. I'm just as tired as you are!

3c 2. (noun) → John will show you upstairs. (verb)
3. (verb) → I have too much work to do. (noun)
4. (verb) → My watch is slow. (noun)
5. (noun) → That really surprised us. (verb)

4a 1. P d
2. R a
3. P c
4. R e
5. R b

4b do Could help Could fold could please could

▶Section B

1c checked:1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6

1d Sandy's mom: go to the store, buy some drinks and snacks
Sandy: invite her friends, clean her room, use the CD player
Sandy and Dave: move the big chairs to the bedroom, clean the living room

2a 1. Do the dishes, cook dinner... and take out the trash.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

2. Yes, I do.

2c Pros: Doing chores teaches them how to look after themselves.

Doing chores helps them to understand the idea of fairness.

Cons: When they get older, they will have to do housework so there's no need for them to do it now.

It's the parents' job to provide a clean and comfortable environment at home for their children.

2d **1.** Playing computer games is a waste of time.

2. There's no need for us to do the housework.

3. I don't mind doing the chores.

4. I spent two hours on my homework.

5. In order to catch the early bus, Amy had to get up early.

6. It is not enough to listen to the teacher in class.

7. The earlier you learn the subjects, the better grades you will get.

▶Self Check

1 **1.** the dishes

2. the room

3. your bed

4. your clothes

5. the floor

6. the trash

2 Requests: 1 3 6

Permission: 2 4 5

3 A: Could I watch TV?

B: Yes, you can.

Unit 4 Why don't you talk to your parents?

▶Section A

1b 1, 4

2a **1.** could

2. should

3. should

4. could

5. could

2b **1.** d **2.** e **3.** a **4.** c **5.** b

3c communicate You should communicate with your parents about this problem.

refuse She refused his invitation to the tea party.

nervous What's she so nervous about?

get on with Linda got on well with her parents.

4a **1.** so that

2. Although

3. until

4. Although

▶Section B

1c Checked: My parents give me a lot of pressure about school.

I don't have enough free time.

I have to compete with my classmates at school.

1d **1.** unhappy; pressure

2. grades; sports

3. compete; helping

1e stay at home and prepare for the exam.

study is the most important thing for him to think about.

2b **1.** Children have to take many after-school classes.

2. Cathy Taylor, Linda Miller and Dr. Alice Green.

2c **1.** continues

2. training

3. stress

4. typical

5. compete

6. development

7. comparing

2d **1.** Yes, she does.

2. No, she doesn't. She thinks that parents shouldn't push their kids so hard.

3. She agrees with Linda. She says, "Kids should have time to relax and think for themselves,too. Although it's normal to want successful children, it's even more important to have happy

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

children."

▶Self Check

1 **1.** so that

2. Although

3. so that

4. until

5. Although;so that

2 **1.** A You should talk to her and say sorry to her.

2. B You should tell him that you are busy preparing for the coming exams.

3. B You should close your room door.

Unit 5 What were you doing when the rainstorm came?

▶Section A

1a **1.** b **2.** a **3.** d **4.** c

1b Circled: a. doing my homework b. reading c. waiting for the bus d. walking home

1c She was writing something in her house.

2a 4, 1, 5, 3, 2

2b was; looking; woke; ate; was waiting; ran

3a **1.** There were strong winds outside. Black clouds were making the sky very dark. With no light outside, it felt like midnight.

2. The neighborhood was in a mess. Fallen trees, broken windows and rubbish were everywhere.

3b **1.** were blowing

2. was putting pieces of wood over the windows

3. was helping his mom make dinner

4. finally fell asleep; was dying down

4a While John was playing the piano, Mary left the house.

John was playing the piano when Mary left the house.

While John was cleaning his room, Mary turned on the radio.

John was cleaning his room when Mary turned on the radio.

While John was shopping, Mary took the car to the car wash.

John was shopping when Mary took the car to the car wash.

4b While; was; was; While; When; was; was; were

▶Section B

1b **1.** A school basketball competition.

2. Kate.

3. John's team.

1c 4, 2, 6, 1, 5, 3

2a I think the passage is about some big events.

2b **1.** One event is the kill of Dr. Martin Luther King and the other one is that the World Trade Center was taken down by terrorists.

2. Dr. Martin Luther King was killed on April 4,1968.

The World Trade Center was taken down by terrorists on September 11,2001.

2c **1.** F **2.** F **3.** T **4.** F **5.** T

2d **1.** Although some people may not remember who killed him, they remember what they were doing when they heard the news.

2. My parents did not talk after that,and we finished the rest of our dinner in silence.

3. Even the date—September 11,2001—has meaning to most Americans.

4. I was so scared that I could hardly think clearly after that.

3b the Beijing Olympic Games; August 8, 2008; Beijing; watching TV; playing; it was an important event for all Chinese; I'm a Chinese and I love sports

▶Self Check

1 **1.** While; when

2. When

3. While

2 was; joined; practiced; came; help; arrived; was; called; went; started; was playing; sat; waited; heard; beat; won; was

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 6 An old man tried to move the mountains.

▶Section A

1a bdac

1b Anna and Wang Ming are talking about Yu Gong Moves a Mountain.

Checked: The two mountains were very high and big.

A very old man tried to move the mountains.

2a 3, 2, 1, 4

2b **1.** children

2. weak

3. talking

4. two

5. know

3a **1.** *Journey to the West*.

2. The Monkey King or Sun Wukong.

3. He is clever. He keeps fighting to help the weak and never gives up.

3b What he can do:He can make 72 changes to his shape and size and turn himself into different animals and objects.

What he cannot do:Unless he can hide his tail, he can't turn himself into a man.

3c **1.** traditional

2. came out; became interested in

3. make 72 changes; turn himself into

4. is able to

4a **1.** As soon as

2. so; that

3. unless

4. As soon as

5. unless

6. so; that

4b helps, has, uses, make, sees, turn, love

▶Section B

1a bdca

1b **1.** (bottom right)

2. (bottom left)

3. (middle left)

4. (top left)

5. (top right)

1c looked, saw, shouted, wearing, give, kept, clothes, brothers

2c Scene 1—G Scene 2—B Scene 3—D

Scene 4—E Scene 5—F Scene 6—C

Scene 7—A

2d **1.** Because the weather is so dry that no food will grow, and the wife wants the children to die in the forest.

2. He gets some white stones.

3. Because when the moon is shining bright, they'll be able to see the stones.

4. They follow the stones to find the way home.

5. Because they can't see any bread on the ground.

3a Scene 2: come to, forest, bread

Scene 3: drop, stones, moon, shine

Scene 4: go to the forest, look at the moon

Scene 5: drop, pieces of bread, follow

Scene 6: can't see, keep walking, won't find our way out

Scene 7: lost, lead, eat, voice

3b stepmother and father, kill, save, stones, forest, dropped, moon, pieces, bread, birds, lost, house, eat, woman

▶Self Check

1 **1.** We will be late unless we get up early.

2. You won't be successful unless you study hard.

3. As soon as I got to the bus stop, the bus came.

4. Bill opened his book as soon as the teacher came in.

5. The movie was so touching that I was interested in it.

6. The boy was so excited that he forgot to do his homework.

2 was, loved, came, told, give, were, kept, were, see, put, think, said, walked, shouted

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 7 What's the highest mountain in the world?

▶Section A

1a Qomolangma——8,844. 43 meters high

The Sahara——about 9,600,000 square kilometers in size

The Caspian Sea——1,025 meters deep

The Nile——6,671 kilometers long

1b **1.** higher **2.** the biggest

3. the deepest **4.** the longest

2a 4, 2, 1, 3

2b 6,300; 5, 464; 5, 000;300

3a

Paragraph 1	Spirit of climbers
Paragraph 2	Achievements of climbers
Paragraph 3	Facts and dangers

3b Paragraph 1

freezing weather conditions; heavy storms; hard to take in air as you get near the top

Paragraph 2

1960—the first Chinese team reached the top

1975—Junko Tabei from Japan was the first woman to succeed

Paragraphs 1&3

most popular places; the highest and the most famous;

stronger than the forces of nature

3c **1.** The Himalayas run along the southwestern part of China.

2. It's 8,844. 43 meters high.

3. One of the main reasons is that people want to challenge themselves in the face of difficulties.

4. It tells us that we should never give up trying to achieve our dreams and that humans can sometimes be stronger than the forces of nature.

4a **1.** longest; longer

2. high; popular

3. big

4. older; much

▶Section B

1a This panda is 200 cm shorter than this elephant. It weighs much less than this elephant, too. This elephant eats much more than this panda. It eats many times more than this panda.

1b Checked: 100, 20, 0.1, 0.2, 150

1c **1.** 0.1, 0.2 **2.** 15

3. pink, teeth **4.** 20, 30

2c **1.** She is a panda keeper.

2. Milk.

3. Because humans started to cut down forests. And there is less bamboo for the pandas.

4. It teaches children about pandas and other endangered wild animals.

5. Because they want to understand the habits of pandas better.

2d **1.** keepers; prepare

2. fact; popular

3. often; illnesses

4. children; endangered

5. save; understand

3a They are huge and some kinds have teeth.

They live in the sea.

They eat small fish and other sea life.

They can jump high out of the water and sing songs.

Because humans catch whales for meat, fat and oil and whale parts can be sold to make things like candles and soap, and also because of the water pollution.

We should stop putting rubbish into the sea,learn more about whales and make rules on whale protection.

▶Self Check

1

higher	highest
more dangerous	most dangerous
longer	longest
more popular	most popular

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

2 **1.** reach b. the top of a mountain, the library, the bus stop, ...

2. achieve c. my dream, success, our goal, ...

3. risk a. my life, my money, my health, ...

3 **1.** many

2. much

3. lot;crowded

4. much;stronger

Unit 8 Have you read *Treasure Island* yet?

▶Section A

2a **1.** Tina **2.** Mark, Tina

3. Mark, Tina **4.** Tina

2b **1.** F **2.** T **3.** T **4.** F

3a **1.** He waits for another ship.

2. Because they met on Friday.

3b **1.** guns **2.** ship **3.** island

4. knives **5.** marks

3c **1.** enough food and drink → nothing

2. Friday → Robinson

3. had some → didn't have any

4. the ship → trees

5. Friday → Robinson

6. Robinson → Some cannibals

4a **2.** Have you found it

3. He has already left, did he leave

4. She has already seen the film

5. have not told them yet

4b loves, has, read, will be, finished, will write, has not read

▶Section B

1b D, D, A, D

1d

Friend 1	Pop music	It's popular.	It makes him feel excited.
Friend 2	Country music	It's full of feelings.	It makes him feel happy.
Parents	Light music	It's slow and quiet.	It makes them feel relaxed.

2a **1.** Yes, I do.

2. Yes, I do.

3. She is popular and she has sold many records.

2b the southern states of America, a traditional kind of music, Country Music Hall of Fame and Museum, Garth Brooks, more than 120 million

2c First paragraph Sarah is a fan of American country music. She is from the US. She likes country music.

Second paragraph It's a traditional kind of music. It reminds us that the best things in life are free—laughter, friends, family, and the beauty of nature and the countryside.

Third paragraph Her dream is to go to Nashville one day. Garth Brooks is one of the most successful musicians in American history.

2e **1.** Where is country music from?

2. Is there a school about country music?

▶Self Check

1 **1.** of **2.** down **3.** up

4. about **5.** back

2 **1.** joined, have read

2. started, have learned

3. bought, hasn't listened

4. have listened, sing

5. saw, hasn't had

Unit 9 Have you ever been to a museum?

▶Section A

1b Claudia: Art museum, Nature museum, Space museum

Sarah: Science museum, Art museum, Nature museum

1c A: Let's go somewhere different today.

B: OK. Where do you want to go?

A: Have you ever been to the space museum?

B: No, I haven't. How about you?

A: Me neither. What about going there next weekend?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

B: Perfect!

2a the space museum, the subway, the amusement park, Green Street, the zoo, the water park, River Park, Center Street

2b Conversation 1

1. T **2.** T **3.** T

Conversation 2

1. T **2.** F **3.** T

Conversation 3

1. F **2.** T **3.** T

3b **1.** It is the most interesting museum he has ever been to. They have information about different computers and who invented them. There was a special computer.

2. We can learn about the history and development of toilets.

3. Because the tea art performances show how to make a perfect cup of tea with beautiful tea sets. And watching the tea preparation is just as enjoyable as drinking the tea itself.

3c make (something) better — improve,
quiet — peaceful,
become better — progress,
made — invented,
uncommon — unusual,
quick — rapid

4a **1.** to come; been **2.** seen; went
3. spend; been; to go
4. going; to go **5.** visited; been

4b have seen; been; is; are; see; heard; is; take; shop; arrive

4c **e.g.** Yes, I have.
Yes, she has.
No, I haven't.
No, she hasn't.

▶Section B

1a c; a; d; b

1b Checked: Have you visited the Palace Museum?
Have you been to the Great Wall?
Have you tried Chinese food?

1c Peter; Australia; two weeks; the Palace Museum, the Great Wall, the Bird's Nest,the Terracotta Army; Beijing Duck

2a I want to know about its location, population, transport and special things.

2b I think/In my opinion, there are four reasons. First, people there speak English and Putonghua. So I can talk to them without any problems. Second, I like delicious food. There are different kinds of food there. Third, I want to go to the Night Safari. Fourth, the temperature is almost the same all year round. I can choose to go there whenever I like.

2c **1.** Most people in Singapore speak Putonghua and English.

2. It's easy to get many different kinds of good food in Singapore.

3. It's better to see lions and tigers during the night, because they will probably be awake.

4. It's good to visit Singapore in all seasons.

2d A: Have; been B: been; Southeast
A: speak B: English B: Have
A: ever B: have; watch
A: hot B: year

▶Self Check

1 **e.g. 1.** Toys.

2. The cellphone.

3. The iPad.

4. Having conversations.

5. The coffee shop.

2 A: What A: Have B: Yes; went
A: was B: have A: have; been
B: mind; did

Unit 10 I've had this bike for three years.

▶Section A

1a **e.g.** I've had an alarm clock for four years.
I've had an old bike since my ninth birthday.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

I've had a storybook since I was six years old.

1b Jeff's family is having a yard sale.

Amy thinks it's hard to sell her old things. You can also give old things away to people in need.

2a Checked: magazine; toy lion; toy tiger; bread maker; sweater; dress

Circled: book; toy bear; hat; scarf

2b **1.** book **2.** bear; baby

3. ten **4.** sweater; dress

3a A lot of toys and football shirts.

3b **1.** Because the children are growing up fast. As the children get bigger, their house seems to get smaller.

2. They want to give the money to a children's home.

3. Because he has owned it since his fourth birthday, and he played with it almost every week until he was about seven.

4. By giving them to the children's home.

5. Yes, I have. I would give it to the Project Hope.

3c kids—children truthful—honest

many—a lot of some time—for a while

even though—although quickly—fast

older—growing up

4a **2.** They haven't had anything for ten hours. /They haven't had anything since ten hours ago.

3. I have had the camera since 2009.

4. I have known Anna for three years. / I have known Anna since three years ago.

5. Linda has been ill since Monday.

4b **1.** have never been; go

2. have never owned; have always wanted

3. have had; bought

4. have not been/ haven't been; miss

5. has been; is

▶Section B

1b **1.** Yes, he does. He thinks it is really beautiful.

2. No, she doesn't. Jenny has been away for the past few years.

3. There is a really big park. Many families go there on weekends to let the kids run around and climb the hills.

1c

old	for hundreds of years
new	since last August
old	for as long as she can remember

2a **1.** To search for work in the cities.

2. Once or twice a year.

3. Large hospitals, new roads and new schools.

2b **1.** search for **2.** regard **3.** opposite

4. according to someone **5.** return

6. developments **7.** place

2c hometown; cities; return; year; crayon; interested; government; good; will never; memories

3b **e.g.** My favorite thing from childhood is a storybook. I've had it since I was 6 years old. My mother gave it to me.

I like the storybook so much because I like the stories and I learned many new words. It's special to me because it's a gift from my mom. I think it's the best gift ever.

The storybook has given me many memories. I remember when I was sick and had to stay in hospital, my mom and I read it together.

▶Self Check

1 **1.** since last December.

2. for at least 2 years.

3. since our family got a car.

4. for 2 months.

5. since last weekend.

2 have; has; have; have been; for; been; have; after; Have; was; have; since

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料